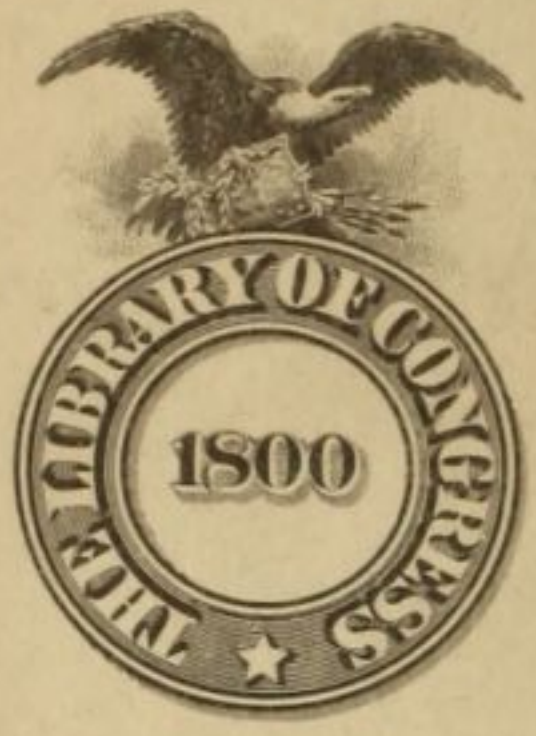

THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
1800

Fig. 1.

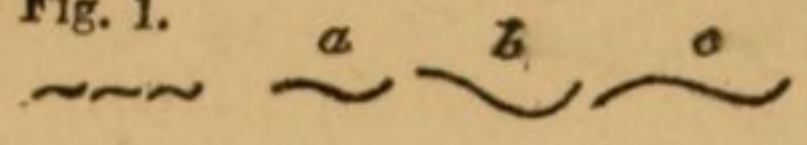


Fig. 2.

Fig. 3.

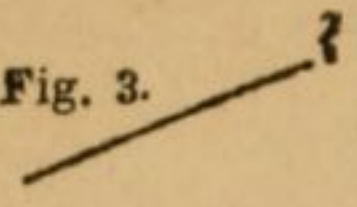


Fig. 4.

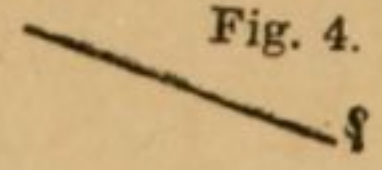


Fig. 5.

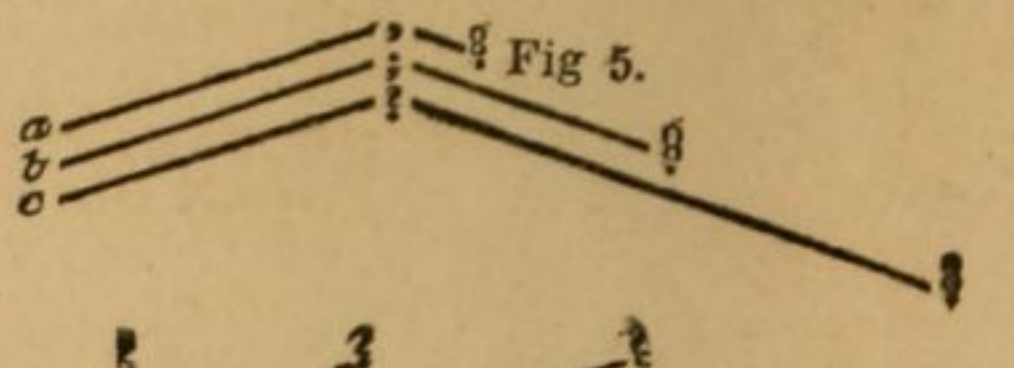


Fig. 6.

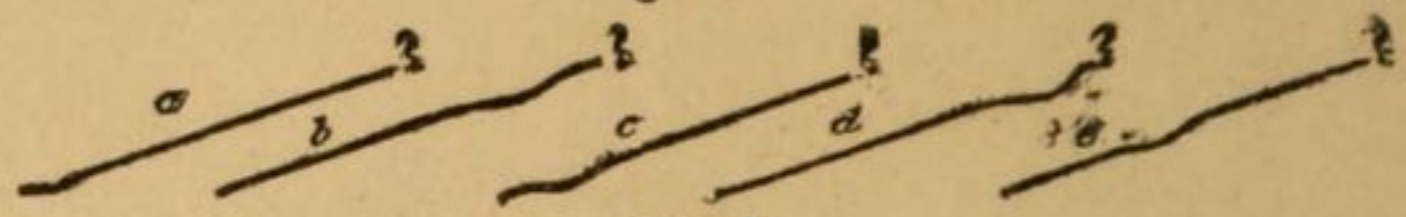


Fig. 7.

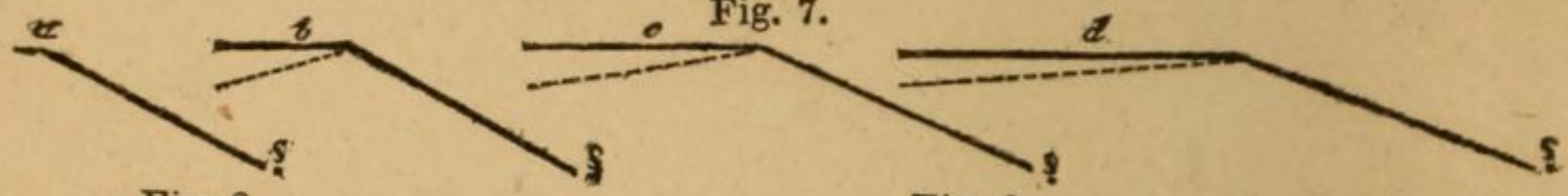


Fig. 8.

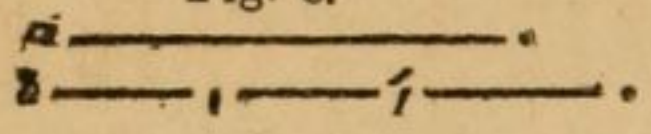


Fig. 9.

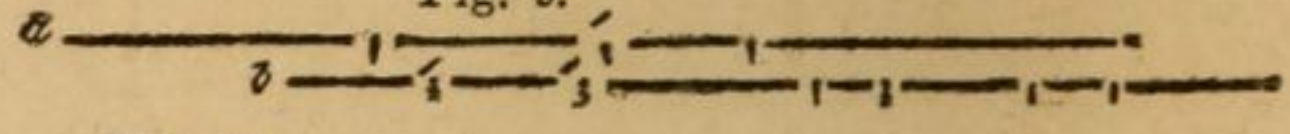


Fig. 10.

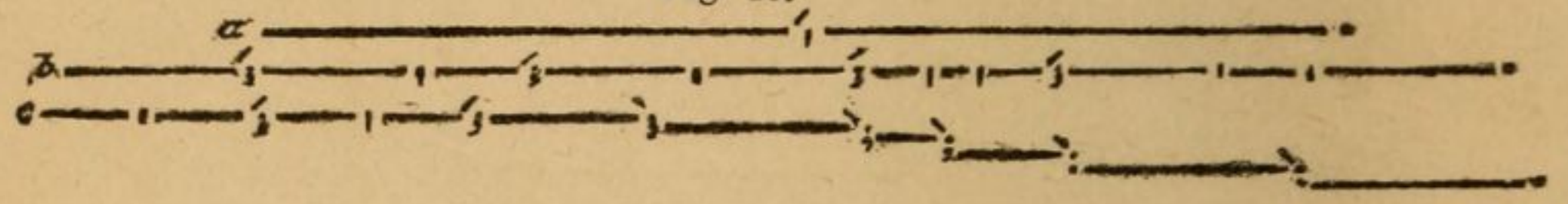


Fig. 11.

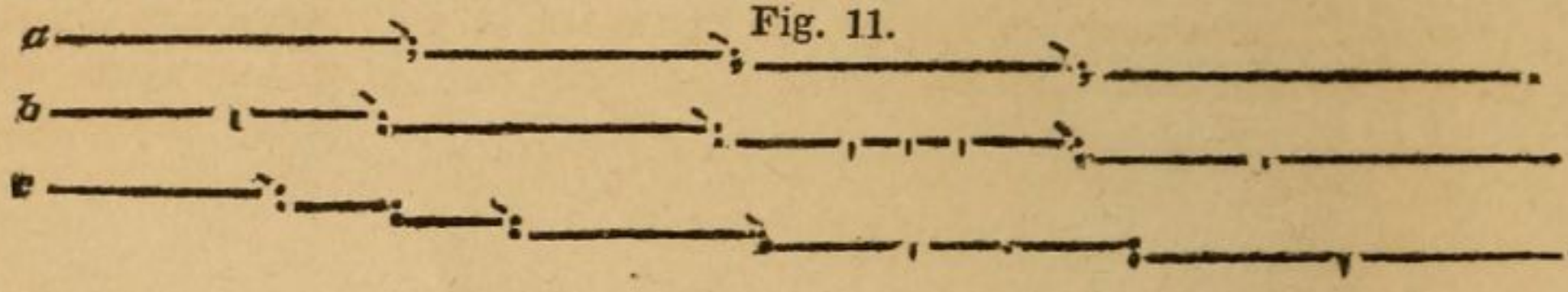


Fig. 12.

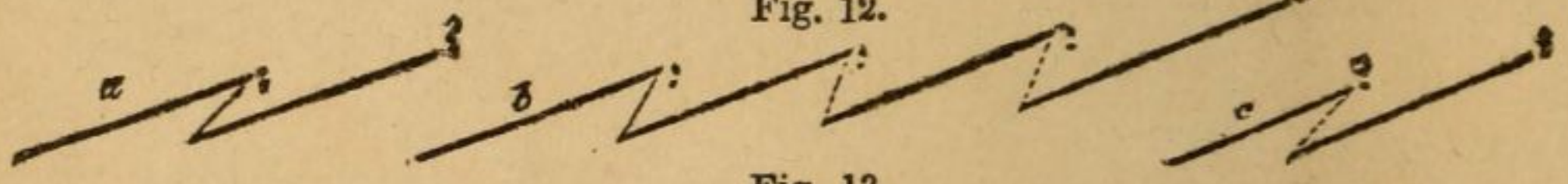


Fig. 13.

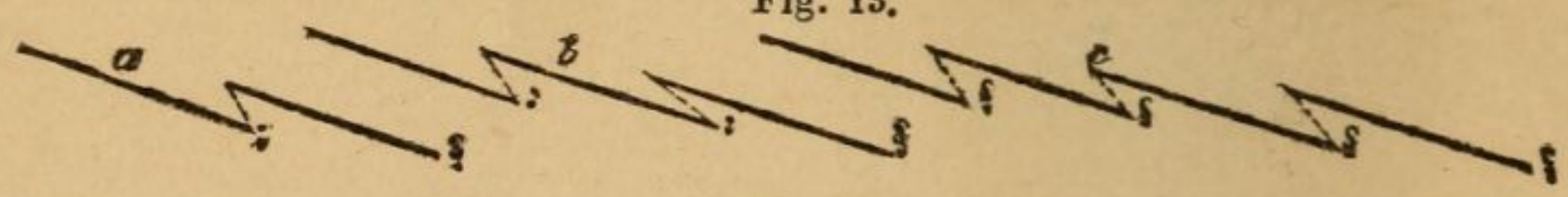


Fig. 14.

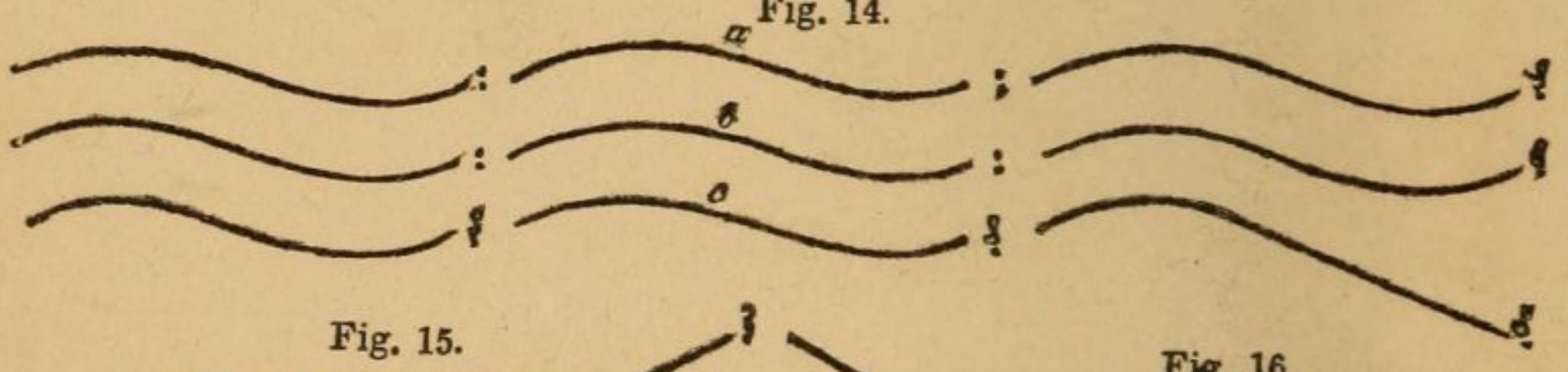


Fig. 15.

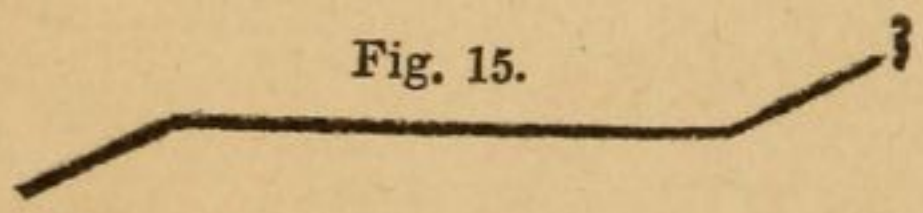
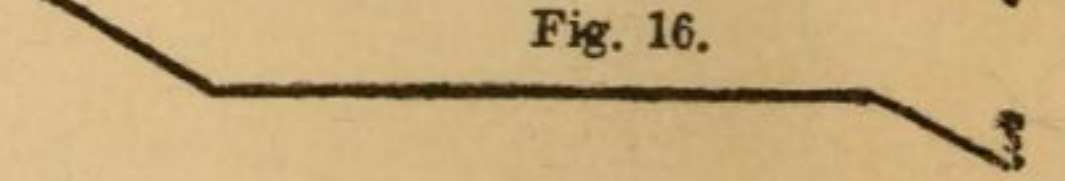


Fig. 16.



309

THE

ELEMENTS

OF

READING AND ORATORY.

Verum illi persuasione sua fruantur, qui hominibus, ut sint oratores, satis putant nasci: nostro labori dent veniam, qui nihil credimus esse perfectum, nisi ubi natura curâ juvetur.

QUINCTILIAN.

BY

HENRY MANDEVILLE, D. D.

PROFESSOR OF MORAL SCIENCE AND BELLES-LETTRES IN HAMILTON COLLEGE.

A NEW REVISED EDITION.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & COMPANY, 200 BROADWAY.

PHILADELPHIA:

GEO. S. APPLETON, 164 CHESNUT-STREET.

M DCCC L.

1850

PN 4111
.M43
1850a

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1849,

By D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

Gift
Judge and Mrs. I.R. Hitt
Dec. 11, 1936

PREFACE.

Of all the departments of learning in our schools, there is none which, by general concession, is more important than that of reading and speaking; and yet, there is none in which the instruction given is at once so arbitrary, so vague, so unprofitable. In every other, there exists some recognised standard of propriety, tangible, and always at hand, by reference to which, the student can accurately prepare himself for recitation beforehand; and by reference to which, should he make a mistake, while the recitation is in progress, his teacher can intelligibly correct him: make him clearly comprehend the nature of the error into which he has fallen, and effectually guard him against a repetition of it. In writing, he must imitate his copy: in geography, he must implicitly receive the statements of his text-book and studiously conform to the delineations of his map: in arithmetic, every process has its rule, which offers itself to him as an infallible guide, through all the intricacies and mazes of numbers: in reading and speaking alone, he is left to acquire a correct and graceful delivery as he may, with such imperfect light as his teacher, whose judgment may be riper, but whose scources of information are not better than his own, can throw upon his path. In truth, the only means by which either of them can determine, that a given passage should be delivered in one way rather than in another, is a mere supposition; namely, that such is the way in which it would be delivered by an artless speaker; or, to adopt the cant phraseology of the day on this subject, such is the natural way; or the way in which one would deliver it, who conforms to nature: a supposition, which, considering the inexperience of the parties forming it, the extensive observation and comparison of the best models of delivery, the cultivated judgment, and the nice critical tact necessary to form it, and withal the prevalence of bad examples even at the Bar and in the Pulpit, to say nothing of the vicious elocution of the multitude, is as liable to be false as true; and whether false or true, it can be neither denied nor affirmed; since there is nothing beyond itself, in the shape of an authorized standard, with which it may be compared. To conform to nature, or rather to *know* when we conform to nature, we should previously know what that nature is: what it prescribes: what it excludes.

The inadequacy, I had almost said, the absurdity, of such a method of instruction in grammar, if method it may be called, would be apparent to the most indifferent thinker in the land. Imagine a student endeavoring to acquire a knowledge of its principles without a nomenclature, designating and describing the parts of speech: without examples, illustrating

Ret.

Pts. Bd.

them: without rules, showing their relation and government: in short, without any guide whatever to a knowledge of its facts and laws, except a vague reference to the conflicting practice of those who speak and write the English language: does not every one perceive that, with such means of study, it would be all but impossible to obtain a clear insight into the mysteries of the science? or that, if some inquirer, more ardent than usual, should persist in the pursuit until success crowned at length his diligence, the work would consume a large proportion of his life? Yet there is no difficulty here which does not meet the student in learning to read and speak by the same process; the scene is changed, but the actor and his part remain as before. He must grope his way in the dark in the same manner: with uncertain footing, and at a venture. He can never be sure of his position, and he is as likely to move in a circle as to advance.

Nor will it materially avail him, in the absence of a nomenclature and of rules, that he possesses in his teacher the very best model of elocution. From such a teacher he may acquire a good articulation, for this in some measure is subject to rule; but beyond this, which though important is yet subordinate, he can derive no more aid from such a teacher than from any other immeasurably his inferior. Indeed, he will derive less, if the latter, with his imperfect qualifications as a reader, should happen to possess the superior tact as a disciplinarian: greater facility in winning the regard of his pupils; in commanding their attention; in exciting their emulation. In other respects the more and the less gifted teacher occupy, in relation to him, the same level. Neither of them can do more than superintend his exercises: neither of them can add any thing to the benefit he derives from the practice those exercises afford. Whatever may be his faults of modulation, no correction of theirs, however just, can, from the very nature of the case, be followed by improvement. To have ocular and auricular demonstration of this, we have only to enter one of our schools in city or country, when a class, containing perhaps a dozen pupils, is called up to read. Observe. The lesson, distributed among them, gives to each scarcely more than a single sentence for rehearsal. One of the pupils, reading his sentence, fails in the judgment of the teacher, to employ the proper delivery. He is now shown how it should be read, (that is, the teacher reads it for him, with, what he deems, the proper modulation,) and is commanded to read it again; and this time, we may presume, he will read it correctly. But what then? If this was the only sentence he ever expected to read, the correction might answer a good purpose. He would probably remember it; and at the next reading, and still more certainly at the next, he would make no mistake. But when called up again, he has the infinitesimal portion of another lesson, to which no correction of the one previously read, is applicable; or if it is, neither he nor his teacher is aware of it. His reading is again faulty, and is again corrected; and so on with every successive lesson, day after day, the year through. Each correction is an independent one. Having its root in no settled principle, illustrated by examples; falling under no general law, confirmed by reason and obvious facts; it neither borrows light from the past, nor reflects light on the future. It guards the pupil against nothing but the specific error corrected: its whole force is exhausted on a single sentence which may never be read again, or if read, recognised as having been read before. It is therefore manifestly of no use, then or thenceforward. In any

other branch of study, it would be the stepping-stone of a continually accelerating progress; here it terminates with itself: elsewhere a quickening spirit; here a dead letter.

These obvious defects of the prevailing method of instruction, and the enormous waste both of money and of time it occasions, have led a number of ingenious and able men, during the last sixty or seventy years, to inquire whether a better one could not be devised: whether, in other words, the facts and principles of elocution could not be systematized like those of grammar, arithmetic, &c., and hence taught in the same manner. Their works, which are before the public, and well known, propose for our consideration, two distinct systems: the one formed on sentential construction; the other, variously modified, on a theory of Dr. Rush. Of these, the first is unquestionably the system of nature; and that it should not have made its way into public favor, and become the basis of elementary instruction wherever the English language is spoken, must be imputed, not to any thing wrong in the plan, but simply to the imperfect manner in which, hitherto, it has been developed; for, unfortunately, Mr. Walker, by whom it was first broached in his "Elements of Elocution," and by whom it was carried to a point not yet passed, and scarcely reached, by those who have followed him, stopped short with an extremely imperfect account of one or two sentences only, and arbitrarily applied, or expected the student to apply, the laws derived from these to every other, however unlike in structure. Hence his failure: acknowledged by himself in the Rhetorical Grammar which he published subsequently to the "Elements." His work, therefore, sustains the same relation to a complete system of Elocution, that would be sustained by a defective map of the state of New York to a universal Atlas; and, carrying the illustration a little farther, to expect it, with whatever diligence studied, to form a good reader or speaker, would be equivalent to expecting that a man, by looking at such a map of this state, should be qualified to describe the boundaries, towns, rivers, lakes and mountains, of every other state and empire on the surface of the globe.

The other system, that derived from Dr. Rush, and confined, I believe, to this country, however ingenious, and though ably and fully developed, is rather, it must be admitted, a system of vocal exercises than of elocution: as such, its utility in the schoolroom is not readily seen. Should a person become thoroughly versed in its various movements, which is no easy attainment, he has not taken as yet one step toward a correct and graceful delivery of a single sentence in the English language. Suppose a sentence presented: the question is, with what vocal movements, or more generally, with what modulation, shall it be read or spoken? To this question the system gives no reply: the appropriate delivery is yet to be ascertained. These authors end, therefore, just where Walker and others begin; or if they proceed farther, and prescribe a delivery for a given passage, they are governed in so doing by no broad general principles authorized by induction, but by the caprices of individual tastes, or like the writers just mentioned, by questionable laws derived from a few isolated cases.—I may add, that this system is exposed to the serious objection of having a strong tendency to form an artificial and mechanical delivery. I have met with several individuals, whose voices, trained by its processes, very distinctly betrayed it.

Such are the exceptions which may be taken to the most systematic and elaborate writers on elocution: writers of the higher aim, and the more solid worth. Of others, it is scarcely necessary to speak; for they attempt rather to mitigate the evils of the existing method of instruction, than to remove them by introducing another. Their observations are local, isolated, special: not without value in the particular instances to which they apply; but apart as they are from principles, and incapable of generalization, they merely supersede the incidental and arbitrary dogmas of the instructor.

On the whole, it must be acknowledged that the *desideratum* in the department of elocution; the work which seizes, generalizes and arranges its facts, develops its principles, and declares its laws; the work in which the public may universally confide as an exposition of true science; the work on which the professor, the academical and common-school teacher, can lay their hands, assured that in it they have a safe guide in all that relates to reading and speaking; the work, finally, which shall displace the prevailing inefficient and clumsy method, and banish it forever from our schools;—such a work is yet to appear; and when it does appear, it will doubtless bear upon its face the evidence of its mission, and compel assent to its revelations; and the man who produces it, there can be as little doubt, will be hailed as the benefactor of the young.

That the following work, which I have now the honor of submitting to the public, possesses this high and decisive character, I am of course far from believing. Yet, I confess, I am not entirely without hope, (founded on long and patient investigation, unbiased by received theories or preconceived opinions, and still more on having tested its utility, during the past two years, in the institution with which I am professionally connected,) that it may prove to be at least the herald of the morning: the day-star to such a sun. If it should, I shall be content; though merely glimmering for a space, where my successor will pour full-orbed effulgence.

It will be seen, on examination, that the leading idea of Mr. Walker is mine; namely, that the law of delivery must be derived from the structure of the sentence. Mr. Walker, however, either because that idea was not a very clear one, or because he wanted leisure or patience for a wide, comprehensive and exact induction, satisfied himself, as I have already observed, with an extremely imperfect development of it. What he left undone, I have attempted to do: to give a complete enumeration of the different sentences in the English language, and a description of their distinctive peculiarities of structure. This part of my work, which forms its base, is comprised in chapter fourth. Chapter second, on Punctuation; chapter third, on Modulation; and chapter sixth, containing the Laws of Delivery, with a long train of examples under each for exercise, are merely derivations from chapter fourth.

The chapter on Emphasis, (ch. 5th,) is the result of discovering, that the laws of delivery, derived from structure, are limited to termination and direction: to the former, in declarative, and to the latter, in interrogative sentences. In other words, I found that structure determined the modulation at the end of declarative sentences, and of their parts, and the general direction of the voice, through interrogative; but not the modulation of the intermediate portions. This I subsequently traced to the nature, position and influence of emphasis; my discussion of which, the fruit of

laborious and protracted examination, will be deemed, I trust, satisfactory: few subjects have been treated hitherto with less precision: why, it would be difficult to explain.

Having now made the student thoroughly acquainted with every variety of sentential structure, and the laws of delivery as derived from structure and emphasis combined, I introduce him, in chapter seventh, to the common reading-book; where he is mainly left to apply for himself, the information obtained from the previous portions of the work. As a reading-book, I think it will be found inferior to none in use. In some respects, it is peculiar. The selections comprise sentences of every variety of construction, and in every degree of expansion, both in prose and verse With most of the reading-books in use this is not the case. I have introduced colloquial pieces, as well as the more sustained composition of books; and also several other species of reading, not usually met with in school-books: such as epigrams, anecdotes, preambles and resolutions of deliberative assemblies, advertisements, legal notices, letters, &c., &c. These are all written to be read, and I cannot perceive why we should not learn to read them; but I have inserted them more particularly, to show that the construction of sentences is the same in every species of composition; and that these sentences are subject to the same laws of delivery, wherever found: whether in low life, or high life; in conversation or in writing; and in one kind of writing as well as in another; in prose or verse.

The chapter on Pronunciation, the latest written and perhaps the least studied of the series, though occupying the first place, is introduced not so much on account of its value, as to mark my sense of the importance of the subject. Distinct, easy, accurate utterance of elementary sounds, syllables, and words, is a fundamental and indispensable quality of good reading and speaking; and yet how sadly is it neglected, beyond a few unmeaning and inefficient common-places, by a majority of the teachers of the present day! However, better habits are forming. There are a few instructors certainly who seem, in this respect, apprized of their responsibility; and we may reasonably hope that the time is not distant, when the elements of the English language will be expressed with Attic elegance.

In bringing these prefatory observations to a close, it may be proper for me to say, that, although I have endeavored to confirm every position taken in the following work, by a sufficient number of examples, or where examples were inadmissible, which is seldom the case, with sufficient reasons, it may appear notwithstanding, that I have sometimes spoken unadvisedly: if so, I trust that I have, at the same time, placed at the disposal of the reader, all that can be requisite for my correction. It may appear also, after more extended and searching examination, that some things I have advanced need additions, abridgment or modification. As I do not profess to have produced a perfect work, but merely to have laid the foundations for one, I hope such deficiencies may be regarded with some degree of indulgence. I should state that what may be deemed one of these, my silence on the subject of gesture, is the result of design: my plan, in the present work, limiting me to those "elements" which are *common* to "Reading and Oratory."

Something I wished to say, before concluding, on the bearing of what

I have advanced, if acknowledged to be just, on the art of composition: something on its relation to the general subject of style: something also on its application to elementary instruction in other languages, both ancient and modern; soon, probably, to be tested by one of the most finished classical scholars in the country; but having already extended my observations to an unusual length, I reluctantly suppress what I might add on these points, and submit my work without further ceremony to the judgment of an intelligent and candid public: being very sure that, if it possesses value, it will receive proportionate approbation; and that it can fail to be approved only because, in the opinion of discerning and just men less interested than myself, it fails to deserve it.

HAMILTON COLLEGE, Sept. 1st, 1845.

CHAPTER I.

PRONUNCIATION.

Pronunciation anciently included the whole of delivery. By modern usage, it is limited to the enunciation of single words.* It comprehends articulation and accent.

SEC. I. ARTICULATION.

I. Articulation, primarily, signifies the junction which takes place in the organs of speech when a sound is interrupted and thus separated from other sounds; and, secondarily, by an easy transition from cause to effect, the distinct utterance of the various vocal sounds, represented by letters, diphthongs, triphthongs, syllables and words.

II. By distinct utterance is to be understood,

1. The expression of all the sounds which enter into the pronunciation of a word.

The fault opposed to this, the suppression of essential sounds, is one of common occurrence. Thus, *h* is often dropped in the pronunciation of *where*, *which*, *what*, and their derivatives: of *shrill*, *shriek*, *shrunk*, *humble*, and many others. *N* is often dropped from government; pronounced as if written gover*n*ment: *er* from gover*n*or, and *u*, from regular; as if written *govnor*, *reglar*.

2. The exact expression of the sounds which enter into the pronunciation of a word.

It is not sufficient, for example, that *a* should have any one of its sounds, but that specific sound which usage ascribes to it in a given position; as in *mane*, *man*, *mat*.

Bad articulation in this respect will leave the hearer in doubt as to the particular word used, or suggest one different from that used; and the result will be either a perplexed or perverted meaning.

3. The separate and complete expression of sounds, whether of letters, syllables, or entire words.†

---

* Dividitur igitur pronunciatio in vocis figuram, et corporis motum.—*Rhet. ad Herenn.* l. iii., ch. 2.

Pronunciatio a plerisque actio dicitur; sed prius nomen a voce, sequens a gestu videtur accipere.—*Quinctil.* l. xi., 3.

Est enim actio quasi corporis quædam eloquentia, cum constet voce atque motu.—*Cic. Orat.* 17.

Pronunciation, in the modern acceptation of the term, is limited to the mode of enouncing certain words and syllables.—*Austin. Chiron.*

† A good articulation consists in giving every letter in a syllable its due proportion of sound, according to the most approved custom of pronouncing it; and in making such a distinction between the syllables of which words are composed, that the ear shall, without difficulty, acknowledge their number, and perceive at once to which syllable each letter belongs. Where these points are not observed, the articulation is proportionally defective.—*Sheridan.*

Intermingling sounds is the fault here. Thus, the following sentence, *He understands and obeys*, would be read or spoken by many, as if written, *He understan-zan-dobeys.*

It cannot be too often, or too earnestly impressed on the minds of instructors and students, that in reading or speaking, the sound of every letter which is not mute, of every syllable, and of every word, should be accurately and distinctly uttered before another is heard. Unless this be done, the delivery will not be intelligible: much less distinguished by that force and grace, to which good articulation contributes in so great a degree.

III. To acquire an articulation which shall be at once accurate and tasteful, it is necessary,

1. To get an exact knowledge of the elementary sounds of the language;

2. To learn the appropriate place of each of these sounds, as determined by usage, in syllables and words; and,

3. To apply this knowledge, constantly, in conversation, reading and speaking, with a view to correct every deviation from propriety which we may detect in expressing them.

Most writers on elocution give exercises for the improvement of articulation; but manifestly, from the nature of the case, with little benefit to the student. A good articulation is not to be acquired in a day, nor from a few lessons. Practice should begin with the spelling-book, and continue through the whole course of education; and even then, there will remain room for improvement.

IV. The elementary sounds of language are represented by vowels, diphthongs, triphthongs and consonants.

In describing these elementary sounds on succeeding pages, I have in a few instances differed from received opinions. I have enumerated some sounds as regular, which are treated by others, apparently for no valid reason, as irregular; I have adopted the middle *a* sound of Perry, and have added a corresponding short sound, though found only in unaccented syllables; I have denominated the vowel sounds succeeding *a*, when identical, as they often are, with those of *a*, as the alphabetical, middle, flat, or broad *a* sound of *e*, *i*, &c.; and omitting the mute, liquid, and semi-vowel distinction of consonants, I have substituted others more simple, and as I conceive more important. By the first measure, sounds, hitherto regarded as anomalous, are restored to their place in the language, and their pronunciation both in accented and unaccented syllables, determined: (*see alphabetical short* a *below*:) by the second, a separate place is given to a sound which few men, in practice, ever confound with alphabetical *a* long, (*see middle* a *long*,) and an attempt is made to rescue *a* before *r* in unaccented syllables, as well as *e* and *i* before *r* in accented syllables, from utter perversion: (*see middle* a *short*, *under* a, e, *and* i:) by the third, a simple nomenclature is introduced, by which the same sound of different vowels is happily designated, and the confusion and perplexity arising from distinct names, are avoided: by the fourth, a practical division of the consonants is substituted for one that is theoretical; for one which, however interesting to the orthoepist and lexicographer, is useless to the reader and speaker.

V. A vowel is a sound which may be uttered either alone, or in connection with another vowel.

Some orthoepists define vowels as simple sounds; others, as sounds which may be uttered with the mouth open; and others, as sounds which may be uttered without aid from the organs of articulation. Each of these definitions is objectionable: the first, because at least two of them are compound: the second, because many of the consonants are uttered with the mouth open as well as the vowels: the third, because disapproved by experiment. It will be found on trial that they require the aid of the articulatory organs as really as consonants. The most that can be said, is, that they do not require the aid of all of them, nor to the same extent; which is also true of the consonants.

VI. The vowels are seven in number: *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y* and *w*. Of these,

1. *A*, *e* and *o*, are simple sounds: may be uttered alone.
2. *I* and *u* long, are compound sounds: cannot be uttered alone.
3. *I*, *y* and *w* are sometimes consonants.

1. *A* has eight sounds.

1.	Alphabetical	as heard in	game, debate, spectator.
2.	" short,		any, many, miscellany, herbage.
3.	Middle		care, dare, fare.
4.	" short,		liar, regular, inward.
5.	Flat		father, calm, star, lava.
6.	" short,		fat, that, glass.
7.	Broad		all, law, salt, walk, also, water, war.
8.	" short,		what, want, was, wash, warrant.

REMARKS.

I. Alphabetical *a* long has this sound,

1. When it ends an accented syllable; as in *maker, legislation.*

EXCEPTIONS. *Papa, father, mama, lava, water,* and proper names ending with *a.*

2. When followed by a single consonant (except *r*) and *e* mute in the same accented syllable.

EXCEPTIONS. *Gape, are, have.*

NOTE.—In unaccented syllables, it often retains this sound.

II. Alphabetical short *a.* This sound is treated by orthoepists as irregular. The reason for this, I presume, is, that it occurs under accent, only in the two words adduced in the table: a reason which will apply with nearly equal force to other sounds, enumerated notwithstanding among those that are regular; as, for example, the sound of *o* in *move.* My reasons for treating it as regular, aside from the one involved in what I have just said, are,

1. That *e* in *men* is precisely the short sound of alphabetical *a,* as acknowledged by the best orthoepists; (*see Walker;*) and this is precisely the sound of *a* in *many.*

2. The improper diphthong *ai,* under accent, has this sound in numerous words; (*see diphthong* ai;) but why it should, unless alphabetical short *a* is a regular sound, I am unable to perceive.

The admission of this short sound of alphabetical *a* among regular sounds, has, I conceive, an important bearing on the pronunciation of the unaccented terminations of a large class of words; as *age, any, able, ably, ace, ate, ately,* &c, in most of which the long alphabetical sound is abandoned; and in which, consequently, the short, as being the nearest, should be heard.

III. Middle *a* long. I follow Perry in regarding this sound as quite too remote from alphabetical *a* long, to be classed with it. It is called middle *a* because its sound is about equally distant from that of *a* in *game,* and *a* in *father.* It occurs only before *r* and final *e* mute.

IV. Middle *a* short. I am alone, I believe, in enumerating this among distinct vowel sounds. It sustains precisely the same relation to *a* in *care, fare, dare,* &c., that *a* alphabetical short sustains to alphabetical *a* long. It appears only in unaccented syllables before *r;* but it is represented by *e* before *r* in the same syllable under accent; as in *herd, merchant,* &c.: hence, the *a* in *liar, friar,* &c., is not accurately represented, as Walker intimates, by short *u;* it has a sound a shade less guttural and broad; as may be observed in comparing *mercy* (pronouncing *e* in which like *e* in *merry*) with *murder, blunder,* &c.

V. Flat *a* long. *A* has this sound when followed by *r* or *h* in the same accented syllable; as in *art, cart, dart, ah, bah.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* in this position preceded by *w,* has its long broad sound; as in *war, ward.*

VI. Flat *a* short. "The short sound of middle or Italian *a*, (i. e. flat *a*,) which is generally confounded with the short sound of slender *a*, (alphabetical *a*,) is the sound of this vowel in *man, pan, tan, hat,* &c."—*Walker.*

A has this sound for the most part,

1. When followed by a single consonant, (except *r* and occasionally *l*,) in the same accented syllable; as in *ballad, capstan, massive.*

Exceptions.—*Alien, ancient, cambric, chamber, manger, angel.*

2. When followed by more than one consonant, (except *r* and *l*, followed by another consonant,) in the same accented syllable; as in *band, catch, cramp, act, apt.*

VII. Broad *a* long. The regular place for this sound is before *ll;* as in *all, ball, call, fall, hall, wall;* though it occurs in some other positions; as in *ward, bawd, chalk.*

2. *E* has five sounds.

1. Alphabetical	as heard in	me, scheme, theme.
2. " short,		pretty, been, England, faces, linen.
3. " *a* short,		bet, end, them, sell, method.
4. Middle *a*		where, there, ere, e'er, ne'er.
5. " " short,		herd, merchant, certain, consternation.

REMARKS.

E is mute,

1. When final and preceded by another vowel in the same syllable; as in *mute, rebuke, literature.*

2. When preceding *l* and *n*, in final unaccented syllables in many instances; as in *navel, drivel, swivel, weasel, open, often, heaven.*

3. When it precedes *d* in the preterit of verbs, and is not preceded by *d* or *t;* as in *lived, loved, revealed, justified.*

E is often in position final, where in pronunciation it is not; as in *theatre, centre, massacre:* where final, it is often viciously treated, as if not; as in the derivatives *knave-ry, brave-ry, image-ry, nice-ty, slave-ry, fine-ry, savage-ry,* &c.; all of which words Walker pronounces in three or four syllables; while others, correctly enough, he pronounces in two; as in *safety, ninety, surety.* Webster adverts to this error of Walker, yet in several instances leaves it uncorrected.

I. Alphabetical *e* long. *E* has this sound when it ends a syllable, and when it is followed in the same syllable by a consonant and final *e;* as in *meteor, secretion, severe, atmosphere, revere.*

Exceptions. *Where, there, were, ere.*

This sound is often incorrectly superseded by alphabetical *a* short; as in *establish, esteem, especial, espial, espy, espouse, esquire, egotist,* &c.; in which words, long alphabetical *e* should be invariably heard. It is also often viciously suppressed in the prefix *pre;* as in *precede, prevent, predict,* &c.; which are pronounced as if written *pr-cede, pr-vent, pr-dict.*

II. Alphabetical *e* short. This sound, like that of alphabetical *a* short, is treated by orthoepists and grammarians as anomalous; when the ear alone, one should think, is sufficient to establish its character as the short sound of *e* in *scheme.* The report of the ear is confirmed by the analogy of the French and German languages; in which the long and short sound of *e* in *scheme* and *pretty,* are represented by the long and short sound of *i.* Short alphabetical *e* is heard in accented syllables in the words adduced in the table, and generally in the unaccented syllables *es, en, et.*

III. Alphabetical *a* short. For the propriety of so calling *e* in *men*, *met*, &c., *see above*. *E* has this sound when followed by a consonant (except *r*) in the same syllable. In many words, as in *chapel*, *gospel*, *rebel*, &c., (which are exceptions to *e* mute, *No.* 2 *above*,) this sound is dropped, when it should be distinctly heard.

IV. Middle *a* long. This sound is only heard in the words enumerated in the table. *Where*, *there*, and *ere* have this sound, I believe, in consequence of their derivation: they should have been written with *a* instead of *e*. (*See Dictionaries of Webster and Richardson.*) *Ne'er*, being a contraction of *never*, the vowels of which are alphabetical short *a*, and middle short *a*, is very properly pronounced as if written *nare;* for this is precisely the long sound into which the two short ones, being after contraction followed by *r*, should pass.

V. Middle *a* short. If *e* in *met* is the short sound of *a* in *mate*, there can be little doubt that *e* in *merchant* is the short sound of *a* in *care*. The same reason, in fact, which should induce us to treat *a* in *care* as a different sound from *a* in *mate*, should also induce us to treat *e* in *merchant* as a different sound from *e* in *met*. In both cases, the letter *r* produces the same modification of sound.

3. *I* has four sounds.

1. Alphabetical	as heard in	chide, decide, sign, countermine.
2. " *e*,		machine, ravine, caprice, shire.
3. " " short,		chin, rich, wit, hill.
4. Middle *a* short,		bird, flirt, stir, virtue.

REMARKS.

I. Alphabetical *i*. "This letter is a perfect diphthong, composed of the sounds of *a* in *father*, and *e* in *he*, pronounced as closely together as possible."—*Walker*.

It has this sound,

1. When it ends an accented syllable; as in *liar*, *reliance*.

2. When followed by *e* mute in accented syllables; as in *line*, *pine*, *wine*, *combine*, *canine*.

Exceptions. 1. In words of French origin; as in *machine*, *caprice*, &c.

2. In the unaccented syllables of many words, though followed by *e* mute; as in *engine*, *rapine*.

II. Alphabetical *e*. This, be it observed, is one of the vowels of which the preceding is composed.

III. Alphabetical *e* short. Dr. Johnson, (*see introduction to his Dictionary*,) not taking into consideration the compound character of alphabetical *i*, pronounced this short sound wholly unlike it; but Walker very justly observes that it "is the sound of *e:* the last letter of the diphthong that forms long *i*." Hence, I term it alphabetical *e* short. A similar derivation of a short sound from a part of a diphthongal sound, may be seen in the short sound of *u* in *full*, &c., below: called the short muffled sound of *o*.

I has this sound, generally, before a consonant, (except *r*,) or more than one consonant, in the same syllable; as in *tin*, *tinder*, *wind*, *which*, *hitch*.

A common error in the pronunciation of *i*, for which we are indebted to Mr. Walker and his admirers, consists in giving to it, without reference to the origin of the word in which it appears, the sound of alphabetical *e* long, when it forms a syllable or ends one unaccented; as in *divide*, *indivisibility*, *ability;* which he pronounces as if written *de-vide*, *in-de-vis-e-bil-e-ty*, *abil-e-ty*. In these words, however, and in others, forming a very numerous class, alphabetical *e* short should be slightly but distinctly heard. (*See Webster's Dictionary, introduction.*)

IV. Middle *a* short. As this sound of *i* occurs only before *r*, and is precisely like that of middle *a* short, and of middle *a* short *e*, I have given it the same name. The short *u* sound which many substitute for this, should be in all cases avoided as a vulgarity

4. *O* has six sounds.

1. Alphabetical	as heard in	tone, droll, wrote, remote.
2. " short,		love, money, other, havoc, method.
3. Muffled		do, move, prove, who.
4. " short,		woman, wolf.
5. Broad *a*		cost, former, wroth, lost, nor.
6. " " short,		not, top, robber, conglomerate.

REMARKS.

I. Alphabetical *o* long. *O* has this sound,

1. When it ends an accented syllable; as in *romance, explosion.*

Exceptions. *Do, to, who, ado.*

2. When followed by a single consonant and mute *e;* as in *tone, devote.*

Exceptions. *Prove, move, behoove, lose, love, dove, above, come, done, none, one, pomegranate, some.*

II. Alphabetical *o* short. "The long sound which seems the nearest relation to it, is the first sound of *o* in *note, tone, rove,* &c."—*Walker.*

As this sound, that of broad *a* long, that of short broad *a*, and that of muffled short, occur nearly in the same positions, usage alone must determine which of them is employed in a given case.

III. The long sound of muffled *o* is a middle sound between *u* in *tube* and *u* in *full.* It is, in fact, precisely the *oo* sound (as heard in *groove*) of which *u* in *tube* in part consists; (*see alphabetical* u *below;*) and of this, *u* in *full* is a slight contraction. It occurs in a few words only: *prove, move, behoove,* (and their derivatives,) *do, who, to, ado, tomb, womb.*

IV. The remarks just made show the propriety of treating the *o* in *woman* and *wolf*, and also in *wol*, the beginning of many proper names, (being exactly the sound of *u* in *full,*) as the short sound of muffled *o* long. It occurs, I believe, only in the words adduced.

V. Broad *a* long. This sound of *o* is admitted by orthoepists with reluctance and hesitation; but it is as well established by usage, at least in this country, as any other elementary sound in the language: the speaker who should pronounce *o* in *cost, lost, or, nor,* &c., like *o* in not, would expose himself to merited ridicule. The positions in which this sound occurs can only be learned from usage.

VI. Broad *a* short. This sound "corresponds exactly to that of *a* in *what,* with which the words *not, got, lot,* &c., are perfect rhymes."—*Walker.*

Webster places both of the *a* sounds of *o*, very arbitrarily I think, under this head; but the editor of his octavo edition candidly admits, that in some cases, *o* approximates to the broad *a* long sound.

This letter is, in several instances, incorrectly pronounced. *Home, stone, whole,* which should invariably have the sound of alphabetical *o* long, are heard pronounced, not seldom, as if written *hum, stun, hull: does* and *doth*, the *o* in which is alphabetical short, as if written *doos* and *dothe:* in the unaccented syllable of such words as *creator, governor,* &c., the short broad *a* sound of *o*, is, with very bad taste, substituted for the alphabetical short; which sound, it should be observed, is the proper one in nearly all unaccented terminations: the prefix *pro*, like *pre*, noticed above, in the careless pronunciation of some speakers, loses its vowel.

5. *U* has five sounds.

1. Alphabetical.	as heard in	mule, pure, tube, cubic, union.
2. Muffled *o* short,		full, push, put, cushion, bullock.
3. Alph. *o* short,		dull, tub, lumber, adumbration.
4. " *e* short,		busy, minute, and their compounds.
5. Middle *a* short,		bury, and its compounds.

REMARKS.

I. Alphabetical *u*. This vowel is compound. It is composed of alphabetical *e* and muffled *o*, or *eoo;* which, rapidly pronounced, will express it. *U* has this sound,

1. When it ends a syllable; as in *duty, futurity, accumulate.*

2. When followed by a single consonant and final *e;* as in *acute, tube.*

II. The muffled or *oo* portion of alphabetical *u*, is heard in *prove, move,* &c.; and of this, the *u* in *full* is the short sound; as may be observed by comparing the *o* in *wolf.* Hence I call the second sound of *u*, the muffled *o* short.

III. Alphabetical *o* short: so called because precisely the sound of alphabetical *o* short. (*See above.*) This *u*, as well as the preceding, is followed by one or more consonants in the same syllable: as they occur in the same position, practice alone can enable us to distinguish them.

IV. Alphabetical *e* and middle *a* short. *Busy, bury,* with their compounds, and *minute,* are, I think, the only words in which these sounds occur. The pronunciation of *minute* is clearly improper. The *u*, when shortened, should, at least, have passed into alphabetical *o* short, after the analogy of *rapine,* and have been pronounced as if written *minut,* not *minit.* But custom, usage has settled the matter apparently beyond change.

As to *busy* and *bury,* they seem to have preserved their original pronunciation, while they lost their original orthography.

Busy is derived from the Saxon *bysgian, to occupy* or *employ;* and it should therefore have been written with an *i* instead of a *u:* it was so written by Wicklif; as in the following passage:

"But I woll that ghe be without *bisyness;* for he that is without wif is *bisi* what things ben of the Lord, how he schal plese God; but he that is with a wif, is *bisi* what things ben of the world, how he schal plese the wif, and he is departed."

Bury is derived from the Saxon *byrgan, to place in safety;* and hence like the preceding word it should have been written with an *i. Birie* is the orthography of Wicklif: the following passages show this.

"Another of hise disciples seide to him, Lord, suffre me to go first, and *birie* my fadir; but Jhesus seide to him, Sue thou me, and lete the dede men *birie* their dede men."

"The earth schook, and stoones weren cloven, and *birials* weren opened, and many bodies of sayntes that hadden slept rysen up." (*See Richardson's Dictionary on the words.*)

The alphabetical sound of this vowel, it must be confessed, is sadly abused in pronunciation, and sometimes quite suppressed: abused by being pronounced like muffled *o* or *oo* in a multitude of words; as in *tube, literature,* &c., and suppressed in such words as *regular, popular, particular,* &c.

6. *Y*, when a vowel, has four sounds.

1. Alphabetical *i*,	as heard in	my, tyrant, multiply, thyme.
2. " *e*		fancy, philosophy, holy, envy.
3. " *e* short,		lyric, hypocrite, pyramid, system.
4. Middle *a* short,		myrtle, martyr.

REMARKS.

I. Alphabetical *i*. *Y* has this sound at the end of an accented syllable; as in *my, tyrant.*

II. Alphabetical *e*. It has this sound generally when in unaccented syl-

lables; as in *baby, fancy, muddy, angry, balmy, many, philosophy, happy, phrensy*, &c.

Exceptions. These are very numerous; as in all words ending in *fy;* as *justify;* and others; as *multiply, occupy, butterfly, prophesy, gyration*, &c.

III. Alphabetical *e* short and middle *a* short. These sounds, as the examples in the table prove, occur in the same circumstances. Practice must enable us to distinguish them.

7. *W*, as a vowel, has no independent sound. It becomes vocal only in conjunction with another vowel with which it forms a diphthong; as in *blow, cow, howl, scowl.*

VII. A diphthong is the union of two vowels in one articulation; as *ou* in *sour:* a triphthong is the union of three vowels in one articulation; as *eau* in *beau.*

Diphthongs are divided into proper and improper, or digraphs. In the first, the vowels blend and form one sound; as *au* in *caught:* in the second, one of the vowels only is vocal; as *ea* in *beat, oa* in *coat,* and *eo* in *leopard.* I proceed to enumerate and describe them.

1. *Aa, ae, ai, au, aw, ay.*

1. *Aa* has two sounds.

1. Of alphabetical *a,*
2. " flat *a* short,

} as heard in { Aaron. / Balaam, Canaan, Isaac.

2. *Ae* has one sound: viz., of alphabetical *e;* as heard in Æneas, Cæsar.

3. *Ai* has three sounds.

1. Of alphabetical *a,*
2. " " *a* short,
3. " flat *a* short,

} as heard in { ail, bail, fail. / said, again, fountain. / plaid, raillery.

In *Britain, certain, fountain*, and other words of the same termination, *ai* is pronounced by Walker and others like *i* in *tin;* but for what reason is not obvious; and as for usage, the obscure sound of *e*, as in *chicken* and *kitchen*, is as often heard as any other, among polished speakers; as it is unquestionably the legitimate short sound of *ai* in *ail, bail;* which is nothing more than a representative of alphabetical *a.*

4. *Au* has four sounds.

1. Of flat *a* short,
2. " broad *a* long,
3. " " " short,
4. " alphabetical *o,*

} as heard in { aunt, gauntlet, laugh. / caught, fraught, taught. / laurel. / hautboy.

5. *Aw* has always one sound: viz., of broad *a* long; as in *bawl, crawl, scrawl.*

6. *Ay* has always the sound of alphabetical *a* long; as in *bay, day, delay.*

2. *Ea, eau, ee, ei, eo, eou, eu, ew, ey.*

1. *Ea* has six sounds.

1.	Of alphabetical *a* long,	as heard in	break, great.
2.	" " *a* short,		meadow, thread.
3.	" middle *a* long,		bear, tear.
4.	" " *a* short,		earth, dearth, earl.
5.	" flat *a* long,		heart, hearken.
6.	" alphabetical *e* long,		beaver, appear.

2. *Eau* has two sounds.

1.	Of alphabetical *o* long,	as heard in	beau, portmanteau.
2.	" " *u*,		beauty, and its compounds.

3. *Ee* has two sounds.

1.	Of alphabetical *e* long,	as heard in	beet, creep, sweep.
2.	" " *e* short,		been, breeches.

4. *Ei* has six sounds.

1.	Of alphabetical *a* long,	as heard in	deign, heinous, veil.
2.	" " *a* short,		heifer, leisure, nonpareil.
3.	" middle *a* long,		heir, their.
4.	" alphabetical *e* long,		deceit, receive, seize.
5.	" " *e* short,		foreign, forfeit, surfeit.
6.	" " *i*,		height, sleight.

5. *Eo* has four sounds.

1.	Of alphabetical *a* short,	as heard in	leopard, jeopardy.
2.	" " *e* long,		people.
3.	" " *o* long,		yeoman.
4.	" " *o* short,		surgeon, dungeon.

6. *Eou*, when a triphthong, has but one sound: viz., of alphabetical *o* short; as in *righteous, advantageous, gorgeous, outrageous*, &c.

7. *Eu* has uniformly the sound of alphabetical *u*; as in *deuce, deuteronomy, feud, grandeur*. It is often erroneously pronounced like *oo*.

8. *Ew* has two sounds.

1.	Of alphabetical *o* long,	as heard in	shew, sew.
2.	" " *u*,		crew, dew, mew.

Like *eu*, it is often erroneously pronounced *oo*.

9. *Ey* has three sounds.

1.	Of alphabetical *a* long,	as heard in	bey, prey.
2.	" " *e* long,		key, ley, alley.
3.	" " *i*,		eye.

3. *Ia, ie, ieu, iew, io, iou.*

1. *Ia,* when a diphthong, has the sound of alphabetical *e* short; as in *marriage, carriage.*

2. *Ie,* when a diphthong, has four sounds.

1. Of alphabetical *a* short,	as heard in	friend.
2. " " *e* long,		chief, grief.
3. " " *e* short,		sieve, species.
4. " " *i*,		die, lie, pie.

3. *Ieu* has the sound of alphabetical *u;* as in *lieu, adieu, purlieu.*

4. *Iew* has also the sound of alphabetical *u;* as in *view, review.*

5. *Io,* when a diphthong, has the alphabetical *o* short sound of *u;* as in *marchioness, cushion, conversion, devotion, question, digestion.*

6. *Iou,* when a triphthong, has the sound of alphabetical *o* short; as in *precious, vexatious.* It is often incorrectly pronounced after *d* as a triphthong; as in *tedious,* spoken as if written *te-je-ous* or *te-jus.*

4. *Oa, oe, oeu, oi, oo, ou, ow, oy.*

1. *Oa* has two sounds.

1. Of broad *a* long,	as heard in	broad, groat.
2. " alphabetical *o* long,		boat, loaf, road.

2. *Oe* has five sounds.

1. Of alphabetical *a* short,	as heard in	œcumenic, fœtid.
2. " " *e* long,		fœtus, œiliad.
3. " " *o* long,		doe, foe, toe, hoe.
4. " " *o* short,		does.
5. " muffled *o* long,		canoe, shoe.

3. *Oeu* has the sound of muffled *o* long; as in *manœuvre.*

4. *Oi* has six sounds.

1. Of middle *a* short,	as heard in	av*oi*rdupois.
2. " broad *a* and of alphabetical *e* long		boil, toil.
3. " alphabetical *e* long,		chamois, turcois.
4. " " *e* short,		connoisseur, tortoise.
5. " " *i*,		choir.
6. " *w* and broad *a* long,		devoir, reservoir.

5. *Oo* has four sounds.

1. Of alphabetical *o* long,	as heard in	door, floor.
2. " " *o* short,		blood, flood.
3. " muffled *o* long,		fool, moon, rood.
4. " " *o* short,		hood, foot, wool, root.

6. *Ou* has six sounds.

1.*			bound, doubt, cloud, hour.
2.	Of broad *a* long,		cough, brought, thought.
3.	" alphabetical *o* long,	as heard in	mourn, pour, though.
4.	" " *o* short,		enough, journey, tough.
5.	" muffled *o* long,		soup, surtout, through, your.
6.	" " *o* short,		could, should, would.

7. *Ow* has three sounds.

1.			cow, vow, brown.
2.	Of broad *a* short,	as heard in	knowledge.
3.	" alphabetical *o* long,		blow, blown.

8. *Oy* has only one sound; viz., that of broad *a* and alphabetical *e* long; as in *cloy, boy*.

5. *Ua, ue, ui, uo, uoy, uy.*

1. *Ua* has three sounds.

1.	Of *w* and alph. *a* long,		assuage, persuade.
2.	" flat *a* long,	as heard in	guard, piquant.
3.	" alphabetical *e* short,		victuals, victualer.

2. *Ue* has four sounds.

1.	Of *w* and alph. *a* short,		quench, conquest.
2.	" alphabetical *a* short,	as heard in	coquet, guest.
3.	" middle *a* short,		conquer, guerdon.
4.	" alphabetical *u*,		ague, cue, hue, virtue.

It is sometimes mute; as in *antique, dialogue*, &c.

3. *Ui* has four sounds.

1.	Of *w* and alph. *e* short,		languid, vanquish.
2.	" alphabetical *e* short,	as heard in	guilt, guinea.
3.	" " *i*,		guide, disguise.
4.	" " *u*,		juice, pursuit.

4. *Uo* has two sounds.

1.	Of *w* and alph. *o* long,	as heard in	quote, quotation.
2.	" *w* and alph. *o* short,		quoth.

5. *Uoy* has one sound; viz., of *w* and broad *a* and *e* long; or of *w* and *oi* in *boil*. It occurs only in one word: *buoy*.

6. *Uy* has three sounds.

1.	Of *w* and alph. *e* long,		obloquy, colloquy.
2.	" alphabetical *e* long,	as heard in	plaguy, roguy.
3.	" alphabetical *i*,		buy, and its derivatives.

---

* This sound has no representative.

1. A Synopsis of the Preceding Vowel and Diphthongal Sounds.

		AS IN		REPRESENTED BY		
Alphabetical	A		game		aa, ai, ay, ea, ei, ey	Aaron, ail, bay, break, reign, prey.
" short	"		many		e, ai, ea, ei, eo, ie, oe, ue	bet, said, head, heifer, leopard, friend, fœtid, guest
Middle	"		care		e, ai, ea, ei	where, lair, bear, heir.
" short	"		liar*		e, i, u, y, ea, ue	herd, bird, bury, myrtle, earl, conquer.
Flat	"		father		ea, ua	hearken, guard.
" short	"		fat		aa, ai	Isaac, plaid.
Broad	"		all		o, au, aw, oa	cost, caught, awful, broad.
" short	"		what		o, au	not, laurel.
Alphabetical	E		theme		i, y, ea, ee, ei, eo, ey, ie, oe, oi	machine, fancy, fear, beet, receive, people, key, chief, fœtid, chamois.
" short	"		pretty		i, u, y, ee, ei, ia, ie, oi, ua, ui	chin, busy, lyric, been, foreign, marriage, sieve, connoisseur, victuals, guilt.
Alphabetical	I		mine		y, ei, ey, ie, oi, ui, uy	my, height, eye, die, choir, guide, buy.
Alphabetical	O		bone		au, eau, eo, ew, oa, oe, oo, ou, ow	hautboy, beau, yeoman, shew, boat, foe, door, mourn, blow.
" short	"		love		u, eo, eou, io, iou, oe, oo, ou	dull, surgeon, righteous, cushion, precious, does, blood, tough.
Muffled	"		prove		oe, oo, ou	shoe, fool, soup.
" short	"		wolf		u, oo, ou	full, hood, could.
Alphabetical	U		mule		eau, eu, ew, ieu, iew, ue, ui	beauty, feud, dew, adieu, view, hue, juice.
	OI		boil		oy	boy.
	OU		our		ow	cow, owl.

IX. All the letters of the alphabet, not hitherto described, are called consonants: so called, because some of them cannot be uttered at all, and the remainder but in part, independently of the vowels. They are as follows: *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *i*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *w*, *x*, *y*, *z*; to which must be added *th*, *ch*, *sh*, *zh*, *wh*, *ng*: being plainly elementary sounds, and as such belonging to the alphabet, though not formally included in it.

X. Consonants may be divided into two classes: real consonants, and substitutes.

By a real consonant, is meant that which has a peculiar and determinate sound of its own, though it may assume that of another letter or a combination of letters; and by a substitute, one which has no peculiar and determinate sound of its own, but uniformly represents that of some other letter or combination of letters.

XI. The real consonants are, *b*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *v*, *w*, *x*, *y*, *z*, *ch*, *sh*, *th*, *wh*, *ng*.

Real consonants are either unchangeable or changeable. Unchangeable consonants are those which uniformly have the same sound: changeable, those which, besides having their peculiar sounds, in certain positions assume other sounds.

A consonant is not changeable because, in one or two instances, it may assume another sound; (which may be merely a vicious effect of custom;) but only when it assumes another sound, in the same position, in all words, or generally; and hence when this assumption can be traced to a general law.

1. The unchangeable are, *b*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *k*, *l*, *m*, *p*, *r*, *v*, *w*, *y*, *sh*, *th*, *wh*.

1. *B.* Its sound is heard in *battle*, *rebel*, *bibber*, *cub*. After *m*, (except in *accumb*, *succumb*, *rhomb*,) and before *t*, in the same syllable, it is silent; as in *lamb*, *bomb*, *thumb*, *debtor*, *doubt*, *subtle*.

2. *F.* *F* is heard in *fancy*, *muffin*. In *of*, but not in its compounds, it has the sound of *v*.

3. *H.* This letter is merely a strong breathing, which may be heard in *hat*, *horse*, *hedge*. At the beginning of the words, *heir*, *heiress*, *herb*, *herbage*, *honest*, *honesty*, *honor*, *honorable*, *hour*, after *r*, as in *rhomb*, *rhetoric*, and at the end of a word preceded by a vowel, as in *ah*, *oh*, it is silent.

In many words it is suppressed where it should be heard; as in *hostler*, *humble*, *exhale*, *exhibit*, *exhort*, *exhaust*, *exhilarate*, &c.

4. *J.* The sound of *j* is heard in *James*, *jelly*. It has the sound of *y* in *hallelujah*.

5. *K.* The sound of *k* is heard in *keep, skirt, murky.* Before *n,* it is mute; as in *knife, knell, knocker, knew.*

6. *L.* This letter has a soft liquid sound; as in *sorrel, billow, love.* It is often silent before *d, f, k, m,* and *v;* as in *could, should, would, calf, half, talk, balm, salve.*

7. *M.* *M* is heard in *man, deem, murmur, monumental.* In *comptroller* it has the sound of *n;* and in *mnemonic,* it is silent.

8. *P.* The sound of *p* is heard in *pay, lip, puppy.* It is silent before *n,* between *m* and *t,* and before *s* and *t* at the beginning of words; as in *pneumatics, tempt, ptisan, psalm;* and also in the words, *corps, raspberry, receipt.*

9. *R.* The sound of this letter is heard in *rage, brimstone, hurra.*

10. *V.* The sound of *v* is heard in *vain, levity, ovation, relieve.* It is silent in *sevennight.*

11. *W.* *W* is heard in *want, will, word, ween, reward.* In *answer, sword,* and before *r,* as in *wrap, wreck, wrong,* it is silent.

12. *Y.* The sound of *y* is heard in *yonder,* &c.

13. *Sh.* The peculiar sound of *sh* is heard in *shine, short, refreshment, relish.*

14. *Th.* This combination has two sounds: the one sharp, as in *think, with;* the other flat, as in *them, clothe.* The *h* is silent in *asthenic, asthma, isthmus, phthisic, phthisical, Thomas, Thames, thyme.*

15. *Wh.* This sound is heard in *which, what, when, where, whale,* &c. The *w* is sometimes silent; as in *whole, who, whose, whom, whoop.*

2. The changeable consonants are *d, g, n, s, t, x, z, ch, ng.*

1. *D.* The peculiar sound of *d* is heard in *dead, meddle, ruddy.* It assumes the sound of *t* in the termination *ed* of the past tense, when immediately preceded by *c, f, k, p, s, x, ch, sh,* or *q;* as in *faced, stuffed, cracked, tripped, vexed, vouched, flashed, piqued.* In *handsome, stadtholder, and Wednesday,* it is silent.

The sound of *j*, which Walker assigns to this letter after the accent and followed by *ia, ie, u* alph., *o* and *eou,* as in *radiance, obedience, mediocrity, arduous, hideous,* &c., as if written *rajiance, obejience, mejiocrity, arjuous, hijeous,* is unwarranted, absurd and mischievous. Even in *soldier,* in which *d* is generally allowed to have the sound of *j,* it may be doubted whether *d* loses its proper sound. It is rather partially blended, in the rapidity of articulation, with the *y* sound of the *i* which follows it.

2. *G.* The peculiar sound of *g,* (usually called its hard sound,) is heard at the end of words, and before *a, o, u, l, r;* as in *bag, log, rug; game, gone, gull, glory, grandeur.* It assumes the sound of *j,* (usually called its soft sound,) before *e, i,* and *y;* as in *gem, giant, ginger, Egypt, gyration, badge, edge,* &c. Ex-

ceptions are numerous ; as in *get, finger, gilt, gimblet, girl, give, giddy, geld, girt, girth,* &c. Before *m* and *n* in the same syllable, as in *phlegm, gnash, malign,* and before *l* in the words *intaglio* and *seraglio, g* is silent.

3. *N.* The proper sound of *n* is heard in *manner, number.* It assumes the sound of *ng* when followed in the same syllable by *k, c, ch, q, x ;* as in *bank, ankle, cincture, distinct, bronchial, banquet, anxiously.* After *l* and *m* in the same syllable, it is silent ; as in *kiln, condemn, hymn.*

4. *S.* The peculiar sound of *s* is heard in *sap, passing, use.* It has this sound,

1. At the beginning of words ; as in *sabbath, saddle, set, smile, spin, suit ;* except *sugar, sure,* &c.

2. After *f, k, p, t ;* as in *scoffs, strifes, kicks, rakes, hops, hopes, bats, gates,* &c.

3. When double, except perhaps in *dissolve, possess,* and before the terminations *ion, ia, ie* or *u,* &c.

4. In the inseparable prefix *dis,* except in *disarm, discern, disdain, disease, dishonor,* and their compounds : in *mis ;* and in the terminations *ase, ese, ise,* except *wise, otherwise, otherguise ;* and *ose, use ; sive, sory,* and *osity,* of adjectives.

It assumes the sound of *z,*

1. In the following words : *as, is, was, his, has, these, those,* and *others.*

2. After *b, d, g, v, l, m, n, r ;* as in *hubs, ribs, beds, buds, heads, rags, shrugs, serves, fills, clams, dens, bars, stars.*

3. When together with *e,* (not mute *e,*) it forms the plural of nouns, and the third person singular of verbs ; as in *praises, riches, shoes, tries, flies, dies,* &c.

4. After the inseparable prefix *re,* almost always ; as in *reserve, reside, result ;* generally in the terminations *son, ser, sin ;* and often in the terminations *sy, scy, sible, ise.*

It assumes the sound of *sh,*

1. In *sure, sugar,* and their compounds.

2. When preceded by the accent and another *s,* or *l, m, n, r,* and followed by *ia, ie, io,* or alphabetical *u ;* as in *cassia, circensian, expulsion, transient, mansion, version, censure, pressure.*

It assumes the sound of *zh,*

When preceded by the accent and a vowel, and followed by *ia, ie, io,* or alphabetical *u ;* as in *ambrosial, brasier, vision, usual, pleasure, erasure.*

EXCEPTIONS. *Enthusiastic, ecclesiastic.*

It is silent in *aisle, corps, demesne, isle, island, puisne, viscount.*

5. *T.* The peculiar sound of *t* is heard in *ten, met, written.* It assumes the sound of *sh,*

When preceded by the accent either primary or secondary, and followed by *ia, ie,* or *io ;* as in *partial, patient, notation.*

It assumes the sound of *ch,*

When preceded by the accent and *s* or *x ;* as in *fustian, question, mixtion.* It is silent before *le* (except in *pestle*) and *en ;* as in *hasten, bustle ;* in *billetdoux, eclat, hautboy, mortgage ;* and in the first syllable of *chestnut.*

6. *X.* The peculiar sound of this letter is heard in *exit, exercise, excellence, luxury,* which always occurs,

1. At the end of an accented syllable; as in the words quoted.

2. At the end of a syllable followed by an accented syllable, beginning with a consonant; as in *excuse, extent, expense.*

It assumes the sound of *z,*

At the beginning of a word; as in *Xenophon, Xerxes, Xanthus.*

It assumes the sound of *gz,*

At the end of a syllable followed by another syllable under accent beginning with a vowel; as in *example, exert, exist.*

Exceptions. *Doxology, proximity,* and compound words of which the primitives end in *x ;* as in *fixation, vexation, relaxation,* &c. The words *exhale, exhibit, exhort, exhaust,* should also be enumerated as exceptions to this rule, if *x* is to be pronounced *gz ;* since it immediately precedes an accented syllable beginning with a consonant. But as this sound is all but incompatible with the aspiration of *h,* and has led to the almost general suppression of *h* in these words, I think it ought to be rejected. It is silent in *billetdoux,* and at the end of all words derived from the French.

7. *Z.* The peculiar sound of *z* is heard in *zest, zink, zone.* It assumes the sound of *zh,* when preceded by the accent and a vowel, and is followed by *ie* or alphabetical *u ;* as in *glazier, azure.*

8. *Ch.* The peculiar sound of this combination is heard in *chin, chub, church.* It assumes the sound of *sh,* in words from the French; as in *machine, chagrin, chaise.* It assumes the sound of *k,* in words from the learned languages; as in *scheme, chorus, distich, Achish, Enoch.* It is silent in *schism, yacht* and *drachm.*

9. *Ng.* The peculiar sound of *ng* is heard in *sing, song, sung, mingling.* It assumes the sound of *nj*, when followed by *e* at the end of a syllable; as in *arrange, derange.*

XII. The substitutes are *c, gh, i, ph, q.*

1. *C.* This letter is a substitute,

1. For *k*, at the end of a syllable, and before *a, o, u, r, l, t;* as in *vaccination, cart, colt, cut, cur, college, cottage.*

2. For *s*, before *e, i, y;* as in *cedar, cider, cymbal, mercy.*

3. For *sh*, when followed by *ea, ia, ie, io, iou*, and preceded by the accent primary or secondary; as in *ocean, social, species, spacious.*

4. For *z*, as in *discern, sacrifice, suffice.*

C is silent in *arbuscle, corpuscle, czar, czarina, endict, muscle, victuals.*

2. *Gh.* This combination, when one or the other, or both of the letters are not silent, is a substitute for *f;* as in *laugh, cough, trough.*

3. *I.* This letter, as a consonant, is a substitute for *y;* as in the second syllable of *pinion*, &c.

4. *Ph. Ph* is always a substitute for *f;* as in *philosopher, caliph.*

5. *Q.* This letter is a substitute for *k*; as in *banquet, conquer, coquet.*

2. A Synopsis of the Preceding Consonants and Substitutes.

CONSONANTS.																	
UNCHANGEABLE.			CHANGEABLE.								SUBSTITUTES						
B	AS IN	bulb, cub.	D	AS IN	dead	ASSUMES THE SOUND OF	t	vexed, wished.				C	IS A SUBSTITUTE FOR	k	vaccination, cur, cottage.		
F		fan, if.	G		gone, rug		j	gem, edge.						s	cedar, mercy.		
H		hat, horse.	N		manner		ng	bank, distinct.						sh	ocean, spacious.		
J		jest, jelly.					z	was, rags, stars.						z	discern, suffice.		
K		keep, skirt.	S		sap, use		sh	sure, sugar.				gh		f	laugh, cough.		
L		love, billow.					zh	vision, usual.				I		y	pin-ion, christ-ian.		
M		man, deem.	T		ten, met		sh	partial.				U		w	persuade, vanquish.		
P		pay, lip.					ch	question.				ph		f	philosopher, caliph.		
R		rage, brine.	X		exercise		z	Xenophon.				Q		k	banquet, conquer.		
V		vain, levity.					gz	example.									
W		want, reward.	Z		zest, zone		zh	azure.									
Y		yonder.					sh	machine.									
sh		short, relish.	ch		church		k	scheme, chorus.									
th		with, then.	ng		mingling		nj	arrange.									
wh		where, what.															

SEC. II. ACCENT.

Accent, in general, is that greater stress which is laid on one syllable of a word in comparison with another. It is employed to promote ease of articulation, to distinguish different parts of speech having the same form, and to express opposition of thought. Hence, as it subserves any one of these ends, it may be denominated *articulatory, discriminative,* or *rhetorical.*

1. *Articulatory Accent.*

Articulatory accent is either primary or secondary: the first, distinguished from the last, by appearing at an earlier stage in the formation of words, by being indispensable to all words of more than one syllable, and by being produced by a more forcible utterance. A word never has the secondary accent until it contains three or more syllables; and it may have three, four, and even five syllables, without having the secondary accent in a degree to attract notice; as in *relative, communicative.* The greater force of the primary may be observed in such words as *estimated, recommendation, heterogeneous.*

But few general rules can be given to determine the place of the accent. Many that are prescribed as such, have exceptions as numerous as the words which they embrace. The limited number subjoined, are mainly drawn from Webster.

1. Monosyllables, though they may be pronouced with force, are necessarily without accent: comparison of one syllable with another being involved in the very nature of accent.

2. Dissyllables submit to no general rule of accentuation whatever; as may be readily ascertained by testing those rules which Walker, Murray and others apply to this class of words.

3. Trissyllables, derived from dissyllables, usually retain the accent of their primitives; as in *poet, poetess; pleasant, pleasantly; gracious, graciously; relate, related; polite, politely, politest.*

4. Words of four syllables also, derived from dissyllables, generally retain the accent of their primitives; as in *collectible* from *collect; serviceable* from *service; virtuously* from *virtue; dictionary* from *diction; fancifulness* from *fancy.*

5. In all cases, the preterit and participles of verbs retain the accents of the verbs.

6. Words ending in *tion, sion, tian, cious, tious, cial, tial, tiate, tient, cient,* have the accent on the syllable preceding that termination; as *motion, aversion, christian, avaricious, adventitious, commercial, geometrician, substantial, negotiate, patient, ancient.*

7. Words of more than two syllables, ending in *ty,* have, for the most part, the accent on the antepenult; as *entity, liberty, gratuity, propriety, prosperity, insensibility.*

8. Trissyllables ending in *ment,* for the most part, have the accent on the first syllable; as *complement, detriment;* but to this rule there are many exceptions, and particularly nouns formed from verbs; as *amendment, commandment.*

Words ending with *cracy, fluous, ferous, fluent, gonal, gony, machy, loquy, mathy, meter, nomy, ogy, pathy, phony, parous, scopy, strophe, vomous, tomy, raphy,* have the accent on the antepenultimate syllable; as *democracy, superfluous, odoriferous, mellifluent, diagonal, cosmogony, logomachy, obloquy, polymathy, barometer, economy, theology, apathy, euphony, oviparous, aeroscopy, apostrophe, ignivomous, duatomy, geography.*

Such is a brief statement of the rules of accentuation which possess any value.

2. *Discriminative Accent.*

This, as I have already observed, is employed to distinguish different parts of speech having the same form: principally nouns

and verbs, but in a few instances nouns and adjectives; as in the following list, which I obtain from Mr. Walker.

ab'ject	abject'	con'fine	confine'	im'port	import'
absent	absent	conflict	conflict	incense	incense
abstract	abstract	conserve	conserve	insult	insult
accent	accent	consort	consort	object	object
affix	affix	contest	contest	perfume	perfume
augment	augment	contrast	contrast	prefix	prefix
bombard	bombard	converse	converse	premise	premise
cement	cement	convert	convert	presage	presage
colleague	colleague	descant	descant	present	present
collect	collect	digest	digest	produce	produce
compact	compact	essay	essay	project	project
compound	compound	export	export	protest	protest
compress	compress	extract	extract	rebel	rebel
concert	concert	exile	exile	refuse	refuse
concrete	concrete	ferment	ferment	subject	subject
conduct	conduct	frequent	frequent	survey	survey

3. *Rhetorical Accent.*

This is a temporary accent, or, perhaps more properly speaking, the customary accent transferred from its place to another syllable, to express opposition of thought.

Examples.

1. He must *in*crease, but I must *de*crease.
2. What fellowship hath righteousness with *un*righteousness?
3. Consider well what you have done, and what you have left *un*done.
4. This corruptible must put on *in*corruption; and this mortal must put on *im*mortality.
5. The difference in this case, is no less than betwixt decency and *in*decency: betwixt religion and *ir*religion.
6. In the suitableness or *un*suitableness, the proportion or *dis*proportion of the affection to the object which excites it, consists the propriety or *im*propriety of the consequent action.
7. Now that he *a*scended, what is it but that he also *de*scended first into the lower parts of the earth? He that *de*scended, is the same also that *a*scended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.

CHAPTER II.

PUNCTUATION.

What I have to say, under this head, rests on the following propositions:

1. That our language comprises a limited number of sentences, having each a peculiar and uniform construction by which they may be always and easily recognised:

2. That all sentences of the same construction, should, in strict propriety, be punctuated, without regard to their brevity or length, in the same manner:

3. That the punctuation should always coincide with the delivery; so that the one may be a guide to the other; or, rather, so that the construction of a sentence may determine the punctuation and the delivery at the same time:

4. That every departure from the proper punctuation, by which the latter is brought in conflict with the delivery, should be systematic; that is to say, should be for reasons which apply to all cases of the same kind; so that the design of the change in punctuation may be, in every case, obvious, and the proper delivery retained notwithstanding.

In the remarks which follow, I purposely refrain from entering on the details of punctuation: nothing more being necessary at present, than the general rules which determine the proper use of the different pauses, and so prepare the way to understand the classification and description of sentences on succeeding pages. Their special application, I deem it best to reserve until the subject of structure shall be under consideration.

Pauses are employed for three purposes:

1. To mark divisions of sense;
2. To indicate the nature of the sentence; and
3. To denote unusual construction or significance.

SEC. I. PAUSES WHICH MARK DIVISIONS OF SENSE.

These are, 1. The comma, 2. " semicolon, 3. " colon, 4. " period, 5. " double period, } written thus { , ; : . .

I. THE COMMA.

The comma is properly employed, only, in separating the members of a sentence, making imperfect sense until the end is reached; or containing only one proposition.

As a pause, it suspends the voice, in unimpassioned reading or speaking, sufficiently long to draw breath: under the influence of emotion, its time is indefinite.

NOTE I. By imperfect sense, I mean sense imperfect according to the author; for a sentence may be so constructed that the first half or the first quarter of it, if considered apart from what follows, would of itself make perfect sense, and consequently demand, in conformity to the rule, some pause different from the comma; but, if considered with reference to the author's intention, the sense is imperfect, until what follows, be subjoined. Observe this sentence: "We came to our journey's end, at last, with no small difficulty, after much fatigue, through deep roads, and bad weather." Take any part of this sentence terminating with a comma, and, if you look no farther than that part, you will have perfect sense, but not the perfect sense of the author: what follows the comma being absolutely necessary to the completeness of his thought; as much so, as if the sentence were written thus: "At last, after much fatigue, through deep roads and bad weather, we came, with no small difficulty, to our journey's end." This is unquestionably a better construction than the other, but the parts are not more closely allied, nor more indispensable to the completeness of the author's thought than before. What then is the difference between the two forms of construction? None with regard to the author, and none, consequently, with regard to the use of the comma. The difference between them respects the hearer or reader exclusively; and that difference is this: the first at no point raises an expectation of any thing to follow; the second excites and keeps up such an expectation until the close of the sentence is reached.

NOTE II. That the sense is imperfect according to the author, may be known by several circumstances. It is imperfect

1. When a subject, or nominative case, with its adjuncts, governs no verb; as, "John, who was with me."

2. When, if a period should be inserted at a given point, (as at either of the divisions in the following sentences,) verbs and nouns would be left without government, adverbs have nothing to qualify, and adjectives have no agreement; as "He invaded the country | fought three battles | and took twelve cities. They built the house with an auger | a saw | and a hammer. God made man | erect | free | intelligent | immortal. He was heard painfully | and impatiently." The part of the sentence, succeeding the period at any of the points indicated by the perpendicular mark, would be unintelligible.

3. When a preposition with its government, would express no relation; as in note 1st: We came | to our journey's end | at last | with no small difficulty | sc.

4. When the first part of a sentence implies the remainder: having a word in it which raises an expectation of another about to follow; as, as—so, when—then, where—there, if—then, in examples 9, 10, 11, and 12 of proper use below.

NOTE III. The sentence or proposition may be expressed declaratively or interrogatively; as, "Did we not come, at last, to our journey's end, with no small difficulty, sc. sc.?"

NOTE IV. By a proposition, it may be sufficient to say here, is meant that assemblage of words, or members, which is necessary to a complete thought: in other words, a proposition is a series of words expressing a complete thought. (*See Class.*)

NOTE V. When I say, the comma *as a pause* suspends the voice, &c. &c., I mean to intimate that the comma does not necessarily represent a pause, but simply designates the place where, if necessary, a pause may be made: where the relation of the words is not so close, but that, if necessary, they can be separated long enough to take breath, or to produce some rhetorical effect, without injury to the sense. The pause should, if possible, be limited to those commas which mark principal or leading divisions of imperfect sense; inasmuch as its frequent repetition, together with the peculiar inflexion connected with it, tends to monotony.*

---

* Sunt aliquando et respiratione quædam moræ etiam in periodis; ut in illa, *in cœtu vero populi Romani, negotium publicum gerens, magister equitum &c.*, multa membra habent. Sensus enim sunt alii atque alii, et sicut una circumductio est, ita paulum morandum in his intervallis, non interrumpendus est contextus; et è contrario, spiritum interim recipere sine intellectu moræ necesse est quo loco, quasi surripiendus est.—*Quinc.*

1. *Examples of the proper use of the Comma.*

1. Industry, good sense and virtue, are, as a general thing, essential to health, wealth and happiness.

2. Uncommon expressions, strong flashes of wit, pointed similes, epigrammatic turns, especially when they recur too frequently, are a disfigurement rather than any embellishment of discourse.

3. His dashing spirit, unused to control, and above submission to the loss of fortune, health and tranquillity, finishes the career of glory with a pistol.

4. But it appears to me, that the exhibition of the first magistrate, and of great statesmen, in caricature, must contribute to diminish or destroy that reverence which is always due to legal authority and established rank, and confessedly conducive to the most valuable ends of human society.

5. Destitute of education, and without a true friend to guide them, they turned out unfortunately, ran away from their trades, entered into low situations in the army and navy, married imprudently, or died early of intemperance.

6. Rural employments are certainly natural, amusing and healthy.

7. What is it you call eloquence? Is it the wretched trade of imitating that criminal, mentioned by a poet in his satires, who balanced his crimes before his judges with antithesis?

8. And where is the man that has not foibles, weaknesses, follies and defects of some kind? And where is the man that has greater virtues, greater abilities, more useful labors, to put into the opposite scale against his defects, than Dr. Johnson?

9. As in Adam all die, so in Christ shall all be made alive.

10. When that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away.

11. Where the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together.

12. If a more perfect union was formed, if justice was administered, if domestic tranquillity was secured, if the common defence was provided for, if the general welfare was promoted, it was all for the attainment of this end.

13. That faith which is one, that faith which renews and justifies all who possess it, that faith which confessions and formularies can never adequately express, is the property of each alike.

Let the student carefully observe the difference of structure in these thirteen sentences. The first six differ in nothing but length: the next four comprised in No. 7 and 8 are interrogatives: the three succeeding consist, each of them, of two parts, beginning with correlative words; as—so, when—then, where—there: the one marked No. 12 does not differ from those marked 9, 10, 11, except in having one of the correlative words understood, and in having a series of members in the first part: the last sentence, No. 13, is unlike the first six only in having a series of members at the beginning: all of them, however, agree in this; that they contain simply one proposition, or a sentence of which the sense is complete only when the end is reached.

2. *Examples of improper use.*

1. This paper gentlemen insists upon the necessity of emancipating the Catholics of Ireland, and that is charged as part of the libel.

2. In their day and generation they served and honored the country and the whole country, and their renown is the treasure of the whole country.

3. Such is the simile of a hero to a lion, of a person in sorrow to a flower drooping its head, of a violent passion to a tempest, of chastity to snow, of virtue to the sun and stars, and many others of the same kind.

4. It was the spirit of liberty which still abides on the earth and whose home is in the bosoms of the brave, which but yesterday in beautiful France restored their charter, which even now burns brightly on the towers of Belgium and has rescued Poland from the tyrant's grasp, making their sons and their daughters the wonder and the admiration of the world, the pride and glory of the human race!

In not one of these examples, (which are none of my own making, but all of them drawn from books,) does the comma separate parts making imperfect sense. In the first and second, the parts ending with *Ireland* and *country*, are complete propositions, which are followed by nothing to augment, or diminish, or qualify their meaning in any particular; and the succeeding parts are similar propositions: connected indeed, with the preceding, but nevertheless complete; and were it not for this slight connection, they would be clearly not less independent, than they are essentially different, propositions.

Again, in the third, the part ending with *lion*, is a complete proposition, unqualified by any thing in the succeeding parts: the author's idea is complete. The comma is, therefore, manifestly not the pause which, according to the rule, should be placed at the end of it. But if this makes perfect sense, so, for the same reason, does the next; and the next; until we reach the end: each of them in succession rejecting the comma, and calling for some other pause. It is true that a portion of the second, third, fourth, fifth and sixth part, must be supplied from the first part; but there is no common regimen: it is simply a case of abbreviation in view of the fact, that all the parts have the same subject. When the subjects are different, as examples 1 and 2 above, they are necessarily expressed as in 2, or represented by the pronouns, as in 1. When even they are the same, they are not seldom, as in the following example, repeated:

"Such was the man: such was the occasion: such was the event."

Example fourth, it will be observed, contains a double series of members: the first ending with *grasp*, and the second with *race*. Each of these series has a construction precisely like example 3d; and each should, therefore, be punctuated in the same manner, so far as any thing yet appears to the contrary: at least they alike exclude the comma.

As perfect sense is made at *grasp*, the comma is not the pause which should be inserted there; but as the punctuation before a participle in such a position as that of the word *making*, deserves a more extended consideration than I can give it here, and may receive it more advantageously on a succeeding page, I shall at present content myself with what I have already said.

CASES IN WHICH THE COMMA IS NOT INSERTED WHERE A PAUSE MAY BE MADE.

The comma being mainly designed to subserve perspicuity, it might be expected, that, where the sense is in no danger of being obscured by its suppression, though a pause may be made at the

place, and often is indispensable, it would be omitted. Such is the case; and with a view to emphasis, (hereafter to be discussed, and with which punctuation is closely connected,) as well as the importance of knowing all the positions of the pauses, to one who wishes to speak correctly, I will notice a few instances of this.

1. When the subject of a sentence stands at the beginning, is not one of the pronouns, and has either nothing between it and the verb, or merely a single word, as in example 3d, or a short inseparable adjunct, as in example 4th, the comma is not inserted, though a pause must frequently be made: *e. g.*

1. "Industry is the guardian of innocence." 2. "Necessity is the mother of invention." 3. "Virtue *therefore* is its own reward." 4. "The tender mercies *of the wicked* are cruel."

It should be observed here, however, that the pause is necessary after the subject, only, when it is under emphasis: a fact which has hitherto escaped the attention of writers on elocution. Place the emphasis on the verb or any succeeding word, and the pause disappears. This is the reason that the pronouns, though the subject of the sentence, and placed at the beginning, like "it," at the beginning of this note, are not followed by a pause, except when a special effort is made to render them emphatic.

2. When a part (of a sentence) making imperfect sense, is short, and is followed by another part beginning with a relative pronoun, restraining the meaning of its antecedent, the comma is always omitted, though a pause may be made: *e. g.* "Self-denial is the sacrifice *which* virtue must make." "A man *who* is of a detracting spirit, will misconstrue the most innocent words that can be put together."

3. Before and after such words as *then, therefore, thus, hence,* &c., the comma is suppressed for the most part, though a pause may be necessary: *e. g.*

"*Wherefore* I was grieved with that generation." "Let us *therefore* come boldly unto a throne of grace." "Being *then* made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness." "But *now* being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness."

4. The comma is frequently omitted, though a pause must be made, between the parts of a sentence transposed, or having the natural order reversed: *e. g.*

"In the multitude of my thoughts within me thy comforts delight my soul." "In the morning it flourisheth: in the evening it is cut down."

A pause is necessary in these sentences after *me, morning* and *evening.*

5. A pause may be made between parts which may be transposed without injury to the sense, although they are not transposed; and although the comma is seldom, I believe, inserted in such circumstances. Thus transposition removed from one of the sentences above, it would read as follows: "It flourisheth in the

morning: it is cut down in the evening;" and a pause may be made with propriety before *in*, in each member of the sentence.

It will be seen, hereafter, that the effect of emphasis is precisely the same, at such a point in the sentence, as at any at which the admission of the comma is not disputed. In this view, the fact is one which it is important to remember.

II THE SEMICOLON.

The semicolon properly separates the parts of a sentence making perfect sense; or distinct though related propositions, connected by conjunctions, adverbs, or relative pronouns, *expressed*. It is relatively twice the length of the comma: under the influence of passion, it has no determinate time.

NOTE 1. The first part is always complete in its construction, except in poetry, which enjoys a license in this respect as in many others, and in broken prose of the passions, which often leaves the imagination to supply what is left unsaid: the second part, and every succeeding part, are also often complete in their construction; but almost as often, if not quite, they must be completed by supplying a portion understood from the first part.

It should be observed, that these principal parts or divisions of a sentence may have subparts of the same nature.

NOTE 2. The sense is known to be perfect when, a period being inserted at a given point, what succeeds makes sense; or forms a distinct proposition.

NOTE 3. The rule above given for the insertion of the semicolon differs in terms only from that given in the earlier edition of this work. As the student may desire to compare them, and as a comparison may give him some additional light, I subjoin the old rule in the margin.*

1. *Examples of the proper use of the Semicolon.*

1. I would have your papers consist also of all things which may be necessary or useful to any part of society; *and* the mechanic arts should have their place as well as the liberal.

2. He has annexed a secret pleasure to any thing that is new or uncommon, that he might encourage us in the pursuit after knowledge, and engage us to search into the wonders of creation; *for* every new idea brings such a pleasure along with it, as rewards any pains we have taken in the acquisition, and consequently serves as a motive to put us on fresh discoveries.

3. The person he chanced to see, was, to appearance, an old, sordid, blind man; *but* upon his following him from place to place, he at last found, by his own confession, that he was Plutus, the

---

* The semicolon properly separates the parts of a sentence making perfect sense, and connected, not as members of the same regimen,[a] or of the same proposition,[b] but of a different regimen, and of distinct though related propositions, by conjunctions, adverbs, or relative pronouns, *expressed*. It is relatively twice the length of the comma: under the influence of passion, it has no determinate time.

a By common regimen, I mean the common dependence (for instance) of verbs, in different members of the sentence, but in the same mood and tense, and connected by conjunctions expressed or understood, on the same subject or nominative case: *e. g.* "But he *held* his peace, and *answered* nothing."

The difference between this construction and that of the following sentence, in which there is no common regimen, but distinct propositions are given, is obvious. "And it was the third hour; and they crucified him."

b "I would have your papers consist also of all things which may be necessary or useful to society." *Which*, in this sentence, connects members of a different regimen but of the same proposition. *Or* connects members of the same regimen *and* proposition.

"I would have your papers consist also of all things which may be necessary or useful to society; and the mechanic arts should have their place as well as the liberal." *And* here connects members of a different regimen and of distinct though related propositions.

god of riches; *and* that he was just come out of the house of a miser.

4. All superiority and pre-eminence that one man can have over another, may be reduced to the notion of quality; *which*, considered at large, is either that of fortune, body, or mind.

5. The mode of reasoning more generally used, and most suited to the train of popular speaking, is what is called the synthetic; *when* the point to be proved is fairly laid down, and one argument after another is made to bear upon it, till the hearers be fully convinced.

6. By-and-by, Clodius met him on the road, on horseback, like a man prepared for action; *whilst* Milo is travelling in a carriage with his wife, wrapped up in his cloak, embarrassed with baggage, and attended by a great train of women, servants and boys.

7. Consider whether it can be illustrated to advantage by pointing out examples, or appealing to the feelings of the hearers; *that* thus, a definite, precise, circumstantial view may be afforded of the doctrine to be inculcated.

8. But besides this consideration, there is another of still higher importance; *though* I am not sure of its being attended to as much as it deserves; *namely*, that from the fountain of real and genuine virtue are drawn those sentiments which will ever be the most powerful in affecting the hearts of others.

9. I must therefore desire the reader to remember, that by the pleasures of the imagination, I meant only such pleasures as arise originally from sight; *and* that I divide these pleasures into two kinds.

10. Let it be the study of public speakers, in addressing any popular assembly, to be previously masters of the business on which they are to speak; to be well provided with matter and argument; *and* to rest upon these the chief stress.

11. Knowing this: that the law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless and disobedient; for the ungodly and for sinners; for unholy and profane; for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers; for manslayers; for whoremongers; for them that defile themselves with mankind; for men-stealers; for liars; for perjured persons; *and** if there be any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine [for that.]

12. And besides this, giving all diligence, add to your faith, virtue; *and* to virtue, knowledge; *and* to knowledge, temperance; *and* to temperance, patience; *and* to patience, godliness; *and* to godliness, brotherly kindness; *and* to brotherly kindness, charity.

---

* If the connective is expressed before the last part of a series, it is sufficient for the rule.

2. *Examples of improper use.*

1. When an author is always calling on us to enter into transports which he has done nothing to inspire; we are both disgusted and enraged at him.

2. Vexed at the arbitrary proceedings of the Assembly; willing to escape from a town where good people pointed with horror at his freedom; indignant also at the tyranny of his brother, who, passionate as a master, often beat his apprentice; Benjamin Franklin, then but seventeen years old, sailed clandestinely for New York.

3. The soil of a Republic sprouts with the rankest fertility; it has been sown with dragon's teeth. To lessen the hopes of usurping demagogues, we must enlighten, animate and combine the spirits of freemen; we must fortify and guard the constitutional ramparts about liberty.

4. I put these together, both because they fall nearly under the same rules, and because they commonly answer the same purpose; serving to illustrate the cause or the subject of which the orator treats before he proceeds to argue either on one side or the other.

5. Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost; teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you.

6. History, as it has been written, is the genealogy of princes; the field-book of conquerors.

The parts separated by the semicolon in No. 1 and 2, make imperfect sense; and hence they should be separated by the comma. No. 2, however, may be punctuated as it is by the first law of Deviation. (*See laws of Deviation a few pages forward.*)

The parts in No. 3 make perfect sense, but the connective is suppressed. Accordingly, they cannot be separated by the semicolon under the rule.

The parts in No. 4 and 5, also make perfect sense, but in both the connective is suppressed, as in the preceding No. 3: consequently, the semicolon is incorrect punctuation. In No. 5, the punctuation is inconsistent; for while it has a semicolon before *teaching*, it has only a comma before *baptizing;* and yet the circumstances are precisely the same.

Why neither the comma nor semicolon is admissible before the participles in this position, will be fully explained under the next pause.

In No. 6, the connective is not expressed. The semicolon is therefore improperly used.

III. THE COLON.

The colon properly separates the parts of a sentence, making perfect sense; or distinct though related propositions, connected by conjunctions, adverbs, or relative pronouns *understood*. (*See Semicolon, Notes.*)

In the suppression of the connectives or copulatives, lies the only rational and even imaginable distinction between the colon and semicolon. By this suppression alone, is the connection between the parts of a sentence in which either of them may be employed,

made less close, and a longer pause than the semicolon, necessary; and then a longer pause *is* necessary: a fact which printers of the present day, who almost universally dispense with the use of the colon, seem to have forgotten, or studiously to neglect.

The sentence in which the colon is properly employed, does not differ in construction from that in which the semicolon is inserted. (*See Semicolon.*)

This pause is relatively as long again as the semicolon: under the influence of passion its time is indefinite.*

1. *Examples of the proper use of the Colon.*

1. He shows you what you ought to do, but excites not the desire of doing it: he treats man as if he were a being of pure intellect, without imagination or passions.

2. For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into heaven: I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation in the sides of the north.

3. Gratitude is of a fruitful and diffusive nature: of a free and communicative disposition: of an open and sociable temper. It will be imparting, discovering, and propagating itself: it affects light, company and liberty: it cannot endure to be smothered in privacy and obscurity. (*See Deviations II.*)

4. The faults opposed to the sublime are chiefly two: the frigid and the bombast.

5. One of the court party interrupted him in these words: "How dare you praise a rebel before the representatives of the nation?"

6. The following observations exactly correspond with the senti-

---

* The learned reader may be gratified by a comparison of what I have advanced on the comma, as a pause of imperfect sense, and on the semicolon and colon, as pauses of perfect sense, with the remarks of Quinctilian on the same subject. He is speaking of the pronunciation or delivery of the following passage from Virgil, with respect to its pronunciation:—

"Arma, virumque, cano, Trojæ qui primus ab oris
Italiam, fato profugus Lavinaque venit
Littora: multùm ille et terris jactatus et alto,
Vi Superûm, sævæ memorem Junoris ob iram:
Multa quoque et bello passus, dum conderet urbem,
Inferretque Deos Latio; genus unde Latinum,
Albinique patres, atque altæ mœnia Romæ."

Secundum est, (says Quinctilian,) ut sit oratio distincta; id est, ut qui dicit, et incipiat ubi oportet, et desinat. Observandum etiam quo loco sustinendus et quasi suspendendus sermo sit (quam Græci ὑποδιαστολὴν, vel ὑποσυστολὴν, vel ὑποστιγμὴν vocant,) quo deponendus. Suspenditur, *Arma virumque cano*, quia illud *virum* ad sequentia pertinet; ut sit, *virum, Trojæ qui primus ab oris;* et hic iterum; nam etiam si aliud est unde venit, quam quo venit, non distinguendum tamen, quia utrumque eodem verbo continetur, *venit*. Tertio *Italiam*, quia interjectio est, *fato profugus*, et continuum sermonem qui faciebat, *Italiam, Lavinaque*, dividit. Ob eandemque causam, quarto *profugus*, deinde, *Lavinaque venit Littora;* UBI JAM ERIT DISTINCTIO, QUIA INDE ALIUS INCIPIT SENSUS. Sed in ipsis etiam distinctionibus tempus aliàs brevius, aliàs longius dabimus. Interest enim, sermonem finiat, an sensum. Itaque illam distinctionem *Littora*, protinus altero spiritus initio insequar. Cum illuc venero, *Atque altæ mœnia Romæ*, deponam et morabor, et novum rursus exordium faciam. *Book* xi. *ch.* 3.

ments of our author: "Nothing can contribute more towards bringing the powers of genius to their ultimate perfection than a severe judgment, equal in degree to the genius possessed."

7. And with this, I finish the discussion of the structure of sentences: having fully considered them under all the heads I mentioned, of perspicuity, unity, strength and musical arrangement.

8. Is he the God of the Jews only? Is he not also of the Gentiles? Yes, of the Gentiles also: seeing it is one God who shall justify the circumcision by faith, and the uncircumcision through faith.

9. Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with him: knowing that Christ being raised from the dead, dieth no more: death hath no more dominion over him.

The parts of No. 1, 2 and 3, are properly separated by the colon, because the connective *and* is understood.

In No. 4, 5 and 6, *namely* is understood. The colon is therefore correctly used.

In No. 7, 8 and 9, we have at length the proper punctuation before the participles, when employed as in these sentences. I now call the student's attention to the reason for this. The participles when so used, (and the perfect as well as the present is so used, though I have given no examples,) are uniformly abbreviated forms substituted for the finite verb preceded by conjunctions, adverbs, or relative pronouns. Thus, *having* in No 7, is strictly the equivalent of *I have; seeing*, in No. 8, of *we see;* and *knowing*, in No. 9, of *we know;* and as these fuller expressions would, if employed, be preceded by the semicolon or colon, according as the connective *for* might be expressed or understood, no reason can be assigned why their equivalents should not be treated in the same manner; that is, (since the connective, not merely, but also the pronoun, is understood,) with the colon.

Against the use of the comma, which, as we have seen, is employed before the participle so situated, and I may now add, very frequently employed, there is a stronger objection than against that of the semicolon; for the participle is often employed in nearly the same manner after imperfect sense. Observe above the first sentence under the head of colon. "The colon properly separates the parts of a sentence, making perfect sense." The participle *making* here is the substitute or equivalent of "*which make*," preceded by imperfect sense. Take another example. "And there was seen a great way off a herd of swine, feeding." Here the participle is a mere abbreviation of "*which were feeding*," as before preceded by imperfect sense; and consequently it should be separated from what precedes by the comma. How shall we distinguish cases of this kind from such as we find in Nos. 7, 8, 9, if we point them in the same manner?

It should be observed before dismissing this subject, that the participle often appears in what seems to be the one or the other of the two positions which I have just noticed, but which is yet very distinct from both: *e. g.* "I saw him sliding down hill." "He went crying all the way home." "The horse stood champing the bit." Here the participle limits, restrains or qualifies the object or action, and therefore cannot be separated from it even by the comma, unless some specification of time or place, &c., should intervene; as, "I saw him, just at night, sliding down hill." "The horse stood, in the yard, champing, &c."

2. *Examples of improper use.*

1. They entered in, and dwelt together: and the second possession was worse than the first.

2. One may have a considerable degree of taste in poetry, eloquence, or any of the fine arts, who has little or hardly any genius for composition or execution in any of these arts: but genius cannot be found without including taste also.

3. But on other occasions, this were improper: for what is the use of melody, or for what end has the poet composed in verse, if in reading his lines, we suppress his numbers, and degrade them, by our pronunciation, into mere prose?

4. These are degrading: whereas, similes are commonly intended to embellish and to dignify.

5. He first lost by his misconduct the flourishing provinces of France, the ancient patrimony of the family: he subjected his kingdom to a shameful vassalage under the see of Rome: he saw the prerogatives of his crown diminished by law, and still more reduced by faction: and he died at last, when in danger of being totally expelled by a foreign power, and of either ending his life miserably in prison, or seeking shelter as a fugitive from the pursuit of his enemies.

6. When I applied my heart to know wisdom, and to see the business that is done upon the earth: then I beheld all the works of God, that a man cannot find out the work that is done under the sun.

7. As we perceive the shadow to have moved along the dial, but did not perceive it moving; and it appears the grass has grown, though nobody ever saw it grow: so the advances we make in knowledge, as they make such minute steps, are only perceivable by the distance.

In the first five of these examples, the colon is improperly employed, because the connectives are expressed: in the last two, because it separates parts making imperfect sense.

It may be worth while to notice the improper use of the comma between the sub-parts of the first part of No. 5. At *France*, we have perfect sense: consequently the comma should be displaced by the colon: *which were*, the connective and the verb, being suppressed.

IV. THE PERIOD.

The period is properly placed at the end of a complete and independent enunciation of thought. Its relative length is double that of the colon; but under the influence of passion, its length is indeterminate.

As this pause is too well known to need illustration, I shall confine my examples to the purpose of showing its improper use.

Examples of improper use.

1. Jurists may be permitted with comparative safety to pile tome upon tome of interminable disquisition upon the motives, reasons and causes of just and unjust war. Metaphysicians may be suffered with impunity to spin the thread of their speculations until it is attenuated to a cobweb; but for a body created for the government of a great nation, and for the adjustment and protection of its diversified interests, it is worse than folly to speculate upon the causes of war, until the great question shall be presented for immediate action.

2. The most eminent physicians bear uniform testimony to this propitious effect of entire abstinence. And the spirit of inspiration

has recorded, "He that striveth for the mastery is temperate in all things."

3. The immortal Edwards, too, repeatedly records his own experience of the happy effect of strict temperance both on the mind and body. And the recent reformations from moderate drinking, in different parts of the land, have revealed numerous examples of renovated health and spirits in consequence of the change.

4. In the full persuasion of the excellency of our government, let us shun those vices which tend to its subversion, and cultivate those virtues which will render it permanent, and transmit it in full vigor to all succeeding ages. Let not the haggard forms of intemperance and luxury ever lift their destroying visages in this happy country. Let economy, frugality, moderation and justice, at home and abroad, mark the conduct of all our citizens. Let it be our constant care to diffuse knowledge and goodness through all ranks of society.

In No. 1, it will be readily observed, that the part beginning with *jurists* and the part beginning with *metaphysicians*, bear precisely the same relation to the succeeding conjunction *but:* a sufficient reason surely against the insertion of the period after *war*.

In Nos. 2, 3, for the reason that the parts are allied in thought, and connected as propositions by the connective *and*, the semicolon should have been used.

In No. 4, we have the same connection with the connective understood. The period therefore should give place to the colon.

V. THE DOUBLE PERIOD.

The double period is the pause which occurs at the end of a paragraph, or a series of sentences unfolding the same general thought. It has no sign of its own, but is represented by the common period. It is usually indicated by a break or blank space in the page. This, however, is not always the case; for neither speakers, writers, nor printers, are always accurate in marking the transition from one general thought to another; and when not, the reader must exercise his own judgment in marking it for himself.

The length of the double period, as the name implies, is relatively about double the length of the common period.

No examples are necessary to illustrate this pause; a bare reference to any book within reach, will be sufficient to satisfy the inquiring that this pause has a real existence in nature; and though hitherto unnoticed by writers on elocution, one of great importance to a correct, graceful, and impressive delivery. By neglecting to observe it, many speakers and readers, both at the bar and in the pulpit, as well as in less conspicuous positions, impair seriously the effect of what they speak and read on those who hear them. Many cases of this have fallen under my own observation.

DEVIATIONS FROM THE LEGITIMATE USE OF THE PAUSES WHICH MARK DIVISIONS OF SENSE.

I have said at the beginning of this chapter, "that every departure from the proper punctuation, by which the latter is brought in conflict with the delivery, should be systematic; that is to say,

should be for reasons which apply to all cases of the same kind; so that the design of the change in punctuation may be always obvious, and the proper delivery retained notwithstanding."

Unhappily, for the want of a sufficient number of pauses to meet all the exigencies of punctuation, such a departure is frequently necessary; and I now proceed to state the rules in conformity to which, it should uniformly take place. As I have hitherto introduced no rule, not founded in the nature of things, and sustained by abundant examples from the best practice of printers, (the leading practice, in fact, of all printers, but from which they are often seen capriciously wandering,) so here I shall lay down no principle which is not amply justified by the best punctuation in this country and Great Britain. I do not aim at originality, but simply to introduce system, where hitherto, it must be confessed, practice has often been incompatible with itself, often arbitrary, not seldom extremely slovenly, frequently and glaringly false, and, since confusion here must necessarily produce a corresponding confusion in the delivery, always more or less injurious.

I. When the parts (of a sentence) making imperfect sense, are not merely long, but comprise subdivisions which require separation by the comma, we may employ the semicolon to mark their limits, and distinguish them from these subdivisions;* and if, for the same reason, a remoter punctuation be necessary, we may employ the colon.

Examples.

1. The bounding of Satan over the walls of Paradise; his sitting in the shape of a cormorant upon the tree of life, which stood in the centre of it, and overtopped all the other trees in the garden; his alighting among the herd of animals, which are so beautifully represented as playing about Adam and Eve, together with his transforming himself into different shapes, in order to hear their conversation; are circumstances that give an agreeable surprise to the reader, and are devised with great art to connect that series of adventures, in which the poet has engaged this artifice of fraud.

2. That a man, to whom he was, in a great measure, beholden for his crown, and even for his life; a man, to whom, by every honor and favor, he had endeavored to express his gratitude; whose brother, the Earl of Derby, was his own father-in-law; to whom he had committed the trust of his person, by creating him lord chamberlain; that a man enjoying his full confidence and affection; not actuated by any motive of discontent or apprehension;

---

* When a sentence contains a succession of similar members making imperfect sense, and any one of them requires the semicolon for the reason assigned; all of them, for the sake of uniformity, may be punctuated in the same manner, though without subdivisions requiring the comma. The first and second examples are pertinent illustrations of this.

that this man should engage in a conspiracy against him, he deemed absolutely false and incredible.

3. Seeing then that the soul has many different faculties, or in other words, many different ways of acting; that it can be intensely pleased or made happy by all these different faculties or ways of acting; that it may be endowed with several latent faculties, which it is not at present in a condition to exert; that we cannot believe the soul is endowed with any faculty which is of no use to it; that whenever any one of these faculties is transcendently pleased, the soul is in a state of happiness; and, in the last place, considering that the happiness of another world is to be the happiness of the whole man; who can question but that there is an infinite variety in those pleasures we are speaking of; and that this fulness of joy will be made up of all those pleasures which the nature of the soul is capable of receiving?

4. Besides the ignorance of masters who teach the first rudiments of reading, and the want of skill or negligence in that article, of those who teach the learned languages; besides the erroneous manner, which the untutored pupils fall into, through the want of early attention in masters, to correct small faults in the beginning, which increase and gain strength with years; besides bad habits contracted from imitation of particular persons, or the contagion of example, from a general prevalence of a certain tone or cant in reading or reciting, peculiar to each school, and regularly transmitted from one generation of boys to another; besides all these, which are fruitful sources of vicious elocution, there is one fundamental error in the method universally used in teaching to read, which at first gives a wrong bias, and leads us ever after blindfold from the right path, under the guidance of a false rule.

5. As the middle, and the fairest, and the most conspicuous places in cities, are usually chosen for the erection of statues and monuments, dedicated to the memory of the most worthy men who have nobly deserved of their country; so should we in the heart and centre of our soul, in the best and highest apartment thereof, in the places most exposed to ordinary observation, and most secure from worldly care, erect lively representations, and lasting memorials of divine bounty.

6. When the gay and smiling aspect of things has begun to leave the passage to a man's heart thus thoughtlessly unguarded; when kind and caressing looks of every object without, that can flatter his senses, have conspired with the enemy within, to betray him, and put him off his defence; when music likewise hath lent her aid, and tried her power upon the passions; when the voice of singing men, and the voice of singing women, with the sound of the viol and the lute, have broke in upon his soul, and in some

tender notes have touched the secret springs of rapture; that moment let us dissect and look into his heart: see how vain, how weak, how empty a thing it is!

7. If, indeed, we desire to behold a literature like that which has sculptured with such energy of expression, which has painted so faithfully and vividly the crimes, the vices, the follies of ancient and modern Europe; if we desire that our land should furnish for the orator and the novelist, for the painter and the poet, age after age, the wild and romantic scenery of war; the glittering march of armies, and the revelry of the camp; the shrieks and blasphemies, and all the horrors of the battle field; the desolation of the harvest, and the burning cottage; the storm, the sack and the ruin of cities: if we desire to unchain the furious passions of jealousy and selfishness, hatred and revenge, those lions that now sleep harmless in their den; if we desire that the lake, the river, the ocean, should blush with the blood of brothers; that the winds should waft from the land to the sea, from the sea to the land, the roar and smoke of battle; that the very mountain-tops should become altars for the sacrifice of brothers: if we desire that these, and such things as these, (the elements, to an incredible extent, of the literature of the old world,) should be the elements of our literature; then, but then only, let us hurl from its pedestal, the majestic statue of our union, and scatter the fragments over all our land.

II. When the parts (of a sentence) making perfect sense, comprise sub-parts also making perfect sense, and both have the connectives expressed or understood at the same time, and hence both according to rule require the same punctuation; to mark these respective limits and distinguish them from one another, we may punctuate the sub-parts one degree lower than the principal parts; that is to say, if the principal parts require the colon, the sub-parts may be separated by the semicolon: if the principal parts require the semicolon, the sub-parts may be separated by the comma.

Examples.

1. They now heard of the exact accomplishment of obscure predictions: of the punishment over which the justice of heaven had seemed to slumber: of dreams; omens; warnings from the dead: of princesses, for whom noble suitors contended in every generous exercise of strength and skill: of infants, strangely preserved from the dagger of the assassin, to fulfil high destinies.

2. Gratitude is of a fruitful and diffusive nature; of a free and communicative disposition; of an open and sociable temper: it will be imparting, discovering and propagating itself: it affects light, company and liberty: it cannot endure to be smothered in privacy and obscurity.

3. We swear to preserve the blessings which they toiled to gain; which they obtained by the incessant labors of eight distressful years: to transmit to our posterity our right undiminished, our honor untarnished, and our freedom unimpared.

4. This was the gymnastic school, in which Washington was brought up; in which his quick glance was formed, destined to range hereafter across the battle-field, through clouds of smoke and bristling rows of bayonets: the school in which his senses, weaned from the tastes for those detestable indulgences miscalled pleasure, in which the flower of adolescence so often languishes and pines away, were early braced up to that sinewy manhood which became the

Lord of the Lion heart and eagle eye.

5. In the Book of Judges, we see the strength and weakness of Samson: in that of Ruth, the plain-dealing and equity of Boaz: in those of Kings, the holiness of Samuel, of Elijah, and the other prophets; the reprobation of Saul; the fall and repentance of David, his mildness and patience; the wisdom of Solomon; the piety of Hezekiah and Josiah: in Esdras, the zeal for the law of God: in Tobit, the conduct of a holy family: in Judith, the power of grace: in Esther, prudence: in Job, a pattern of admirable patience.

In all of these sentences, the sub-parts are constructed precisely like the principal parts: and if they were pointed in the same manner, as in strict propriety they should be, they would be confounded. The sub-parts are therefore separated by the semicolon, to mark their subordination. In No. 4, the sub-part, ending with bayonets, and in No. 5, the sub-part respecting David, have themselves sub-parts of the same construction. These, consequently, are separated by the comma.

SEC. II. PAUSES DENOTING THE NATURE OF THE SENTENCE.

1. The interrogation,
2. The exclamation,

} marked thus: { ? ; ! }

These, accurately speaking, are not pauses, but the representatives of the pauses, already considered, which mark divisions of sense; and this representative character it is very important to remember; for otherwise we shall be constantly in danger of regarding, and in delivery treating, as distinct sentences, what are in fact but parts of the same sentence.

Being representatives, they have, of course, no time of their own, but adopt that of the pauses of sense for which they stand; and they stand indifferently for the comma, semicolon, colon or period.

I ought, perhaps, to enumerate the parenthesis among pauses that indicate the nature of the sentence, and have a representative character; but as modern practice usually associates the pause with it, as it indicates no peculiarity in the sentence itself, which it includes, but simply that, whatever the nature of the sentence may be, it is necessary neither to the general construction nor sense, and especially as it would lead to a repetition of the same matter in a subsequent part of this work, where the parenthesis is fully discussed, I deem it best to waive every thing in this place beyond this brief allusion.

I. The interrogation declares the sentence before it, a question.

1. *Examples of proper use.*

1. How shall a man obtain the kingdom of God? By impiety? theft? murder? adultery?

2. Will the Lord cast off forever? and will he be favorable no more?

3. Doth his promise fail forevermore? hath God forgotten to be gracious? hath he in anger shut up his tender mercies?

4. Canst thou draw out the leviathan with a hook? or his tongue with a cord which thou lettest down?

5. During a life so transitory, what lasting monument then can our fondest hopes erect? My brethren! we stand on the borders of an awful gulf, which is swallowing up all things human.

In No. 1, after "impiety," &c., the interrogation represents the comma: in the middle of Nos. 2, 4, the semicolon: in the middle of No. 3, the colon: in No. 1, after "God," and at the end of Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, and the first part of No. 5, the period.

2. *Examples of improper use.*

Two cases of this occur:

(1.) Where a question is not asked, but merely said or commanded to be asked: *e. g.*

1. And they asked him when he intended to enter upon the enterprise of which he spoke?

2. If the question be put, to what class of those pleasures of taste, which I have enumerated, that pleasure is to be referred, which we receive from poetry, eloquence or fine writing? my answer is, not to any one, but to them all.

3. Presumptuous man! the reason would'st thou find,
Why formed so weak, so little, or so blind?
First, if thou canst, the harder reason guess,
Why formed no weaker, blinder, and no less.
Ask of thy mother, earth, why oaks are made
Taller or stronger than the weeds they shade?
Or ask of yonder argent fields above,
Why Jove's satellites are less than Jove?

The only question, properly so called, in these three examples, is contained in the first couplet of the third. The interrogation at the end of the first, should give place to the period: in the second, to the comma: in the third, at the end of the third couplet, to the semicolon; and at the end of the fourth, to the period.

(2.) Where a sentence is punctuated as a question, when in fact it is an exclamation: no answer being required, expected or even thought of: *e. g.*

1. The earth must be labored before it will give its increase;

and when it is forced into its several products, how many hands must they pass through before they are fit for use?

2. How great must be the majesty of that place, where the whole art of creation has been employed; and where God has chosen to show himself in the most magnificent manner?

3. And when no longer himself, how affecting was it to behold the disordered efforts of his wandering mind employed on subjects of literature?

II. The exclamation denotes that a sentence, or part of a sentence, before it, contains an expression of some one of the various emotions or passions.

Examples of proper use.

1. Death! great proprietor of all! 'tis thine
To tread out empires and to quench the stars.

2. Why is it that to man have been given passions which he cannot tame; and which sink him below the brute! and why is it that a few ambitious men are permitted by the great Ruler, in the selfish pursuit of their own aggrandizement, to scatter in ruin, desolation and death, whole kingdoms: making misery and destruction the steps by which they mount up to their seats of pride!

3. The treasures of America are now in heaven. How long the list of our good and wise and true, assembled there! how few remain with us!

4. But "they complained of injustice." God of heaven! had they not a right to complain! After a solemn treaty, plundered of all their property, and on the eve of the last extremity of wretchedness, were they to be deprived of the last resource of impotent wretchedness, complaint and lamentation!

5. Oh! does not the God who is said to be love, shed over this attribute of his, its finest illustration! when, while he sits in the highest heaven, and pours out his fulness on the whole subordinate domain of nature and providence, he bestows a pitying regard on the very humblest of his children, and sends his reviving Spirit into every heart, and cheers by his presence every home, and provides for the wants of every family, and watches every sick-bed, and listens to the complaints of every sufferer; and while, by his wondrous mind, the weight of universal government is borne, oh! is it not more wondrous and more excellent still, that he feels for every sorrow, and has an ear open to every prayer!

In the first example, and the first instance of the fourth, and the first, second and third instances of the fifth example, the exclamation point represents the comma: in the second, the semicolon and period: in the third, the colon and period: in the second and third instances of the fourth and the last of the fifth, the period.

As the exclamation is comparatively seldom misapplied, I think it unnecessary to trouble the student with examples of improper use.

SEC. III. THE PAUSE DENOTING UNUSUAL CONSTRUCTION OR SIGNIFICANCE.

This pause is commonly called the dash: occasionally, the emphatic pause: in this work, the rhetorical pause. It is represented thus: —

Haste, indolence, or, perhaps, ignorance of the laws of punctuation, has effected a total perversion of the appropriate use of this pause. We frequently find it substituted, not merely in the journals of the day, but in productions of a permanent and standard character, for the comma, semicolon and colon. The impropriety of this is too obvious to be insisted on; and, I regret to add, too much a matter of custom, perhaps, to be corrected. Yet there can be little doubt that this indiscriminate use of the dash is at once useless and mischievous: useless, because the pauses of sense are equally significant; and mischievous, because it confounds pauses in their nature distinct, often obscures the sense, and always in the eyes of a man of taste, mars the beauty of the printed page.

The rhetorical pause is properly employed in the following cases:

I. Before a slight change in the construction of the sentence: *e. g.*

The clear conception, outrunning the deductions of logic; the high purpose; the firm resolve; the dauntless spirit, speaking on the tongue, beaming from the eye, informing every feature, and urging the whole man onward, right onward to his object;—this, this is eloquence.

II. After a portion of a sentence abruptly broken off: *e. g.*

1. If thou beest he—but O how fallen! how changed!

2. Here lies the great—false marble, where?
Nothing but sordid dust lies here.

3. Frankness, suavity, tenderness, benevolence, breathed through their exercise. And his family!—But he is gone: that noble heart beats no more.

4. Leonidas! Cato! Phocion! Tell—one peculiarity marks them all: they dared and suffered for their native land.

III. After a sentence which abruptly terminates a thought: the next sentence beginning another: hence between the remarks of different speakers in informal dialogue: *e. g.*

1. Oh, how I trembled with disgust!—And now blue dismal flames gleamed along the walls: the tombs were rent asunder: bands of fierce spectres rushed around me in frantic dance: furiously they gnashed their teeth, while they gazed upon me, and shrieked in loud yells, "Welcome, thou fratricide! Welcome, thou lost forever!"—Horror burst the bands of sleep; but my feelings —words are too weak, too powerless, to express them.—Surely this was no idle dream!—'Twas a celestial warning.

2. "Have you read my Key to the Romans?" said Dr. Taylor, of Norwich, to Mr. Newton.—"I have turned it over."—"You have

turned it over? And is this the treatment a book must meet with, which has cost me many years of hard study? Must I be told, at last, that you have 'turned it over,' and thrown it aside? You ought to have read it carefully and weighed deliberately what comes forward on so serious a subject."—"Hold! you have cut me out full employment, if my life were to be as long as Methuselah's."

The rhetorical pause after "feelings," in No. 1, belongs to case second above. In the present case and case I., the rhetorical pause is usually associated with the pause of sense: in this respect differing from case second and the two which follow.

IV. After a part of a sentence, followed by an unexpected turn of sentiment: *e. g.*

1. This world, 'tis true
Was made for Cæsar—but for Titus too.

2. I now solemnly declare that so far as personal happiness is concerned, I would infinitely prefer to pass my life as a member of the bar, in the practice of my profession, according to the ability which God has given me, to that life which I have led, and in which I have held places of high trust, honor, responsibility, and —*obloquy*.

3. The people lifted up their voices and blessed the good St. Nicholas; and from that time forth, the sage Van Kortland was held in more honor than ever for his great talent at dreaming, and was pronounced a most useful citizen and a right good man—when he was asleep.

V. Before and sometimes after a word, clause or sentence of more than usual significance: *e. g.*

1. And now abideth faith, hope, charity: these three; but the greatest of these is—charity.

2. Socrates died like a philosopher, but Jesus Christ like a—God.

3. Jesus wept—

4. And Nathan said unto David—thou art the man.

5. Is life so dear, or peace so sweet as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery?—Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty or give me—death!

Examples of the improper use of the Rhetorical Pause.

1. Thus, without any innovation—without altering or abolishing any thing but pernicious novelties, introduced for the encouragement of sloth and idleness—by converting, for the future, the same funds for the use of the serviceable, which are spent, at present, upon the unprofitable, you may be well served.

2. To acquire a thorough knowledge of our hearts and characters,—to restrain every irregular inclination,—to subdue every rebellious passion,—to purify our motives and our conduct,—to form ourselves to that temperance which no pleasure can seduce, —to that meekness which no provocation can ruffle,—to that patience which no affliction can overwhelm, and that integrity which no interest can shake; this is the task which is assigned to us,—a task which cannot be performed without the utmost diligence and care.

3. The church has commenced her march—Samaria has with one accord, believed the gospel—Antioch has become obedient to the faith—the name of Christ has been proclaimed throughout Asia Minor—the temples of the gods, as though smitten by an invisible hand, are deserted—the citizens of Ephesus cry out in despair, "great is Diana of the Ephesians"—licentious Corinth is purified by the preaching of Christ crucified.

4. He who cannot persuade himself to withdraw from society, must be content to pay a tribute to a multitude of tyrants: to the loiterer who makes appointments he never keeps—to the consulter who asks advice he never takes—to the boaster who blusters only to be praised—to the complainer who whines only to be pitied—to the projector whose happiness is only to entertain his friends with expectations, which all but himself know to be vain—to the economist who tells of bargains and settlements—to the politician who predicts the fate of battle and breach of alliances—to the usurer who compares the different funds—and to the talker who talks only because he loves talking.

In example first, the dash usurps the place of the comma: in the second, of the comma in the first three instances, of the semicolon in the next two, (see Deviations from the legitimate use of pauses between divisions of sense No 1.,) and of the colon in the last instance. The association of the comma with the dash in this case, augments the impropriety of the punctuation. In example 3d and 4th, the colon and semicolon are the pauses which should be inserted instead of the dash.

CHAPTER III.

MODULATION.

MODULATION includes the consideration of key, evolutions or variations, force and rate.

I. THE KEY.

The key, otherwise called pitch, is the predominating tone of reading or speaking.

Different voices, in consequence of organic diversity, occupy different portions of the scale of vocal sounds. Some are treble, some are tenor, and some are bass; while others can scarcely be called either treble, tenor or bass; but occupy intermediate places in the scale. Still, whatever these organic differences may be, every human voice has its relatively high, medium and low tones, any of which may be adopted, though not with equal propriety, as the prevailing tone of delivery.* It is easy to show from a variety of considerations that the medium tone, which is that of sustained and animated conversation, is the only one that can be made the key of reading or speaking, with any regard for the exactions and exigencies of protracted discourse.

1. The organs of speech, being unaccustomed to any thing more than slight and infrequent exertions at a high pitch, soon tire; and in consequence, the voice becomes harsh, or breaks, under the unnatural strain which it is forced to endure.

2. In like manner, they are unaccustomed to a low pitch: the other extreme; and for the same reason, the voice will soon become thick and unintelligible.†

3. No sentence can be said to be properly delivered which has not its close indicated by the voice as well as by the period. This is generally done by dropping the voice to a point somewhat below the key. Of course, such a close is impossible with the voice already depressed to its lowest note; and with it elevated at a high pitch, the fall must be unnaturally deep, and therefore exaggerated and absurd.

Not unfrequently the sentence should terminate, after traversing nearly the whole compass of the voice, with its highest notes; at others, after the same movement in a different direction, with its lowest. For example: "Will you ride to town to-day?" requires a beginning below the key, and an ascent extended indefinitely above it. On the other hand, the question, "When will you ride to town and buy those goods of which you speak?" demands a beginning above the key, and a descent indefinitely extended below it. Now it is obvious that if the key be not a medium tone, such exigencies of discourse cannot be met with safety and success.

---

* Accurately speaking there are as many keys as there are half-tones and even quarter-tones of the voice; any one of which may be made, at pleasure, the predominating tone of reading or speaking.

† Nam vox, ut nervi, quo remissior, hoc et gravior et plenior: quo tensior, hoc tenuis et acuta magis est. Sic ima vim non habet: summa rumpi periclitatur. Mediusigitur utendum sonis; hique, cum augenda intentio est, excitanda: cum summittenda, sunt temperandi.—*Quinc.* b. xi. ch. iii.

4. It may be observed, farther, that the almost inevitable consequence of adopting the high or low extreme, is monotony; or that sing-song manner which is to the orator, what the shoal and the rock are to the ship: fatal. Experience proves that while at a high pitch, the voice *cannot* rise higher, it *will* not descend lower, but must run in a uniform stream or not run at all: if pitched low, the case is different, but the result the same.

On the whole, about nothing should the student who desires to become a correct and tasteful reader or speaker, evince more solicitude, than to form his delivery on the right key. He should spare no pains to acquire, (if he has it not,) the habit of reading and speaking as he converses: with the same tone predominating, and with the same easy and natural variations of voice.* Of these I shall now speak.

DIRECTIONS FOR EXERCISE ON KEY.

Select a sentence, (a short one at first,) and deliver it on as low a key, as may be consistent with distinctness of articulation, and varying intonations; then higher, and yet higher and higher, until the top of the voice shall have been reached; when the process may be reversed: adopting successively a lower key, until the bottom of the voice shall have been reached. Repeat the exercise as often as possible. Its tendency is to increase the compass of the voice: to improve its quality, and bring it under perfect control.

This exercise, as we learn from Cicero, (de Orat. b. i. c. 59,) was a favorite one with the Greeks; and though he condemns, and perhaps, justly, their excessive practice in view of the time it consumed, it may be fairly inferred from this very practice that the evidences of its utility must have been decisive, or few would have endured the protracted severity of its discipline. The following is the passage of Cicero to which I refer.

Quid est oratori tam necessarium, quam vox? Tamen me auctore nemo dicendi studiosus, Græcorum more, et tragœdorum voci serviet, qui et annos complures sedentes declamitant, et quotidie, antequam pronuntient, vocem cubantes sensim excitant, eandemque, cum egerunt, sedentes ab acutissimo sono usque ad gravissimum sonum recipiunt et quasi quodammodo colligunt. Hoc nos si facere velimus, ante condemnentur ii, quorum causas receperimus, quam toties, quoties præscribitur Pæanem aut Munionem citaremus.

II. VOCAL EVOLUTIONS, OR VARIATIONS FROM THE KEY.

By vocal evolutions, I mean the different movements of the voice in the delivery of a sentence. These are what I shall term the *sweeps*, the *bend*, the *slides*, and the *closes*.

1. The sweeps are of two kinds: the accentual and the emphatic; both of which are farther divided into upper and lower.

2. The bend is the rising inflection of other works on elocution.

3. The slides are four: the upward, the downward, the waving and the double slide.

4. The closes are two: the partial and perfect close.

As these are not indicated by the pauses enumerated and described in the preceding chapter, and as a merely verbal description would be unintelligible, writers on elocution have resorted to a train of signs for the purpose of expressing them to the eye. In

---

* Non solum ne dicamus omnia clamose, quod insanum est; aut intra loquendi modum, quod motu caret; aut summisso murmure, quo etiam debilitatur omnis intentio; sed ut in iisdem partibus, iisdemque affectibus sint tamen quædam non ita magnæ vocis declinationes, prout aut verborum dignitas, aut sententiarum natura, aut depositio, aut incœptio, aut transitus postulabit.—*Quinc.* b. xi. ch. iii.

the figures which follow, and the remarks subjoined to them, they are exhibited and fully explained.

1. THE SWEEPS.

Both Accentual and Emphatic sweeps are the effects of a greater force of voice applied to one syllable of a word in comparison with another, or to one word of a sentence in comparison with other words. To prepare for this application of greater force, the voice rises above the key to the syllable or word accented or emphasized; and as the result of this application the voice is carried below the key, and again back to it. The first of these movements is called the upper sweep: the second, the lower.

Accentual sweeps of course precede and follow the accents primary and secondary. Their constant recurrence, in the delivery of successive words, at intervals varying with the number of unaccented syllables between the accents, produces those slight undulations or waves of the voice which may be observed in the following fragment of a sentence, if read without emphasis: "Yet because of his importunity, he will rise and give him as many as he needeth." (*See Plate, fig.* 1.)

Such being the effect of accent, the monotone of which some, if not all works of elocution, speak, has therefore no existence. Accordingly I dispense with it in this work; and when I have occasion to speak of the delivery of a sentence with no other variations of the voice than those produced by accent, I say, "delivered with accentual sweeps."

The emphatic sweeps, unlike the accentual, are not limited to a part of a word, or even to an entire word; but sometimes extend over the half of a sentence. The superior sweep precedes, and the inferior follows, the primary accent of the word on which emphasis is placed. (*See Plate, fig.* 2, *e. f.*)

Emphasis frequently falls on a word in such a position as renders the prolongation of the upper and lower sweep, for the want of room, impossible. In this case, they are formed on the emphatic word alone, though a word of one syllable; and they are then called by Dr. Porter and other writers on elocution, the circumflex. (*See Plate, fig.* 2, *a.*) As this term is a convenient one, I shall continue to use it: it being understood, however, that I mean by it nothing more than the greatest condensation of the emphatic sweeps. What I have to say additionally on these sweeps, I reserve until I shall have reached the subject of emphasis.

2. THE BEND.

The bend is represented by the acute accent of the Greek, thus: ′ It indicates a slight turn of the voice upward at a pause of imperfect sense.

Examples.

If there be any consolation in Christ′, any comfort of love′,

any fellowship of the spirit′, any bowels and mercies′, fulfil ye my joy.

The trials of wandering and exile′, of the ocean, the winter, the wilderness and the savage foe′, were the final assurances of success.

3. THE SLIDES.

1. The upward slide,
2. The downward slide,
3. The waving slide,
4. The double slide,

} marked thus: { ? ⸮ ⸮ ⸮

1. The upward slide carries the voice upward through a succession of tones, and suspends it at the highest. (*See Plate, fig.* 3.)

Examples.

Did Paul make a worse preacher for being brought up at the feet of Gamaliel? Does God uniformly work in one way? Has he never employed talents usefully?

2. The downward slide reverses the upward: carrying the voice downward through a succession of tones, and suspending it at the lowest. (*See Plate, fig.* 4.)

Examples.

Who possessed more advantages or more eloquence than the apostle whose words are alluded to in the objection ⸮

To whom do we owe it, under an allwise Providence, that this nation so miraculously born, is now contributing with such effect to the welfare of the human family, by aiding the march of mental and moral improvement, and giving an example to the nations of the earth ⸮

3. The waving slide does not differ essentially from a very full development of the two emphatic sweeps: the voice rising above the level of the sentence from the beginning, to descend upon the emphatic word, pass below the level of the sentence, and return to it or above it at the end. (*See Plate, fig.* 2, *e. f.*)

Examples.

You *will* ride to town to-day ⸮
You will *ride* to town to-day ⸮
You will ride to *town* to-day ⸮
You will ride to town to-*day* ⸮

4. The double slide carries the voice upward, as in the first slide, and then downward, as in the second. The disjunctive conjunction *or*, which is always present in questions of this kind, forms

the point at which the one ends, and the other begins. (*See Plate, fig.* 5, *a*, *b*, *c*.)

Examples.

Barabbas, or Jesus?
Is it lawful to give tribute unto Cæsar, or not?
Shall we call him a patriot, or shall we stigmatize him as a traitor?

4. THE CLOSES.

I substitute this word for *cadences*, because the latter is not sufficiently general, and suggests that sentences terminate like a piece of music. This indeed was the theory of Walker, a theory in an unfortunate moment endorsed by Porter; but it is a theory, notwithstanding, which has no foundation in facts: sentences terminate in a variety of ways; and even the same sentence has not always the same close.

1. The partial close,
2. The perfect close,

} marked thus: { (`)
{ (.)

1. The partial close* is a descent or fall of the voice at the end of one of the parts of a compound sentence to the key, or to a point near the key, preparatory to the perfect close. It is represented by the grave accent of the Greeks.

2. The perfect close is a descent or fall of the voice, at the end of a sentence, quite down to the key or to a point below it. It is represented by the period.

Examples of both in connection.

The faults opposed to the sublime are chiefly two`: the frigid and the bombast.

Before closing this, I wish to make one observation`: I shall make it once for all.

For instance: if I am speaking of virtue, in the course of ordinary conversation, I refer the word to no sex or gender; I say, "Virtue is its own reward`;" or, "It is the law of nature."

Among similes, faulty through too great obviousness of the likeness, we must likewise rank those which are taken from objects become trite and familiar in poetical language. Such is the simile of a hero to a lion`; of a person in sorrow to a flower drooping its head`; of a violent passion to a tempest`; of chastity to snow`; of virtue to the sun or stars`; and many others of the same kind.

The closes are incidents exclusively of declarative sentences; (*see Classification, Definition of a Decl. Sent.*;) and they have their characteristic delivery, only, at the end of such sentences or the parts of such sentences, when the last word is under emphasis; which is com-

---

* This is the falling inflexion of other writers on elocution. It is treated by them as the reverse of the rising inflexion or bend. If this were just, the voice ought simply to turn down, as in the bend it turns up; whereas it falls down, and is always preparatory to perfect close.

monly the case. (*See Emphasis, Sect. II. iv.*) When the emphatic word is not the last, the characteristic delivery of the closes is modified. (*See Emphasis, Sect. II. v. vi.*)

I have observed some faults in the delivery of the closes which the student should correct, if subject to them, or any one of them, at any cost of time and labor.

1. The sentence is sometimes terminated with a continuation of voice on the usual level, instead of a fall. This is not often the case, yet it occurs.

2. When the voice falls at the end, the fall is equivocal, not decisive: the voice turns downward, but as if with the design of rising again.

3. Occasionally I have met with the habit of uniformly placing strong emphasis on the penultimate or antepenultimate word of a sentence, and then rushing from that point, as if down a declivity to the end of the sentence.

4. I have frequently met with the habit of falling unnaturally deep: especially from a high, artificial key.

The proper delivery may be acquired by answering *yes* and *no*, to definite interrogative sentences; and then substitute the equivalent of the *yes* or *no*, and deliver the last word in precisely the same manner: being careful to deliver the whole sentence either on a level or rising to the last word. *E. g.* Will you ride to town to-day? *Yes.* Will you ride to town to-day? I will ride to town to-*day*.

III. FORCE.

When a person, reading or speaking, is requested to read or speak louder, he can, without rising in tone, and simply by a slight additional exertion, so increase the volume of his voice, that any one within a reasonable distance, and not deaf, may hear distinctly and with ease.

This increase of volume, without change of tone, is an increase of force; which may be varied by those who have powerful vocal organs, from a whisper to the awful reverberations of thunder.

I need scarcely say that the judicious management of force, is a distinct and important addition to that variety which renders good reading and speaking so singularly attractive to all classes of hearers.

Some passages, of course, should be delivered with a greater degree of force than others. When these occur, the student must be governed in their delivery by the relative importance of the thought, or the nature of the sentiment or passion expressed. I know of no other rule for the management of force in such cases.

In a general view, however, when we have regard to the tenor of an entire discourse, we should never employ a greater degree of force than may be necessary to be easily and distinctly heard; which may be ascertained without difficulty by observing the movements of the more distant auditors.

The reasons for this rule are the following:

1. To speak with more force than is necessary to be distinctly and easily heard by the remoter part of the audience, is to incur the hazard of speaking too forcibly or loud for those hearers who are near; which has an unhappy effect.

2. To use a degree of force much greater than that of animated conversation, (and greater than this is scarcely ever necessary in reading and speaking to common audiences,) is what the organs of speech are not accustomed to, and is therefore fatiguing, and not easily sustained.

3. The continued use of an unusual degree of force, destroys the flexibility of the voice, and is one of the principal causes of monotony.

4. But the main reason for employing, in the tenor of discourse, no more force than may be requisite for the purpose specified in the rule, is, that the reader or speaker may have a reserve for use, when the nature of the thought or sentiment or passion expressed in particular passages, calls for an increase of volume and power. For such emergencies, he whose delivery is uniformly loud and vociferous, is never prepared. Additional force will hardly be remarked; or if it attract observation, the only effect produced will be to augment the dissatisfaction with which the speaker is heard.

We should be careful not to confound force with vivacity. Force is strength, energy: vivacity is life, animation. Force has respect to the hearer: vivacity, to the subject. A certain degree of force is always necessary from the beginning of a discourse to the end: vivacity, on the other hand, in some parts of a discourse, as in an introduction, would be out of place; and in others, as in passages highly charged with the benevolent affections, (love, sympathy, compassion, &c.,) incompatible with just delivery. Force to the verge of vociferation, especially if uniform, may be associated with dulness: vivacity, never; and yet there may be great vivacity in speakers who have little force. I think I have observed numerous examples of this.

But the most important distinction between them remains to be noticed. Force is under the control of the will; and is measured and regulated by the judgment: vivacity depends upon the feelings, and their susceptibility of excitement from the progress of discussion. The one is, therefore, voluntary: the other, involuntary. A speaker can command force at any time: but vivacity, if it comes at all, comes without being summoned or solicited. It appears only, when the speaker begins to be interested in his subject; and as this penetrates and warms and absorbs him, it grows apace, independently both of judgment and volition.

The practical bearing of this distinction is obvious. Vivacity, though an essential element of fine elocution, is subject to no rules. All that can be said, is, that if we would have it, we must appreciate and profoundly feel what we read or speak: enter into its spirit: identify ourselves with it: yield ourselves up unreservedly to its influence. When we do this, vivacity will not be wanting.

DIRECTIONS FOR EXERCISE ON FORCE.

Select a sentence, (as under Key,) and deliver it on a given key with voice just sufficient to be distinctly heard: then increase the quantity, and continue to increase it, until the whole power of the voice is brought into play. When this shall have been done, reverse the process: ending with a whisper. Observe: the sentence must be delivered without change of key. The same exercise may be repeated on different keys, and should be; but during the process of increasing or diminishing force, the same key should be firmly held, and the sentence delivered with the same series of tones. The tendency of this exercise, which cannot be too frequently repeated, is to strengthen the voice, and give command of it, at the extremes of little force and great.

The faults particularly worthy of attention under the head of force, (apart from uniformly too much or too little, causing a perpetual, monotonous din painful to the ear, on the one hand; or constant and uncomfortable exertion on the part of the audience to hear, on the other,) are two.

1. One of these is the exceedingly vicious habit of beginning every sentence successively with great force, and gradually diminishing, until, by the time the end is reached, the speaker is scarcely intelligible. Such a delivery is rarely requisite to the proper utterance of any sentence. Almost universally, at least as much force is necessary at the end as at the beginning; and not seldom more.

2. Another fault is the *abrupt* employment of force. The speaker is perhaps addressing his audience in a low tone of voice, when suddenly he breaks out with all the force of his lungs: giving them a shock which almost drives them from their seats. This is altogether wrong. Every increase of force should be gradual. It is seldom that men fly suddenly from repose, to the most strenuous exertion. Such violent changes of force are therefore unnatural. Occasions may, indeed, occur on which they are necessary; but rarely beyond the limits of the drama.

IV. RATE.

Rate in particular passages, like force, must necessarily vary with the nature of the thought, the sentiment, and the emotion. It should not, however, be so slow that the audience may anticipate what we are about to say, nor so fast that we cease to articulate distinctly. In neither case will we be heard with any satisfaction; though the second is the greater fault. We may be slow and yet

intelligible; but when a man becomes inarticulate in consequence of the rapidity of his utterance, he entertains his hearers with nothing but "sound and fury."

The general rate, which may be retarded or accelerated according to circumstances, as just now implied, should be as slow as is consistent with commanding and sustaining the attention of the audience. It was a precept given by one of the most distinguished men of his day to Aaron Burr, "speak as slow as you can." This, as I have already hinted, may be carried to an extreme; but it is one to which speakers seldom pass. The tendency and the temptation are in the opposite direction. If I mistake not, the opinion is prevalent in this country, that rapidity of utterance is a marked characteristic of eloquence. In consequence, it is desired and aimed at as an oratorical accomplishment. But this is a serious mistake.

In the first place, a rapid speaker, unless he possess extraordinary mental activity, or speaks *memoriter*, will find his power of thought unable to keep pace with his current of language. His voice will outrun his mind; and he will consequently speak incoherently and little to the purpose.

2. Experience proves, I think, that a rapid delivery, especially at the beginning of a discourse, is incompatible with that self-possession, and universal self-command, which are absolutely necessary to produce important oratorical effects. It throws the speaker into a flutter of spirits which, at the same time, confounds memory, confuses thought, and embarrasses action.

3. Of good elocution, distinct articulation is a fundamental requisite; and this, in connection with rapid delivery, is very rare. The slow speaker may articulate badly; but it has seldom been my good fortune to hear a rapid speaker who articulated well.

4. A slow delivery in general, is, I conceive, absolutely necessary, in conformity with what I have said above, to enable a reader or speaker to comply with the demands of sentiment and emotion. The rapid speaker cannot increase his rate, and yet the sentiment of a sentence or paragraph may demand a very considerably accelerated, and even a hurried utterance in comparison with the general rate, in order to give it due expression. For such emergencies, the slow speaker is alone prepared; and they are emergencies which afford both reader and speaker the best opportunities for the highest achievements of the rhetorical art.*

DIRECTIONS FOR EXERCISE ON RATE.

Select a sentence as before, and deliver it as slow, (without drawling,) as may be possible. Repeat the delivery with a slight increase of rate: continue to repeat and increase the rate, until you shall have reached a rapidity of utterance at which distinct articulation ceases. Having done this, reverse the process and repeat slower and slower.

Ability to increase and diminish rate at pleasure, is a very important element of good reading and speaking, and can be acquired only by the practice here recommended; which, as well as the preceding exercises on key and force, contributes to the acquisition of that perfect command of the voice, necessary to express with propriety every variety of thought to be met with in a discourse.

---

* Nec volubilitate nimia confundenda quæ dicimus; qua et distinctio perit, et affectus; et nonnunquam etiam verba aliquâ sui parte fraudantur. Cui contrarium est vitium nimiæ tarditatis. Nam et difficultatem inveniendi fatetur, et segnitia solvit animos, et in quo est aliquid, temporibus præfinitis aquam perdit.—*Quinc.* b. xi .ch. 3.

CHAPTER IV.

CLASSIFICATION AND DESCRIPTION OF SENTENCES.

A PROPOSITION is a series of words expressing a complete thought. *e. g.* "Omniscience is an attribute of God." "A man who walks ten miles a day, will walk seventy in a week."

A sentence contains one proposition, or two or more related propositions. The preceding examples contain each one proposition. The following one contains two. "It was the third hour; and they crucified him."

Every sentence in the English language is either simple or compound.

1. A simple sentence is one which contains a single proposition having but one subject and one verb: *e. g.* Jesus wept. Beauty is admired. Cæsar conquered the Gauls.

NOTE 1. The infinitive mood is not treated in this work as a verb. (*See* "Course of Reading," Part I. iii. 6.)

NOTE 2. Though a simple sentence can have but one subject and one verb, it by no means follows, that it can have nothing besides. The number of its words may be indefinitely increased without changing its simple character. In the third of the examples given, there is not only a subject, and finite verb, but an object: "the Gauls." To this, we may add the time during which, "in a few months," and the time at which, "a little before the beginning of the Christian era." With this we may connect the means: "some thousands of men." We may give Cæsar an attribute: "the immortal Cæsar." We may qualify the verb: "easily conquered." We may qualify even that qualification: "very easily." And so on. Comprising all these additions in one sentence, we have the following: "The immortal Cæsar very easily conquered the Gauls in a few months, a little before the beginning of the Christian era, with some thousands of men;" which is still a simple sentence, because, notwithstanding the additions made to it, it has but one subject and one verb.

2. A compound sentence is one which contains either a *single proposition*, having two or more subjects or verbs, or *two or more propositions*, having indifferently one subject and verb, or two or more subjects and verbs connected by conjunctions, adverbs, or relative pronouns, expressed or understood.

For the different kinds of connection formed by conjunctions, adverbs and relative pronouns, see "Course of Reading," p. 34, 32, 23; and examples of close, compact and loose sentences below.

(*a.*) When a single proposition only is expressed, that proposition is either absolute or conditional.

Examples of the absolute.

Exercise *and* temperance strengthen the constitution. The animals turned, looked *and* ran away. Take off his chains *and* use

him well. They rejected with contempt the ceremonious homage, *which* other sects substituted for the pure worship of the soul. He *who* is disposed to deny this, cannot have given much attention to the subject. Peace be with you all *that* are in Christ Jesus. God made man erect, rational, free, immortal.

Examples of the conditional.

Though he fall, he will rise again. As in Adam all died, so in Christ shall all be made alive. If he give me permission, I will go with you. When he comes, then you may go. People are happy, because they are good.

Obs. 1. The parts of these sentences beginning with *though*, *as*, *if*, *when*, and *because*, express respectively the condition of the other parts with which they are connected.

Obs. 2. It is obvious that I use the term "conditional" here with a very extensive signification when I indicate by it the peculiar relation which the one part of each of these sentences bears to the other; but I can think of no better word to express the same meaning; and if it be understood that I mean by a conditional proposition one that always contains parts thus related, though sometimes not in the strict sense, conditionally, there will be no danger of mistake.

(*b.*) When two or more propositions are connected, these propositions may be either simple or compound, in the sense of the second half of the definition of compound sentences; i. e. they may be propositions, having either one subject and verb, or two or more subjects or verbs.

Examples of the first.

It was the third hour; and they crucified him. This is at best a shallow quality: in objects of eternal moment, it is poisonous to society.

Examples of the second.

He was a tall and very spare old man: his head, which was covered with a white linen cap, his shrivelled hands, and his voice, were all shaken under the influence of a palsy; and a few moments ascertained to me, that he was perfectly blind.

Note 1. An *absolute* compound sentence, except when compound by the insertion of a relative clause, (*see Note* 2. 6, *below*,) is merely an abbreviated method of giving utterance to several simple sentences without the repetition of the same verbs, attributes, objects, &c., by simply stating once what is common to all. *e. g.* "Exercise strengthens the constitution:" "temperance strengthens the constitution." *Strengthens the constitution*, being common to both of these simple sentences, its repetition is suppressed, when they are united in a compound structure. *e. g.* "Exercise and temperance strengthen the constitution."

Note 2. When the pupil declares a sentence compound, he should, at the same time, indicate the mode in which the compound structure is formed: *being governed in doing this by what is expressed, not by what is understood.* For example, in reply to the question, In what respect is this sentence compound, he will say, It has

1. Two or more subjects: *e. g.* "*Exercise* and *temperance* strengthen the constitution;" or
2. Two or more verbs: *e. g.* "The animals *turned*, *looked* and *ran* away;" or
3. Two or more attributes: *e. g.* "God made man *erect*, *rational*, *free*, *immortal;*" "He gave *promptly* and *generously*;" or
4. Two or more objects: *e. g.* "He bought a *farm* and *stock*;" or
5. Two or more adjuncts or prepositional clauses: *e. g.* "The man *of fortune*, or *of fame*, is not secure in his possession."

6. A relative clause: *e. g.* "Peace be with you all *that* are in Christ Jesus;" or
7. Correlative clauses: *e. g.* "When he comes, then you may go;" or
8. Distinct propositions: *e. g.* "It was the third hour; and they crucified him."

Sometimes several of these different kinds of compound structure may be combined. When this occurs, the pupil should be required to state the fact.

NOTE 3. It should be understood, that while analyzing a compound structure we have regard only for the subjects, verbs, attributes, objects and adjuncts, *expressed*, as in No. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. We by no means assert that these expressed subjects, verbs, &c. exhaust the elements of the compound structure. There are always, in fact, as many verbs expressed or understood as there are subjects expressed; and *vice versa;* as many subjects and verbs, as attributes; &c. &c.

All sentences, whether simple or compound, are comprehended in three classes: the declarative, the interrogative and exclamatory.

I. Declarative sentences state or declare something, affirmatively or negatively, in some one or more of the various relations, of time past, present or future; as true or false; absolute or conditional; possible or impossible; certain or contingent; &c. &c.

II. Interrogative sentences are such as contain questions.

III. Exclamatory sentences are such as are employed to express emotion or passion.

SEC. I. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

PUNCTUATION. All simple sentences terminate with the period, or its representative, the interrogation or exclamation point.

As no part of a simple sentence can separately make perfect sense; in other words, inasmuch as simple sentences make, at every point, except at the end, imperfect sense; the comma is the only intermediate pause which they admit; (*See Plate, figure* 8;) and this is admissible only in the following cases.

1. When the subject or nominative case is followed by an inseparable adjunct of some length, a comma may be inserted immediately before the verb: *e. g.*

The good taste of the present enlightened age, has not allowed us to neglect the cultivation of the English language. To be totally indifferent to praise or censure, is a real defect of character.

2. When the connection is interrupted by a circumstance, a comma may be inserted both before and after it.

For a full explanation of the circumstance, and its appropriate punctuation, *see the end of this classification; and also Punctuation, Comma, cases of omission*, 3.

3. When the natural order of the sentence is reversed by transposition, a comma may be inserted between the parts transposed: *e. g.*

In the day of trouble, I called on the name of the Lord. Of all this, I was ignorant. Under these circumstances, he gave up the contest.

4. When the sentence is long, and the natural order unchanged, a comma may be inserted between parts which admit of transposition: *e. g.*

He began with censuring the ministry very severely, for delaying to give earlier notice to parliament of the disturbances in America.

CLASS I. SIMPLE DECLARATIVE SENTENCES.

(See Definition of a simple sentence, and also of a declarative sentence.)

Examples.

I fear the consequences. I will shortly return. You should acknowledge your faults. He has been a long time ill. Hold thy peace. Fear God. The windows of heaven were opened. The poor are often in want of the necessaries of life. Public wisdom, on some occasions, must condescend to give way to popular folly.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain. The prosperity of the wicked is not durable. Be not desirous of vain-glory. Be not forward in the presence of your superiors. He was not, at that time, in the city.

By means of their standing armies, they have every one lost their liberties. Besides this powerful engine of government, he had a most extraordinary talent of persuading men to his purpose. As to the temporal side of the question, I can have no dispute with you.

This fastened on my mind more strongly, from its beauty being unexpected. He found in them the guileless manner of the earliest times, with the culture of the most refined ones.

The *first* of these paragraphs contains affirmative simple declarative sentences; one of them only, (the last,) requiring intermediate punctuation: the *second* contains negative simp. decl.; the last only, as before, requiring intermediate punctuation: the *third* contains examples of transposition: the *fourth* examples of possible transposition, though not actually transposed, and punctuated accordingly.

YES, YEA, AY, AYE; NO, NAY; WELL.

The words, *yes*, with its equivalents *yea*, *ay* and *aye*, *no*, with its equivalent *nay* and *well*, when employed elliptically, have some peculiarities which may, perhaps, be as well explained in connection with simple declaratives, as anywhere else. As much that I shall say about them, may not be perfectly intelligible until we shall have reached a more advanced stage of the classification, the examination should be deferred until the classification shall have been thoroughly committed to memory and understood.

1. *Yes* and *no*.

1. When these words or their equivalents, merely reply to a question, or assent to or deny a proposition, in other words when they are used singly and independently, they represent simple or compound sentences, and are to be treated as such: *e. g.*

Is your master at home? Yes. Is your brother well? Yes.

You are not wounded, father? No. But the young hero fell not? No.

Are they those whom want compels to toil for their daily bread? No.

Yes and *no*, in the first four of these examples, represent simple declarative sentences, and consequently are themselves to be considered and treated as simple declaratives. The sentences successively represented are these: "He is at home:" "My brother is well:" "I am not wounded;" "The young hero fell not."

In the fifth example, *no* represents the following compound sentence; and it must itself therefore be treated as a compound sentence: "They are not those whom want compels to toil for their daily bread."

In order, then, to determine when *yes* or *no* is simple or compound, it must be ascertained, in the first place, whether it is used independently; that is, unconnected with any thing succeeding it, expressed or understood; and then, secondly, whether the sentence it represents is simple or compound.

With regard to the last particular, there is little danger of mistake; for the sentence, preceding *yes* or *no*, always contains the sentence represented by it. Nor is it difficult to ascertain the first, when the connection is expressed and properly punctuated. But this is not always the case; for sometimes the connection is understood; and sometimes, if expressed, *yes* and *no* are separated from it by the period, or by what is supposed to be its representative, an exclamation point. In such cases, these words appear to be simple sentences, or what is the same, to represent simple sentences, when they are actually parts of compound sentences: *e. g.*

Are they those whom want compels to toil for their daily bread? No. The labors of such are the very blessings of their condition.

What will content you? Talent? No! Enterprise? No! Courage? No! Reputation? No! Virtue? No! The men whom you would select, should possess, not one, but all of these.

In the first of these examples, *no* is not independent, though it seems to be so, in consequence of the period after it, but is closely connected with the succeeding words, together with which it forms a double compact sentence, with the first and second part expressed. (*See Double Compact below.*) The longest pause which can be properly inserted between these parts, is the semicolon. (*See Punctuation of the Single Compact below.*)

No, in the second example, is not more independent than in the first. It is the first part of a double compact as before, with the second and all the other parts understood. Completed, it would read thus: "Talent? No, but something more," &c., or thus: "Talent? No, for the men whom I would select, should possess not talent merely, but enterprise, courage, reputation and virtue."

2. These words are often emphatically repeated: *e. g.*

Is he indeed a villain? No: no. Will you accept my offer? Yes: yes.

When thus repeated, though independent of a sequent connection, the repetition as such, forms a compound loose sentence; for the sentences, represented by *yes* and *no*, being substituted, we should have the following: "He is not a villain: he is not a villain." "I will accept your offer: I will accept your offer." These are loose sentences. (*See Loose Sentence below.*)

3. With or without repetition, *yes* and *no* are often followed by the sentences they represent: *e. g.*

1. Without repetition.

Ag. I am going to walk in the garden.
Har. And so am I.
Ag. You are?
Har. Yes: I am.
Car. Does he remain here?
Am. No: he does not remain here.

2. With repetition.

2d Soldier. We will command ourselves. For Milan, comrades.
5th Soldier. Ay: aye: for Milan.

Ah! no! no! no!
It cannot be!

Taking the last sentence as an example of all, and substituting the equivalent for *no* in each instance, the following perfect loose sentence will be the result: "Ah! it cannot be: it cannot be: it cannot be: it cannot be." (*See, as above, Perfect Loose Sentence.*)

4. I have hitherto, except incidentally, spoken of *yes* and *no*, as being employed independently; that is, without being followed by any thing with which they could combine and form compound sentences. I shall now show that they do this; and that all the peculiarities I have pointed out, follow them in this new relation.

1. They are employed singly: *e. g.*

Berth. Wilt thou wear it?
Ethw. Yes, and press it too.
Freb. It is Jane de Montfort.
Lady. No; such description suits not her.
Berth. What! Ethward, say ye?
Sig. No; it is Selred.
Sel. What tidings, man? Is Ethwald at the gate?
Ser. No, nor yet within the walls.
Wog. My place of strength?
Fol. Yes: I spake with one new from the west,
Who saw the ruinous broil.

The first example is a close sentence: (*see Close:*) the second, double compact with the first and second part expressed: the third, the same with the first and third part expressed: the fourth, the same with the first part only expressed, but this comprising two members: the fifth is a loose sentence.

2. They are employed with repetition: *e. g.*

Ethw. You weep, good Ethelbert.
Eth. Yes; yes; such tears as doth the warm showered earth
Show kindly to the sun.
Freb. My friend, your face is pale: have you been ill?
De Mon. No Freberg: no: I think I have been well.

Her. I beseech you, let me stay with you.
Ray. No: no: no! speak of this no more.

The first of these sentences is a single compact: the second and third are both loose

3. Single with the represented sentence inserted: *e. g.*

Jane. And he is well you say?
Freb. Yes, well, but joyless.
Ethw. It is some night-bird screaming on the tower.
Boy. Ay, so belike it seemeth, but I know—
Ethw. What dost thou know?
Ethw. Thou dost not grieve I am safe returned?
Berth. O no, I do not grieve, yet I must weep.

These sentences are all of them single compacts.

4. Repeated and followed by the represented sentence: *e. g.*

Mrs. B. I do think I could contrive to find you employment if you are inclined to it.
Charles. Yes: yes: I am inclined to it: idleness is tiresome.
Mrs. B. O you are wounded, Baltimore.
True. No; no! there are no wounds; we are victorious.
Theo. Hear me, I do entreat thee.
Out. Nay, nay! no foolish pleadings, for thy life
Is forfeit now: [have at thee.]

Under the preceding head, each of the sentences is a single compact; (*which see*;) but under this, the first is loose: the second and third are double compacts. (*See Double Compact below.*)

2. *Well.*

This word is not a representative like *yes* and *no*, but an elliptical expression for such forms as, "It is well," "You say well," "I know well," "If it be well," "As it is well," "Since it is well," &c.

1. It is a simple sentence when employed independently, like *yes* and *no*, for assent or approval: *e. g.*

Do I say well? Well. He did well? Very well.

2. It is often independently repeated, like *yes* and *no*, and then forms, in like manner, a perfect loose sentence: *e. g.*

Al. You will never see him again.
Tob. Well: well.

3. In the main, however, it is employed in connection with words following, like *yes* and *no*, and then forms, in like manner, several species of compound sentences. Like them, too, in such a connection, it is employed with or without repetition: *e. g.*

Har. Would they have a man give up the woman of his heart, because she likes a bit of lace upon her petticoat?

Roy. Well, but she is, &c. &c.

Est. Do you know, last night, before twilight, I peeped over the blind, and saw him walking with slow, pensive steps, under my window?

Mar. Well; what happened then?

Est. I drew in my head, you may be sure; but a little while after I peeped out again, and, do you know, I saw him coming out of the perfumer's, just opposite my dressing-room, where he had been all the while?

Mar. Very well; and what happened then?

Ros. One fault he has: I know but only one:
His too great love of military fame
Absorbs his thoughts, and makes him oft appear
Unsocial and severe.

Fred. Well; feel *I* not undaunted in the field?
As much enthusiastic love of glory?
Why am I not as good a man as he?

Jer. Alas, my lord, she's dead.

De Mon. Well; then she is at rest.

Jer. How well, my lord?

De Mon. Is she not with the dead, the quiet dead, where all is peace?

Jer. Oh, I am stunned! My head is cracked in twain:
Your honor does forget how old I am.

De Mon. Well; well; the wall is harder than I wist.

With. I will have an end put to all this foolery.

Mar. Very well; I have just been following your advice.

All these examples of *well*, in connection with sequent matter, are compact sentences, of which *well* constitutes the first part: the first four having the correlative words, *indeed—but*, expressed or understood, and the last three, *therefore—because*, understood.

Before closing my remarks on this word, I should say that, like *yes* and *no*, it often appears to be single and independent, in consequence of the suppression of a part of the sentence, when, such being the case, it is, of course, in connection with the suppressed portion, compound. For an example, *see Ch. VI., Simple Declarative Sentences, Note.*

CLASS II. SIMPLE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

(See Definition of a simple sentence, and also of an interrogative.)

Simple interrogative sentences are either *definite*, *indefinite*, or *indirect*.

1. The DEFINITE are those which begin with verbs, and may be answered by yes or no.

NOTE. They are called definite, because they limit the answer to *yes* or *no*, or the equivalent of these words.

Examples.

Will you ride to town to-day? Am I my brother's keeper? Were there not ten cleansed? Will ye also go away? Is any among you afflicted? Do ye not hear the law? Are they ministers of Christ? Do ye look on things after the outward appearance? Have all the gifts of healing? Have not we power to forbear working? Could ye not watch one hour? Should not children obey their parents in all things?

2. The INDEFINITE are such as begin with adverbs and relative pronouns, and cannot be answered by *yes* or *no*.

NOTE. They are called indefinite, because they do not, like the definite, limit the answer; as, "When did we last meet?" To this the answer may be any one of a thousand that are possible, and may be supposed.

Examples.

Where did we last meet? When will you leave town? At what hour, this evening, will the moon rise? Why was this important fact concealed? By whom was the deed done? Which of the two is the most admired? How is the object, in view, to be secured? Wherefore then serveth the law? Who can estimate the influence of the Sabbath school?

The adverb *why*, when employed as in the passages which follow, though usually regarded as a mere expletive, is unquestionably an abbreviated indefinite interrogative.

And who, I pray, is to judge of their necessity? *Why*, the King.
"Sir,"—and so forth.—"*Why*, yes: the thing is fact,
Though in regard to number, not exact:
It was not two black crows, 'twas only one:
The truth of that you may depend upon:
The gentleman himself told me the case."—
"Where may I find him?"—"*Why*,—in such a place."

In each of these instances, *why* is obviously equivalent to the interrogative sentence, "Why ask the question."

When was formerly used in the same way: *e. g.*

Why, when, I say—Nay, good sweet Kate, be merry.
Taming the Shrew, IV, 1.

When, Harry, when,—
Obedience bids: I should not bid again. *King Richard II*, I, 1.

3. The INDIRECT are interrogatives in a declarative form.

NOTE 1. It would be, perhaps, more correct to say, *with a declarative structure*. In declarative sentences, the subject properly, and almost uniformly, precedes the verb. This is what is meant by the declarative form or structure. In an interrogative sentence, (*see definite and indefinite interrogatives*,) the verb, at least the auxiliary verb, precedes the subject. This is what is meant by the interrogative structure or form.

NOTE 2. But this is not the only characteristic of the indirect interrogative. When a person employs the definite or indefinite question, he represents himself as wholly *ignorant* of the subject matter of inquiry, and as desiring *information:* when he employs the indirect question, he represents himself as *assuming* the subject matter of inquiry, and as desiring *confirmation*.

NOTE 3. The name of this question is derived from its nature; or the manner in which it is put; i. e. *indirectly*.

"Indeed, the trapper was left to renew the dialogue himself; which he soon did by asking a question in the *indirect* manner so much in use by the border inhabitants. 'You found it no easy matter to ford the water-courses, and make your way so deep into the prairies, friend, with teams of horses and herds of horned beasts?'" *Cooper.*

Indirect interrogatives are of three kinds.

1. The first does not differ, except in structure, as noticed in note 1, above, and in the peculiarity noticed in note 2, from definite interrogatives.

Examples of the first kind.

You will go to the city of New York next week? You will convey my message? They never were heard of afterward? He refused obedience?

2. The second kind is distinguished by being used exclusively in supplication.

Examples of the second kind.

Lady,
Dear Queen that ended when I but began,
Give me that hand of yours to kiss?

The last line, which is all I quote as an example of simple indirect, is evidently equivalent to "Will you give me that hand of yours to kiss?" (*See Indirect Interrogatives, Ch. VI.*)

3. The third kind occurs where a proposition is expressed with such confidence in its truth, as precludes contradiction, and commands assent.

Examples of the third kind.

Surely, sir, I have seen you before? Truly, this was the Son of God?

Out jumps the gardener in a fright,
And runs away with all his might;
And as he runs, impressed with dread,
Exclaims, "Sure Satan's in the shed?"

The exclamation here, which is all that I quote as example, together with the sentences which precede, are manifestly equivalent to questions: differing only from other questions in the direct form, in that they take the answer for granted. As the examples show, this question may be put to another or to one's self. The third kind always, or almost always, includes some word like *sure*, *surely*, *truly*, *certainly*, &c., by which it may be distinguished.

CLASS III. SIMPLE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

(See Definition of simple sentence, and also of an exclamatory.)

Simple exclamatory sentences are *declarative, interrogative, compellative** and *spontaneous.*

---

* We make use of speech only to communicate our thoughts to others; and consequently our language is always addressed to some one. That those to whom we speak, may know that we are addressing them, we call upon them, either by name, or some equivalent expression, proper to fix their attention. Thus: I say, "Victor, you are not attentive;" "Lord! I am thy creature:" "Sir, are you my friend?" These words, "Victor," "Lord," "Sir," make no part of the proposition. I shall call this part of speech a *Compellative*, from a Latin word which signifies "to address, to accost." (De Sacy. *Principles of General Grammar.*)

1. DECLARATIVE. These are so called, because they are declarative sentences employed as exclamations. In other words, they are declarative sentences which, besides expressing a thought, express it with emotion.

Examples.

He died a madman! It is impossible! May that time never come! Happy are they! May the will of the Lord be done! Not for the world would I peril my soul by such a deed! God grant to those few friends courage to declare themselves in opposition to your formidable enemies! Thus was felt his despotism over the heart!

The declarative exclamatory sentence is not always entire: it is often a mere fragment, the complement of which must be supplied, perhaps inferred, from the context: *e.g.*

Impossible! Beautiful! Happy day! What is life? A shadow! Did you, sir, throw up a black crow? Not I! Cruel fortune! Delusive hopes! Piercing thought! This to me!

The complete sentence in each of these cases is as follows: It is impossible! This is a happy day! That is beautiful! Life is a shadow! I did not throw up a black crow! This is a cruel fortune! These are delusive hopes! It is a piercing thought! This is said to me!

Whenever a fragmentary sentence occurs, the student should supply the portion of the sentence suppressed. This observation, which is an important one, is made once for all.

2. INTERROGATIVE; which are so called, because they assume interrogative forms. They are *definite, indefinite* and *indirect.*

1. THE DEFINITE.

Examples.

Do you envy my good fortune! Are you mad! Is it indeed so! Hath it not burst upon thee! Seest thou that old man there! Art thou my father! Is this to me! Could he possibly, at his years, be guilty of an outrage like that! Darest thou thus provoke me!

These, like the declarative, appear very often in fragments.

Are his talents adequate to the occasion? Adequate!—Will he succeed? Succeed!—Will you go there? I go there! Never.—He is a thief. A thief! I cannot believe it.

NOTE. It is not easy to distinguish this sentence, when fragmentary, from the fragmentary declarative on the one hand, and the fragmentary compact, hereafter to be noticed, on the other. When it is a mere echo, as in three of the examples above, there is little difficulty; but this is not always the case. In a given passage, the only criterion is the sense.

2. THE INDEFINITE.

Examples.

Why do I suffer so many sorrows! How can I endure them! When will they cease pressing me to the dust! What could I have done to provoke thus the thunderbolts of heaven against my

defenceless head! With what feelings must an intelligent heathen approach his final catastrophe! How hard would it seem for your neighbors to neglect your misery! How pale! How silent! How vain!

How and *what* often appear alone at the beginning of sentences as exclamations: *e. g.*

But how and by what means?

What! not a word!

What! shall we be told that the exasperated feelings of a people were excited?

How! will you suffer your glory to be sullied?

In these and similar instances, they are used to call for a repetition of a previous remark not understood; or too shocking, wonderful or absurd to be received in the sense understood: they are employed not unlike the second interrogative *who*, in the following passage:

Who are thine accusers? *Who?*
The living! they who never felt thy power,
And know thee not!

NOTE. The expletive *why*, already noticed, (*see Simple Indefinite Interrogative,*) when it does not represent an indefinite question, is employed, though with less deliberation, in the same way. This supposition will account for the difference observable in its delivery: it having sometimes the delivery of a regular indefinite interrogative, and at others, that of *how* and *what*, as above.

3. THE INDIRECT.

1. *Examples of the first kind.*

You would not screen a traitor from the law! Thou wouldst not have me make a trial of my skill upon my child! Impossible.

2. *Examples of the second kind.*

Let me not perish in this horrid manner! Grant me this favor for once!

Examples of this second kind of indirect interrogative exclamation, are somewhat rare; though they occur more frequently than is generally supposed: especially in the drama, and in prose of a colloquial description. In conversation they frequently occur.

3. *Examples of the third kind.*

You are surely mistaken in that supposition! She will certainly get lost in this wilderness of streets! You surely will not deprive me of my only pleasure in life!

3. COMPELLATIVE. These are single names, used in the direct address.

Examples.

Mary! Jesus! Master! My lord! Mr. President! Mr. Chairman! Sir! Gentlemen! Soldiers! Fellow-Citizens! Ye winds!

Ye waves! Ye Waters! Hypocrites! Ye blind leaders of the blind! &c. &c.

4. SPONTANEOUS: being so called, because they are, for the most part, uttered without deliberation.

They may be divided, with sufficient accuracy, into *abbreviations* of simple sentences, (including a few formed from sounds which they imitate,) and *equivalents* of simple sentences: the former having an invariable, and the latter a variable delivery.

1. *Examples of the Abbreviations.*

Hold! Ho! Shame! Hail! Look! Lo! Hush! Hist! Farewell! Fie! Pshaw! Pish! Pugh! Foh! Hey-day! Heigh-ho! Mum! Avaunt! Avast! Away! Whoh! Hurra! Halloo! Tush! Tut! Fudge! Bah! Heavens! My stars! &c. &c.

NOTE. The abbreviated character of many of these exclamations, is too obvious to need illustration: the others, having lost their original meaning, in consequence of being dropped from the language, except as mere symbols of certain emotions which they serve to express, may need explanation. For this the reader is referred to the "Diversions of Purley," and Richardson's Dictionary. Be it sufficient to say here, that *pshaw* and *pish*, which are different forms of the same word, are abbreviations of the simple sentence, "It is *pish*," *i. e.* trumpery, trick; fie, foh faugh, fough, (also different forms of the same word,) of the simple sentence, "It is fough!" *i. e.* hateful; and so with the remaining words.

2. *Examples of Equivalents.*

O! Oh! Ah! Eh! Ha! Hah! Aha! Alas! Alack!

This enumeration comprises, I believe, all that occur.

SEC. II. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

(See Definition of a compound sentence.)

Compound sentences are either *close, compact* or *loose.*

I. The close sentence contains a single absolute proposition, having two or more subjects or verbs, connected by conjunctions, adverbs or relative pronouns, expressed or understood. (*See examples of the close below.*)

NOTE 1. This sentence may have a series of similar members at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end. (*See examples of the close below.*)

NOTE 2. The name of this sentence is derived from its nature: its members being so *closely* connected, that they cannot be separated without injury to the sense: in other words, it makes imperfect sense until the end is reached.

PUNCTUATION. A close sentence excludes, except in cases of allowable deviation, (*see exception* 3, *below,*) every pause longer than the comma. The following rule will be found, I believe, to be at once comprehensive and exact: a comma should or may be inserted before all the copulatives expressed or understood; or what is the same thing in other words, between all the simple sentences of which the compound close is composed.

The exceptions to this rule,* which is too simple to need illustration, are these:

1. The cases specified in *Chap. II, Punct. Comma: Cases of Omission.*

2. When two or more nouns, verbs, adjectives or adverbs, unattended by other words, have the copulative expressed between them, the comma is omitted: *e. g.*

Intelligence and beauty and modesty are the principal charms of woman. Virtue and vice form a strong contrast to each other. The study of natural history expands and elevates the mind. It was dexterously and quickly and neatly done. True worth is modest and retired. Some men sin deliberately and presumptuously.

The husband, wife and children suffered extremely. In a letter, we may advise, exhort, comfort, request and discuss. Success generally depends on acting prudently, steadily and vigorously, in what we undertake.

There is a natural difference between merit and demerit, virtue and vice, wisdom and folly. Truth is fair and artless, simple and sincere, uniform and consistent. Whether we eat or drink, labor or sleep, we should be moderate.

It will be observed, that as soon as the copulative is suppressed, as in the second paragraph of examples, the comma appears.

When the last copulative is expressed, as in the same paragraph, practice, as regards the omission of the comma, is not uniform. Some insert it notwithstanding the presence of the copulative; but, in the opinion of the author, incorrectly.

The exception now under consideration, extends no farther than the particular case specified: when the nouns, verbs, adjectives or adverbs, are attended by other words, preceding or following, the comma is inserted before the copulative; or, though unattended as before, if the copulative be suppressed, the comma is inserted in its place.

3. An exception to the insertion of the comma, occurs, when it is superseded, under the necessity of deviating from proper punctuation, by the semicolon. (*See Punctuation, Chap. III, Deviations I; also Plate, figure 9, b.*)

II. The COMPACT sentence is distinguished from every other by consisting of parts, beginning with correlative words expressed or understood.

The term *compact* is applied to this sentence, because the parts are, as it were, bound together, compacted by the correlative words at the beginning of the parts. The name was first used by Walker. (*See Elocution.*)

Correlative words are words which mutually relate to each other; as in the examples which follow.

The principal of these correlatives, or those which most frequently occur, are the following: such — as; so — as; so — that; if — then; if — yet; though — yet; unless — then; now, then — while; where — there; either — or; whether — or; though, al-

* Not to the rule strictly speaking, but rather to the application of the rule by printers.

though — nevertheless; forasmuch as, inasmuch as — insomuch; indeed, truly — but; therefore — because, for, since; more, rather, better, richer, stronger, &c. — than.

NOTE 1. They are usually placed at the beginning of the parts which they qualify, and in the order in which I have written them; but their order is frequently reversed, and often, instead of occupying their appropriate places at the beginning of the parts, they are brought together in the middle of the sentence: one of them only occupying its proper position. This is particularly the case with *more, rather, &c.—than.* e. g.

"*Rather than* submit this fair land of their inheritance to ravage and dishonor, from hoary age to helpless infancy, they will form one united bulwark and oppose their breasts to the opposing foe;" i. e. *rather* will they form, &c., *than* submit, &c. Other correlatives also are sometimes, though less frequently, found transposed in the same way. e. g. "*When, if* you see my limbs convulsed, my teeth clenched, my hair bristling, and cold dews trembling on my brow, seize me;" i. e., *if* you see, &c., *then* seize, &c.

NOTE 2. Some of these correlatives are idiomatically interchanged. *As* sometimes takes the place of *when:* the correlative of *then.* e. g. "As Peter knocked at the door of the gate, a damsel came to hearken, named Rhoda;" i. e. *when* Peter, &c., *then* a damsel, &c. "As he was going there, he met his brother;" *when* he, &c., *then* he, &c. *As* is also sometimes used for *because:* the correlative of *therefore.* e. g. "*As* he is of age, his father is not responsible for his conduct;" i. e. *because* he is, &c., *therefore* his father, &c.

If is occasionally used for *whether:* the correlative of *or.* e. g. "Let any man look at the degraded condition of this country before the war, &c., and tell me *if* we have gained nothing by the war;" i. e. *whether* we have, &c., *or* not.

In the following passage *though* is clearly a substitute and no very good one for *if:* the correlative of *then:* "Is every thing subservient to me, as though I had ordered all myself?" i. e. *as if.*

NOTE 3. Frequently two or more correlatives are brought together with the parts to which they belong suppressed. The preceding sentence is a good example of this; which if fully expressed would read thus: Is every thing *so* subservient to me, *as then* it would be, *if* I had ordered all myself?

Compact sentences are either *single* or *double.*

1. The SINGLE COMPACT sentence consists of two parts, with a correlative word at the beginning of each. (*See Examples of Single Compact below.*)

Three Forms of the Single Compact.

Sometimes both of these correlatives are expressed: sometimes only one of them: sometimes neither. If both are expressed, the sentence is called a single compact of the first form: if only one, a single compact of the second form: if neither, a single compact of the third form. (*See Examples of Single Compact below.*)

NOTE. Occasionally, but rarely, two of these forms may be found irregularly combined in the same sentence. The following is an example of the second and third forms combined: *if then* being the correlatives.

"Were it not for this, or if men were to live on from childhood to old age in the same mood of feeling, and holding fast to the same unvarying topic of interest, they would grow to be little more than animals of one thought;" i. e. *if* it were not, &c., *if* men, &c., *then* they would, &c.

The THIRD FORM comprises five varieties. For a description of these, and examples, see Examples of Single Compact, 3d form, below.

PUNCTUATION. Since the correlative words, whether expressed or understood, always imply each other, the first part of the sentence alone, must contain imperfect sense. The proper punctuation between the parts, is therefore that of the comma.

To this however there are two exceptions:

I. The cases specified in the 1st law of Deviation from proper punctuation. (*See Punctuation, Deviation I.*)

II. The comma gives place to the semicolon, where both of the correlatives are understood: *e. g.*

"It is sown in corruption; it is raised in incorruption. It is sown in dishonor; it is raised in glory. It is sown in weakness; it is raised in power. It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body."

"But not all the chapters of human history are thus important; the annals of our race have been filled up with incidents which convey no instruction."

Each of the series from Scripture has parts beginning with the correlative words, *though—yet*, understood; and the last sentence has parts beginning with the correlative words, *therefore—for* or *because*, understood. If supplied, as they might be without impropriety, and often are, (as we shall hereafter see,) the sense would be manifestly imperfect; inasmuch as *though*, in the one case, and *therefore*, in the other, would suggest the other correlative words respectively, as yet to come. But their influence upon the sense and delivery is the same being understood, as if they were expressed. At the same time, their suppression requires a longer pause; and since we have none bearing the same relation to the comma, that is borne by the colon to the semicolon, the last must be employed, though it is thus really diverted from its proper use.

NOTE. If the comma is the proper punctuation between the parts, because the sense is imperfect at that point, the same pause is, of course, for the same reason, the proper intermediate punctuation of the first part. (*See however 1st law of Deviation as above.*) The second part of a single compact, if it should have the structure of a simple sentence or of a compound close, must be intermediately punctuated in the same manner: if it should have the structure of a loose, (*see definition of loose sentence below,*) it should be punctuated as a loose.

I should add, that either part of a single compact sentence may be itself a single compact sentence, consisting of two parts complete; and cases are not wanting in which these subordinate compacts may be still farther compact. The punctuation of each compact, however, whether principal or subordinate, is the same. (*See Mixed Sentence at the end of this Classification.*)

2. The DOUBLE COMPACT, as the name implies, consists of two single compacts united: making one compact with four parts. The correlative words in each of the single compacts are *therefore—for, because.*

Of the double compact, there are two species; the affirmative and negative: the former so called, because the first of its parts always contains an affirmative proposition: and the latter, because the first of its parts always contains a negative proposition.

As the affirmative double compact may be resolved into the single compact, and presents no marked peculiarities, I shall take no farther notice of it.

The negative is an extraordinary sentence: extraordinary alike for the frequency of its occurrence, the singular changes and modifications to which it is subject, and its magnificent oratorical capacity. Some of the sublimest thoughts that ever issued from human lips have adopted the structure of this sentence for their expression. It was the favorite sentence of Demosthenes.

This sentence, if entire, consists, as I have already said, of two single compacts, having each of them *therefore* in the first part, and *for* or *because* in the second. In the first of these single compacts, the part beginning with *therefore* contains a negative proposition: that which follows and begins with *because*, an affirmative or negative proposition which assigns a reason for the preceding negative. In the second of these single compacts, the part beginning with *therefore*, contains an affirmative proposition in opposition or contrast with the negative or first proposition in the preceding sentence; and that which follows, beginning with *because*, assigns a reason for this affirmative: *e. g.*

Swear not by heaven, for it is God's throne; but let your communication be yea, yea, and nay, nay; for whatsoever is more than these, cometh of evil.

Or thus:

Therefore swear not by heaven, because it is God's throne; but therefore let your communication be yea, yea, and nay, nay; because whatsoever is more than these, cometh of evil. (*See Examples of the Double Compact below.*)

NOTE. *Therefore* is never expressed at the beginning of the third part after *but*.

PUNCTUATION. Whatever the combination of the parts, the proper pause between the first two, or between the two, if two only are employed, or between the members of the first, if the first only is employed, is the comma. The reason of this is that the first part always makes imperfect sense. (*But see exceptions under single compact; which apply here.*)

The punctuation between the second and third part, if three parts are employed, is that of the semicolon or colon: the second concluding with perfect sense.

The pause between the third and fourth part, is the semicolon or colon, according as the connective is expressed or understood.

Separately considered, the parts may be either simple or compound; close, compact, or, with the exception of the first, loose: the first always and necessarily makes imperfect sense. Their punctuation, respectively, will therefore conform to the nature of the sentence.

III. The LOOSE sentence is one which contains two or more distinct, though related, propositions, connected by conjunctions, adverbs, or relative pronouns expressed or understood. (*See examples of the loose below: perfect and imperfect.*)

There are two species of the loose sentence: the *perfect* and *imperfect*.

1. The perfect has all its parts complete.

2. The imperfect has its first parts complete, but the succeeding part or parts are fragmentary: requiring a portion of the first part, (which is understood,) to complete their construction.

PUNCTUATION. For this, I refer the student to *Ch. II, Semicolon and Colon;* and also to *Deviations from Proper Punctuation, II;* the whole of which describes exclusively the punctuation of the perfect and imperfect loose sentence. (*See Plate, fig.* 11, *a. b. c.*)

GENERAL NOTE ON THE DIFFERENT SPECIES OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

Though these sentences, in their pure state, are broadly distinct, as their respective definitions imply and the examples subjoined prove, yet, as might be expected, they frequently approximate in a degree to render it doubtful whether we should regard them as belonging to one species or another. Thus, single compact sentences of the third form and third variety of that form, are not strikingly different from some close sentences; and yet, if we examine the first with care, they are readily distinguished by universally involving correlative words, and, in the main, by having a different (not common) regimen in the parts. *e. g.*

The recollection of this event swells every heart with joy, and fills every tongue with praise.

Seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

The first of these sentences is a close, the second is a single compact with the correlatives *if—then* understood. (*See a description of* 3*d variety of Single Comp.* 3*d form, below.*)

Again, single compact sentences of the second form, (that is, compact sentences having only one of the correlative words expressed,) and perfect loose, in consequence of the fact that the same connectives are common to both, and still more of the fact that some writers are not sufficiently attentive to unequivocal construction, often approximate in the same manner; and when they do, the sense only of a given sentence or its connection, can determine to which it should be referred. *e. g.*

The person he chanced to see, was, to appearance, an old, sordid, blind man'; but upon his following him from place to place, he at last found, by his own confession, that he was Plutus, the god of riches.

It is the highest and most strenuous action of the soul''; but an entirely harmonious action in which all our powers and affections are blended in a beautiful proportion, and sustain and perfect one another.

I know not what course others may take', but as for me, give me liberty, or give me death.

The first of these sentences is perfect loose, and demands partial close on *man;* i. e. a fall of the voice at that point of the sentence indicating complete sense: the second is equivocal, and may receive the bend at *soul*, as if a single compact, or partial close, as if a perfect loose: the third is incontestably a single compact, and must, as such, receive the bend on *take.* The correlatives are *indeed—but.*

The single compact of the second form with the correlatives just mentioned, (*indeed—but,*) when the first part contains a negative, like the last example above, is sometimes in danger of being mistaken for a double compact with the first and third parts only expressed. (*See examples, below, of Double Comp. No.* 5.) But it may always be distinguished from the *double compact* of this combination of the parts, by observing that its first part contains a concession, while the double contains in its first simply a denial of a given proposition. Still farther, the two parts of the double compact, are directly opposed to each other: the two parts of the single compact are not.

Finally, the compound close and imperfect loose often so nearly resemble each other, that the reader is left to determine which construction should be preferred, in a given case, by a regard to delivery; that is to say, by considering which will produce the superior oratorical effect.

I can hear whatever happens with manlike magnanimity'\; can be contented and fully happy in the good which I possess^; and can pass through this turbid, this fickle, this fleeting period, without bewailings or envyings or murmurings or complaints.

This sentence may be treated either as a close with a series at the end, and be delivered with the bend; or as an imperfect loose, and be delivered with partial and perfect close.

These occasional approximations of the different species, however, lead to no practical difficulties; for when it is once ascertained to which a given sentence should be referred by consulting the structure or the sense, or, when these afford no light, by considering which will produce the superior oratorical effect, the delivery is then settled; since the delivery must conform to that of the species to which, by assignment, it belongs.

CLASS I. COMPOUND DECLARATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Examples of the Close.*

(See Definition of a compound, of a declarative, and of a close sentence.)

Exercise and temperance strengthen the constitution. John, William and James have returned. He was half maddened by glorious or terrible illusions. The hour is coming, in which all that are in their graves, shall hear his voice, and come forth. This is the bread which cometh down from heaven, that a man may eat thereof, and not die. He found what he sought. He that entereth in by the door, is the shepherd of the sheep. I cannot consent out of tenderness to the memory of the Gages, the Hutchinsons, the Grenvilles and Norths, the Dartmouths and Hillsboroughs, to cast a veil over the labors and the sacrifices of the Quincys, the Hancocks and the Warrens.

2. *Examples of the Compact.*

1. *Of the Single Compact.*

(See Definition of a single compact.)

1st FORM: both the correlative words expressed.

Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him. So to see thy glory, as I have seen thee in the sanctuary. As in Adam all die, so in Christ shall all be made alive. Where the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together. When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit on the throne of his glory. If you know that the object is good, then seek it. Better is a dinner of herbs where love is, than a stalled ox and hatred therewith.

2d FORM: only one of the correlative words expressed.

I writ, because it amused me. I published, because I was told I might please. Whither I go, ye cannot come. If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded though one rose from the dead. As they have won an honorable station among independent states, it becomes our imperative duty to treat them as such.

The pupil should be required to state what the suppressed correlative is, and where in the sentence it belongs.

3d FORM: neither of the correlative words expressed.

This FORM has five varieties.

1. The first does not differ from the 1st and 2d form of the single compact, except in having both of the correlatives understood, and in having the verb in the first or second part, (as may be seen in the examples which follow,) transposed.

2. The second uniformly begins with so called present and perfect participles. I say, *so called*, because these participles really have no time of their own, but being essentially substitutes for the verb, they assume the time of the verb for which they stand. To ascertain their time it is only necessary to convert them into the tense of the verb required by the sense. (*See "Course of Reading," p.* 26.)

3. The third variety has parts apparently making perfect sense; which is a leading characteristic of a loose sentence; but it is distinguished from the loose by implying and nearly always clearly implying, correlative terms in the parts. It is distinguished from the other varieties by the insertion of *and* between the parts instead of the second correlative. Sometimes the second correlative is associated with *and;* as may be seen in the examples which follow.

4. The fourth variety begins with or includes the nominative case independent.

5. The fifth variety begins with or includes an infinitive independent, preceded by the phrase, *in order*, expressed or understood. What is meant by an infinitive, (I use this term as others used it: see "Course of Reading," p. 29,) will, I trust, be sufficiently obvious in the examples adduced below.

1st Variety.

Had he assisted me, I would have done it. Should he go, I will attend him. A professed Catholic, he imprisoned the pope. A pretended patriot, he impoverished his country. Were it not for the impediments I speak of, I would pursue the course you have pointed out. I should feel ashamed of an enthusiasm for Italy and Greece, did I not feel it for a land like this.

The pupil should state the correlative words understood in each of the examples of this and of every succeeding variety.

2d Variety.

Being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ. Having given this account of the constitution of the everlasting club, I should here endeavor to say something of the manners and characters of the several members. Affected by this spectacle of suffering, he proffered relief. Highly elated by his unexpected good fortune, he returned home. Saving carefully the fruits of his labor, he at length was able to purchase a farm.

Being justified; i. e. *when* we are justified—*then* we have, &c. Having given; i. e. as we have—so I should, &c.

3d Variety.

Seek, and ye shall find. I was hungry, and ye gave me no meat. The rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds

blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell. I have given five times as much as he, and yet I fear I have not given enough. The idea of God, it is said, may be expunged from the heart of man, and yet that heart will be the seat, still, of the same constitutional impulses as ever. He could not do as he wished, and so he would do nothing. Let him see that something is to be gained by study, and then he will apply himself to books.

Seek; i. e. *if* ye seek—*then* ye shall, &c. I was hungry; i. e. *though* I was—*yet* ye gave, &c.

4th Variety.

This melancholy event having occurred, he felt unable to remain in that neighborhood, and emigrated to the state of Ohio. Such being the case, there is of course an end to argument. His friend being much touched, even to tears, at this, with a most affectionate look he said, Keep those tears for thyself.

This melancholy; i. e. *when* this melancholy event had, &c.—*then* he felt, &c.

5th Variety.

In order to succeed in their enterprises, it is necessary that they should put on, at least, the appearance of virtue. In order to overcome these difficulties, he had recourse to all the most subtle arts of the courtiers of that period. To deny this, he must forfeit every claim to the title of an honest man. In order to make a suitable provision for his family, he must lie awake many a long night, and labor hard many a long day.

In order that men, &c.; i. e. *if* or *when* men, &c.—*then* it is necessary, &c.

2. *Of the Double Compact.*

(See Definition of a double compact.)

Of double compact with all the parts.

Swear not by heaven, for it is God's throne; but let your communication be yea, yea; and nay, nay; for whatsoever is more than these, cometh of evil.

It was not an eclipse that caused the darkness at the crucifixion of our Lord; for the sun and moon were not relatively in a position to produce an eclipse; but a direct interposition of God; for on no other supposition can we account for it.

These are the only double compacts I have been able to find, having all the parts expressed; and the first of these is in part constructed out of materials afforded by Matth. v. Three of the four parts which legitimately belong to this sentence, are as many as are commonly used at the same time: more frequently not more than two of them are employed, and sometimes one alone. I subjoin examples of the different combinations in which they appear.

1. The fourth part is sometimes omitted: *e. g.*

They had not come in search of gain, for the soil was sterile and

unproductive; but they had come that they might worship God according to the dictates of their consciences.

It was not enough that our fathers were of England; the masters of Ireland and the lords of Hindostan were of England too; but our fathers were Englishmen, aggrieved, persecuted and banished.

2. The third and fourth part are sometimes omitted: *e. g.*

We must not impute the delay to indifference, for delay may be designed to promote our happiness.

We dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend themselves, for they, measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise.

Not all the chapters of human history are thus important; the annals of our race have been filled up with incidents which convey no instruction.

3. When the negative or first part contains several members,* the second, third and fourth are sometimes omitted: *e. g.*

[And what is our country?] It is not the East with her hills and valleys, with her countless sails, and the rocky rampart of her shores; it is not the North with her thousand villages, and her harvest-home, with her frontier of the lake and ocean; it is not the West with her forest sea and her inland isles, with her luxuriant expanses, clothed in the verdant corn, with her beautiful Ohio and her majestic Missouri; nor is it yet the South, opulent in the mimic snow of the cotton, in the rich plantation of the rustling cane, and the golden robes of the rice-field.

4. The second only is sometimes omitted: *e. g.*

Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof; neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin; but yield yourselves unto God as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God; for sin shall not have dominion over you.

5. The second and fourth are generally omitted; and the negative and affirmative, or the first and third proposition, are brought into immediate contrast: *e. g.*

I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil. Labor not for the meat that perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life. Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

---

* With only one member, the second, third and fourth are omitted in colloquial writings.

It is not his power, as attested by all that exists within the limits of actual discovery, but his power, as conceived to form and uphold a universe whose outskirts are unknown.

We do not recognise in her the Christian, who has attained to the perfect liberty of God's children, but the exact type of those souls, at all times numerous, and especially among her sex, who, drawn powerfully to look to heaven, have not strength sufficient to disengage themselves entirely from the bondage of earth.

For a criterion to distinguish this combination of the parts of a double compact from the single compact second form with the correlatives *indeed—but*, see above, General Note on the different species of compound sentences.

6. Occasionally, when the first and third parts are thus in immediate contrast, they are transposed: *e. g.*

You was paid to fight against Alexander; not to rail at him. They were asleep; not alienated.

7. Finally, the negative is occasionally inserted as a clause in the affirmative: *e. g.*

His wisdom, not his talents, attracts attention. Intrinsic worth, and not riches, procures esteem. Strong proofs, not a loud voice, produce conviction. Ambition, and not the safety of the state, was concerned.

The copulative *and*, which occurs in one or two of these examples, is here equivalent to *but*, and elegantly used for it.

It should be observed, before leaving the double compact sentence, that the negative is sometimes reduced to a single word: *e. g.*

Nay, but it's really true:
I had it from good hands, and so may you.
(*See Simple Declarative, Yes, No.*)

GENERAL NOTE ON THE DIFFERENT COMBINATIONS OF DOUBLE COMPACT.

Between the first and the succeeding parts, especially when the first consists of several members, *no* or *nay* is often introduced as a summary and equivalent expression of the former: and occasionally when so introduced, it is immediately followed by the sentence which, in conformity with what I have said on a preceding page, it represents. (*See Simple Declarative, Remarks on Yes and No.*) I subjoin an example of each case. They are worthy of careful observation in view of delivery. The first is an example of the use of *no* alone: the second, of *no* and the sentence it represents together.

No wars have ravaged these lands and depopulated these villages; no civil discords have been felt; no disputed succession; no religious rage; no merciless enemy; no affliction of Providence, which, while it scourged for the moment, cut off the sources of resuscitation; no voracious and poisonous monsters; no; all this has been accomplished by the friendship, generosity and kindness of the English nation.

No effeminate nobility crowded into the dark and austere ranks of the pilgrims; no Carr nor Villiers would lead on the ill-provided band of the despised Puritans; no well-endowed clergy were on the alert to quit their cathedrals, and set up a pompous hierarchy in the frozen wilderness; no craving governors were anxious to be sent over to our cheerless El Dorados of ice and of snow; no; they could not say they had encourged, patronized or helped the pilgrims: their own cares, their own labors, their own counsels, their own blood, contrived all, achieved all, bore all, sealed all.

When *no* or *nay* is thus introduced, it should be regarded and treated precisely as if it began the sentence like *nay* in the last example under No. 7 above.

3. *Examples of the Loose.*

(See Definition of a loose sentence.)

1. *Of the Perfect Loose.*

Christians, familiar with the principles of justice, desire to see them adhered to in proceedings against others or themselves; but those who are accustomed to act according to their own will, are much surprised when required to proceed regularly and agreeably to form and law. Let your moderation be known unto all men: the Lord is at hand. The first man is of the earth, earthy: the second man is the Lord from heaven.

2. *Of the Imperfect Loose.*

History, as it has been written, is the genealogy of princes: the field-book of conquerors. The law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless and disobedient; for the unholy and profane; for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers; for manslayers; for whoremongers; for them that defile themselves with mankind; for manstealers; for liars; for perjured persons; and if there be any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine.

CLASS II. COMPOUND INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

(See Definition of a compound sentence, and also the Definition of an interrogative.)

Compound interrogative sentences, besides being, like simple interrogatives, definite, indefinite and indirect, are also *double* and *semi-interrogative*.

The double interrogative consists of two parts united by the disjunctive conjunction *or*. The second of these is often much abbreviated; and both the first and second, considered independently of each other, may have either a close, compact or loose construction.

Strictly speaking, the double interrogative is a declarative single compact sentence, with the correlative words, *whether—or:* the former nearly always understood. I say *nearly* always, because I have met with a few exceptions. The following are examples: "Whether is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy, Thy sins be forgiven thee? or to say, Arise, and take up thy bed, and walk" "Whether is he the author of the flame, who lays down the fuel; or who applies the torch" Of course, the interrogation between its parts, properly represents the comma; though it may, in view of allowable deviations, represent the semicolon. (*See Examples below.*)

The semi-interrogative is distinguished from all other interrogatives, by being in part declarative or declarative exclamatory. The interrogative portion may be either definite, indefinite, indirect or double; and both the interrogative and the declarative or declarative exclamatory, may be either simple or compound: if compound, either close, compact or loose. Besides this variety of construction of each separately considered, the interrogative, and the declarative or exclamatory portion, form together, relatively to one another, either a close, compact, or loose sentence. (*See Examples below.*) They are punctuated like the sentences which, independently or relatively, they form.

1. THE DEFINITE INTERROGATIVE.

(See Definition of a Definite Interrogative, Simple sentences, Class II. 1.)

1. *Examples of the Close.*

Are John and James residing at home this summer? Is not virtue rewarded and vice punished? Is it true, that the woman died of mere joy, on being told that her long-lost child had been discovered? Do you think it wise or humane, at this moment, to insult them by sticking up in the pillory the man who dared to stand forth their advocate? Do you think that a blessing of that kind, that a victory, obtained by justice over bigotry and oppression, should have a stigma cast upon it, by an ignominious sentence upon men, bold and honest enough to propose that measure? Has he not himself, have not all the martyrs after him, poured forth their blood in the conflict?

2. *Examples of the Single Compact.*

The examples are confined to the illustration of single compacts. Though I have looked diligently for a double compact, I have hitherto been unable to find one. The nature of a double compact seems to be incompatible with interrogation. At most, I have found and that rarely, a mixture of this sentence with the predominance of some other species in the same question.

Almost all compacts purely interrogative, appear with the correlative words and parts reversed. With the parts in the natural order, they would cease to be purely interrogative, and become semi-interrogative.

1st FORM: with both correlative words expressed.

Is it then a time to remove foundations, when the earth itself is shaken? Is eloquence therefore less excellent in itself, because it has been abused? Is he so seriously ill, in consequence of the accident which occurred the other day, that he cannot leave his room?

2d FORM: with one of the correlative words expressed.

Is this a time to forfeit the protection of God, when the hearts of men are failing them for fear? Is it because foreigners are in a condition to set our malice at defiance, that we are willing to contract engagements of friendship? Must we remain here, while he is absent on this expedition? Shall we proceed, though the expected aid should not arrive? Am I to forgive, if he will not repent?

3d FORM: with neither of the correlative words expressed.

Could you succeed, had you the means of which you speak? Would you perform a benevolent action, did you not know that others would see and applaud it? Can you insult a man, unable, by reason of his physical infirmities, to avenge himself? Should we oppress a man, already driven to despair, by the miseries of those who are depending on him for support? Did he die, still hoping for pardon?

3. *Examples of the Loose.*

The loose interrogative, and the loose interrogative exclamation, of the different species, have the interrogation and exclamation point sometimes inserted between the parts, and sometimes only at the end: the semicolon and colon taking their place. The student should bear this in mind; that, when he meets with a loose sentence having the interrogation or exclamation point between the parts, he may not mistake such parts for independent sentences. In this work, when the interrogation or exclamation point is thus inserted, he will be kept from error by observing that the first letter succeeding it, is not a capital. This is the manner, I conceive, in which the loose interrogative, or loose interrogative exclamatory, should always be printed; and this is the manner of the older works. The modern practice, however, at least on this side of the Atlantic, is almost uniform in neglecting it.

1. *Of the Perfect Loose.*

Had not the shepherd made them to lie down in green pastures; had he not led them beside the still waters; restored he not their souls; did he not lead them, for his own name sake, in paths of righteousness; and was he not with them, still keeping them from evil?

Have the gates of death been opened unto thee? or hast thou seen the doors of the shadow of death? Canst thou bring forth Mazzaroth in his season? or canst thou guide Arcturus with his sons?

Are we formed with a passionate longing for immortality, and yet destined to perish after this short period of existence? are we prompted to the noblest actions, and supported through life under the severest hardships, and the most delicate temptations, by the hope of a reward which is visionary and chimerical?

2. *Of the Imperfect Loose.*

Do we never meet with the charity which melts at suffering: with the honesty which disdains, and is proudly superior to false-

hood: with the active beneficence which gives to others its time and its labor: with the modesty which shrinks from notice, and gives all its sweetness to retirement: with the gentleness which breathes peace to all, and throws a beautiful lustre over the walks of domestic society?

Knowest thou it because thou wast then born? or because the number of thy days is great.

2. THE INDEFINITE INTERROGATIVE.

(See Definition of Indefinite Interrogative, Simple sentences, Class II. 2.)

1. *Examples of the Close.*

Where is the man whose moral courage is equal to the task of rising and pleading this cause against this host of the licentious and profane? When did patriotism attempt or moral courage achieve a more signal victory? Whose house is that which I perceive on the hill yonder? Who does not feel, what reflective American does not acknowledge, the incalculable advantage, derived to this land, out of the foundations of civil, intellectual and moral truth, from which we have drawn in England?

Examples of Fragmentary Close.

The man and woman, with her child? What virtues and vices?

The context of the first example implies "What became of" at the beginning; and of the second, "approximate in the way you mention;" i. e. certain virtues to vices: certain vices to virtues.

2. *Examples of the Single Compact.**

1st FORM: with both of the correlative words expressed.

What is so calculated to impress them with the importance of prayer, as the being called at stated intervals to take part in our devotional supplications to God? Who can tell how often there the waves of barbarous migrations may have broken harmless against the cliffs, where nature was the strong ally of the defenders of the land?

2d FORM: with one of the correlative words expressed.

Why should I question his veracity, when he assured me that this man had never done an act of beneficence in his life? When can you hope for such another, if this be neglected? To what shall we impute the misfortunes that have overtaken and overwhelmed the country within the last five years, if not to an officious,

---

* The double not found.

arbitrary, tyrannical meddling with the natural currents and laws of trade?

3d FORM: with neither of the correlative words expressed.

Who would not have committed the same crime, had he been exposed to the same temptation? What would be the result, were he to fail in the very outset of the enterprise?

The indefinite compact is often made fragmentary, by the suppression of all of the first part except the interrogative *what*, thus: What, if he did? What, though he fled? What, when you met him? (*See Ch. VI. Rule XIV. Note at the end of examples.*)

3. *Examples of the Loose.*

1. *Of the Perfect Loose.*

By what authority doest thou these things; or who gave thee this authority? When shall these things be? and what sign shall there be, when these things come to pass? Where is now that splendor of the most exalted dignities? where are those marks of honor and distinction? what has become of that pomp of feastings and rejoicings? what is the issue of those frequent acclamations, and extravagantly flattering encomiums, lavished by a whole people assembled in the circus to see the public shows?

2. *Of the Imperfect Loose.*

Where is her splendor: her wealth: her power: her glory? To whom do we owe it, that in this favored land the gospel of the blessed God has best displayed its power to bless humanity, by uniting the anticipations of a better world with the highest interests and pursuits of this: by carrying its merciful influence into the very business and bosoms of men: by making the ignorant wise, and the miserable happy: by breaking the fetters of the slave, and teaching the "babe and the suckling" those simple and sublime truths which give life its dignity and virtue, and fill immortality with hope?

3. THE INDIRECT INTERROGATIVE.

(See Definition of Indirect Interrogative, Simple sentences, Class II. 3.)

These sentences, like other compounds, are close, compact and loose; but as they seldom occur, I shall content myself with giving examples without reference to these divisions: trusting that the student is well enough acquainted, at this stage, with their distinctive features, to recognise them, whenever they appear.

1. *Examples of the first kind.*

You do not think, I hope, that I will join in conversation with such a man; or that I will so far betray my character, as to give countenance to such desperate proceedings?

This sentence is, alone, an illustration of close, compact and loose. As a whole, it is imperfect loose: having in the first part a close, and in the second, a compact construction.

2. *Examples of the second kind.*

And it came to pass, when he was in a certain city, behold a man full of leprosy; who, seeing Jesus, fell on his face and besought him: saying, Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean? And he put forth his hand and touched him: saying, I will: be thou clean.

I quote no more of this sentence, as example, than the question it contains: the question of the leper.

3. *Examples of the third kind.*

You surely will not say, I am bound to read such books? Truth, Lord, yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their master's table? Sure he that made us, made us to enjoy?

4. THE DOUBLE INTERROGATIVE.

(See Definition of a Double Interrogative.)

Examples.

Is it lawful to give tribute unto Cæsar, or not? Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another? Is it lawful on the Sabbath day to do good, or to do evil? to save life, or to destroy it? Has God forsaken the works of his own hands, or does he always graciously preserve and keep and guide them?

5. THE SEMI-INTERROGATIVE.

(See Definition of a Semi-interrogative sentence.)

Examples.

He approached the man and said, what place is this? And he turned unto the woman and said unto Simon, Seest thou this woman?

If you reasoned aright, and probed the soul well, would you not find that from these, as from hidden springs, a great deal of all the best felicity, you have tasted, has welled up?

Beasts of burden may easily be managed by a new master, but will the wild ass submit to bonds?

In such a state, eloquence, it is obvious, would be most studied as the surest means of rising to influence and power; and what sort of eloquence?

To you the world is in its prime: why should you anticipate its decay?

The baptism of John: was it from heaven, or of men?

Then said Jesus unto them, I will ask you one thing: is it lawful on the Sabbath-day to do good, or to do evil? to save life, or to destroy it?

During the conversation he was silent; but I heard him, as he went out, saying to a man with whom he was walking, And so he died without making, after all, a confession of his many crimes?

He who maims my person, affects that which medicine may remedy; but what herb has sovereignty over the wound of slander? he who ridicules my poverty or reproaches my profession, upbraids me with that which industry may retrieve, and integrity may rectify; but what riches shall redeem the bankrupt fame?

The two Semi-interrogatives in the last example, taken together, may be called a loose semi-interrogative. (*See definition of a loose sentence.*)

CLASS III. COMPOUND EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

(See Definition of a compound sentence, and also of an exclamatory sentence.)

Compound exclamatory sentences are *declarative, interrogative, compellative* and *semi-exclamatory:* the last so called, because only in part exclamatory.

Compound compellatives differ in nothing from the simple, except in comprising two or more names connected by copulatives expressed or understood, or either one or two, followed by an adjunct or rather circumstance, also connected by a copulative expressed or understood. As the compellatives necessarily make imperfect sense, they must always be separated from what follows by the comma: if followed by a circumstance, that too, making imperfect sense, must be separated from the succeeding part of the sentence by the comma.

Almost every species of exclamatory sentences appears in a fragmentary form.

1. THE DECLARATIVE EXCLAMATORY.

(See Definition of a declarative sentence, and also of an exclamatory sentence.)

1. *Examples of the Close.*

Shame and death to the enemies of the Queen and State! Wo to those who in disgust shall venture to crush her! There goes

one who belonged to the army of Italy! God forbid that my happiness should be bought at such a price! The next gale that sweeps from the north, will bring to our ears the clash of resounding arms! Would that the principle of that faith which we have believed, and which we prize, were also hers!

That they should have attempted to pass the grand, yet solid and judicious operations of a mind like his, as being the mere theatrical start and emotion, the giddy, hair-brained eccentricities of a romantic boy; that they should have had the presumption to suppose themselves capable of chaining down to the floor of parliament, a genius so ethereal, towering and sublime, seems unaccountable!

Examples of Fragmentary Close.

Washington and Hamilton in five years! One million of men torn from their homes, butchered in battle, and left to rot and bleach where they fell, to gratify the ambition of a despot! That those who have been rocked in the same cradle by the same maternal hand, and imbibed the first genial nourishment of infant existence from the same blessed source, should be forced to contend in impious strife for the destruction of that being, derived from their common parents!

[He launched forth upon the unknown deep, to discover a new world under the patronage of Ferdinand and Isabella.] The patronage of Ferdinand and Isabella! [Let us dwell for a moment on the auspices under which our country was brought to light.] The patronage of Ferdinand and Isabella! [Yes, doubtless, they have fitted out a convoy, worthy the noble temper of the man, and the gallantry of the object.]

2. *Examples of the Compact.*

1. *Of the Single Compact.*

1st FORM: with both of the correlative words expressed.

When at length we meet again, before the blessed tribunal of that Deity whose mild doctrines, and whose mercies, ye have this day renounced; then shall you feel the agony and grief of soul, which now tear the bosom of your weak accuser!

Then if you see my limbs convulsed, my teeth clenched, my hair bristling, and cold dews trembling on my brow; seize me!

2d FORM: with one of the correlative words expressed.

Troy thought so once, yet the land of Priam lives only in song! —The believers in Christianity are many, but it belongs to the few that are wise to correct their credulity!

[Oh God!] if thou art still the widow's husband, and the father of the fatherless, pity, O pity this afflicted mother, and grant that her hapless orphans may find a friend, a benefactor, a father in thee!

While led by thy hand, and fighting under thy banners; open thou their eyes to behold in every valley and in every plain, what the prophets beheld by the same illumination: chariots of fire, and horses of fire!

3d FORM: with neither of the correlative words expressed.

Happy would it have been for her and all, had my first counsels prevailed!—Happy were it for us, did we constantly view the great Creator and Preserver of all, continually manifesting himself in his various works!

Could we approach thee, gladly would we drop the tear of sympathy, and pour into thy bleeding bosom the balm of consolation!

You have vanquished him in the field; strive now to rival him in the sacred arts of peace!

You will never think as I do, and I will never think as you do! Stain my riband blue, cries the illustrious knight, and the fountain of honor will have a fast and faithful servant!

Flung into life in the midst of a revolution that quickened every energy of a people who acknowledge no superior, he commenced his course a stranger by birth, and a scholar by charity!

Examples of Fragmentary Single Compact.

Did you know the burning of this bosom!—[but I speak unthinkingly perhaps what my delicacy should not have whispered even in the ear of friendship!]

Could we but prevail on my *father* to think thus! [Alas, his mind is not formed for contracting into that narrow sphere, which his fortune has now marked out for him.]

Had you seen him, Julia, when he pronounced this forever!

Had you seen her eyes, how they spoke, when her father gave me her hand!

Did you feel that name as I do!—[Even traced with my pen, what throbbing remembrances has it raised!]

Could I be with you!—[but I shall not be forgotten at the interview!]

When I think of the many thousands of my fellow-creatures groaning under oppression and misery!—[Great God! hast thou peopled those regions of thy world for the purpose of casting out their inhabitants to chains and torture?]

Admirable! but upon this doctrine, the poor man who has but one single vice, must be in a bad way.

Each of these exclamatory sentences, except the last, has its second part, beginning with *then* understood. What that part may be, the student must surmise.

The last example, which has the correlative word *indeed* suppressed, has the first part in a fragmentary state; which is here, it will be observed, pointed as exclamatory. This is often the case with every species of exclamatory sentence. I make this remark once for all.

To become familiar with these fragmentary forms, is of the highest importance to a correct delivery. They are frequently met with.

2. *Of the Double Compact.*

Surely victories and triumph do not give immortal glory to a city! but the exercise of mercy towards a vanquished enemy, the using of moderation in the greatest prosperity, and fearing to offend God by a haughty and insolent pride!

It disturbed no innocent man; it knew where its appearance would strike terror, and who would cry out, "A ghost!" it made itself visible in the right quarter, and compelled the guilty and the conscience-smitten, and none others, to start with,

Pr'ythee, see there! behold! look! lo!
If I stand here, I saw him!

He is not content to triumph over the Gauls, the Egyptians and Pharnaces; he must triumph over his own countrymen! He is not content to cause the statues of Scipio and Petrius to be carried before him; he must be graced by that of Cato! He is not content with the simple effigy of Cato; he must exhibit that of his suicide! He is not satisfied to insult the Romans by triumphing over the death of liberty; they must gaze upon the representation of her expiring agonies, and mark the writhings of her last, fatal struggle!

They are not fighting; (do not disturb them;) they are merely pausing! This man is not expiring with agony; that man is not dead; he is only pausing! They are not angry with one another; they have no cause of quarrel, but their country thinks that there should be a pause! All that you see, sir, is nothing like fighting; there is no harm, nor cruelty, nor bloodshed in it whatever; it is nothing more than a political pause!

You would not select the political firebrand; you would not seek your seconds in the tavern or in the brothel; you would not inquire out the man who was oppressed with debts, contracted by licentiousness, debauchery, every species of profligacy! [who, sir, I ask, were Cæsar's seconds in his undertakings?]

In the first of these examples, we have the first and third propositions in contact: in the second, the first, second and third: in the third, a series of double compacts, consisting of the first and third: the fourth differs from the third only in having the first proposition of most of the compacts consist of two or more members: the last consists of the first proposition, *only*, with several members.

3. *Examples of the Loose.*

1. *Of the Perfect Loose.*

Time flies: words are unavailing: the chieftains prepare for instant battle!

This is the consequence of your generosity: he whom your goodness raised to an equality with your own children, is the murderer of your children!

May the disciples of Washington then see, as we now see, the flag of the Union floating on the top of the Capitol; and then, as now, may the sun in his course visit no land more free, more happy, more lovely, than this our own country!

2. *Of the Imperfect Loose.*

He aspired to be the highest! above the people! above the authorities! above the laws! above his country!

This is the way to fall, when one must fall! to surrender, when one must surrender! to die, when death comes!

Oh the insupportable anguish of reflecting that we died of hunger, when there was bread enough and to spare! that we perished from thirst, when the waters of salvation were rolling at our very feet!

It was the spirit of liberty which still abides on earth, and has its home in the bosoms of the brave: which but yesterday in beautiful France restored their violated charter: which even now burns brightly on the towers of Belgium, and has rescued Poland from the tyrant's grasp: making their sons, aye, and their daughters too, the wonder and the admiration of the world; the pride and glory of the human race!

2. THE INTERROGATIVE EXCLAMATORY.

(See Definition of an interrog. sent. and also of an exclamatory sentence.)

1. THE DEFINITE INTERROGATIVE.

(See Definition of a Definite Interrogative.)

1. *Examples of the Close.*

Shall it be said that we will not sacrifice one prejudice on the altar of the Union for its preservation!

Was it a wonder, then, that I seized my prejudices, and, with a blush, burned them on the altar of my country!

[Is it come to this!] Shall an inferior magistrate, a governor who holds his power of the Roman people, in a Roman province, within sight of Italy, bind, scourge, torture with fire and red-hot plates of iron, and at last put to the infamous death of the cross, a Roman citizen!

Examples of Fragmentary Close.

Of a friend who had saved his life! [Incredible.]

That God and nature have put into our hands!

Go from Boston to New York and thence to Philadelphia in two days!

2. *Examples of the Compact.*

I have not been able to find a double compact definite, and even single compacts are very scarce. Such as I have been able to collect will be found below, and in the appropriate place in Chapter VI.

1st FORM: with both correlative words expressed.

Might Rome then have been taken, if these men, who were at our gates, had not wanted courage for the attempt!

Would it not be advisable rather to attend to this declared object of the war now, than wait until after the Canadian scheme is effected!

2d FORM: with one correlative word expressed.

Will you charge me with a purpose to overthrow the government, because I oppose misrule!

Do you strike me like a dog, because I will not submit to oppression!

Is tyranny of this kind to be borne with, where law is said to exist!

Do you propose to defeat the enemy, when at the gates!

3d FORM: with neither of the correlative words expressed.

Could hope have ever visited your breasts, had Christ not suffered on the cross the vengeance of man and the wrath of God!

Would the enemies of the country dare to assail us, having made such ample preparations to repel them!

Could he do this, and I remain silent!

Victory, and I not there!

3. *Examples of the Loose.*

1. *Of the Perfect Loose.*

Was it not enough that sorrow robed the happy home in mourning: was it not enough that disappointment preyed upon its loveliest prospects: was it not enough that its little inmates cried in vain for bread, and heard no answer but the poor father's sigh, and drank no sustenance but the wretched mother's tears: was this a time for passion, conscienceless, licentious passion, with its eye of lust, its heart of stone, its hand of rapine, to rush into the mournful sanctuary of misfortune, casting crime into the cup of wo, and rob the parents of their last wealth, their child, and rob the child of her only charm, her innocence!

Examples of Fragmentary Perfect Loose.

To change the settled law of property! to confiscate the widow's pittance! to plunder the orphan's cradle! and to violate the dead man's grave! [For this, too, there was a precedent.]

To turn forth into our settlements, among our ancient connections, friends and relations, the merciless cannibal, thirsting for the blood of man, woman and child! to send forth the infidel savage against your protestant brethren to lay waste their country, desolate their dwellings and extirpate their race and name, with these horrible hell-hounds of savage war!

2. *Of the Imperfect Loose.*

Are we brought into the world and allowed to occupy a place in it, only that we may pursue trifles! that we may brutishly gratify our appetites and passions! that we may leave the world at last, perhaps at the expiration of threescore years and ten, without having derived any advantage from being in it, or conferring a single benefit upon it!

Fragmentary Imperfect Loose.

What! to attribute the sacred sanctions of God and nature to the massacres of the Indian scalping-knife! to the cannibal savage, torturing, murdering, devouring, drinking the blood of his mangled victims!

[By what name shall I now address you? Shall I call you soldiers?] Soldiers! who have dared to besiege the son of your emperor! who have made him a prisoner in his own intrenchments! [Can I call you citizens?] Citizens! who have trampled under your feet the authority of the senate! who have violated the most awful sanctions, even those which hostile states have ever held in respect, the rights of ambassadors, and the laws of nations!

2. THE INDEFINITE INTERROGATIVE.

(See Definition of the Indefinite Interrogative sent.)

1. *Examples of the Close.*

How easily do vigor of body and infirmity of mind lodge under the same roof!

What a multitude of this and that living host, now glorious in the blaze of arms, and burning with desires of conquest, will fall and perish!

How often do we see in our public gazettes, a pompous display

of honors to the memory of some veteran patriot, who has been suffered to linger out his latter days in unregarded penury!

2. *Examples of the Compact.*

I have not been able to find a double compact indefinite: consequently the examples below are confined to the single, as under the head of definite.

1st FORM: with both correlative words expressed.

Where then shall the poor longing for the improvement of their condition, the ignorant yearning to look with intelligence upon the fair page of knowledge, the oppressed sighing for liberty and the persecuted for rest, the poor, the ignorant, the oppressed and persecuted of every clime, find an asylum, when young America, whose boast has been the largest liberty of conscience and exertion, closes the door against their approach, or allowing them to enter, places upon their limbs the very fetters from which they fled!

2d FORM: with one of the correlatives expressed.

What momentous meaning hangs upon that word, *first*, when its peculiar relations in this connection are understood!

How many favorite schemes of enjoyment would the thought of him and his will put to flight, if faithfully admitted to the inner chambers of the mind!

3d FORM: with neither of the correlative words expressed

How well would it have been, had he but retraced the fountain of that document!

How different would have been our lot this day, both as men and citizens, had the revolution failed of success!

What, what are the hours of a splendid wretch like this, compared with those that shed their poppies and their roses upon the pillows of our peaceful and virtuous patriots!

The only fragmentary form of the indefinite compact, of which I am at present aware, is the following: varied by the use of different correlative words, *what, though; what, then.*

[The success of the campaign depends upon the occurrence of no unfavorable contingency.] But what, if our supplies should be cut off!

"Then shall we do," or something similar, is here understood after *what*.

3. *Examples of the Loose.*

1. *Of the Perfect Loose.*

How striking the event! how wide its influence! how strange its effects! Who can deny that the existence of such a country presents a subject for human congratulation: who can deny that

its gigantic advancement offers a field for the most rational conjecture!

How few modern orators could venture on such apostrophes; and what a power of genius would it require to give such figures now their proper grace, or make them produce a due effect on the hearers!

2. *Of the Imperfect Loose.*

How precious must that liberty be, which could prompt a great people to suffer their native prince to wander in exile! which could move them to resist every attempt to replace him on the throne!

What a spectacle was this, to see uncircumcised Philistines laying their profane hands upon the testimony of God's presence! to see the glorious mercy-seat under the roof of an idol! to see the two cherubims spreading their wings under a false god!

Where in the compass of human literature, can the fancy be so elevated by sublime description: can the heart be so warmed by simple, unaffected tenderness!

3. THE INDIRECT INTERROGATIVE.

(See Definition of the Indirect Interrogative sent.)

1. *Examples of the first kind.*

Thou dost not mean—
No, no, thou wouldst not have me make
A trial of my skill upon my child!

2. *Examples of the second kind.*

Of this variety of the indirect, I have met with no examples.

3. *Examples of the third kind.*

[But how was it received by the American cabinet?] Surely, they were indignant at this treatment: surely the air rings with reproaches upon a man, who has thus made them stake their reputation upon a falsehood, and then gives little less than the lie direct to their assertions! [No, sir: nothing of the kind.]

3. THE COMPELLATIVE EXCLAMATORY.

(See Definition of a Compellative exclamatory.)

Examples.

Men, brethren and fathers!—Friends and fellow-citizens!—Truth! friendship! my country! [accept my last sacrifice.] Prin-

ces, potentates, and powers!—Romans, countrymen, and lovers!—Prescott, Putnam, Stark, Brooks, Read, Pomeroy, Bridge!—[our eyes seek for you in vain amidst the broken band.]

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee! [how often would I have gathered, &c. &c.]

Ye who have hearts of pity! ye who have experienced the anguish of dissolving friendship! who have wept and still weep over the moulderings of departed kindred!—[ye can enter into this reflection.]

O thou great Arbiter of life and death!
Nature's immortal, immaterial sun!
Whose all-prolific beam late called me forth
From darkness, (teeming darkness, where I lay
The worm's inferior, and in rank beneath
The dust I tread on,) high to bear my brow,
To drink the spirit of the golden day,
And triumph in existence; and could know
No motive but my bliss; and hast ordained
A rise in blessing! [with the patriot's joy
Thy call I follow to the land unknown.]

4. SEMI-EXCLAMATORY.

(See Definition of Semi-interrogative.)

Examples.

And when he came to himself he said, how many hired servants of my father have enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger!

Oh God! most merciful, most righteous Father of all mercies! he cried in a transport of devotion, with what marvellous love hast thou embraced us: even us, thine enemies!

O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

While he feels in himself nothing but frailty and weakness, how apt is he to apprehend some fatal overthrow!

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him!

Under such circumstances, a sensation of happiness for a single moment would be a cause of gratitude; how much more, if this form of happiness continue throughout our whole extent of being!

He sacrificed every thing he had in the world: what could we ask more!

When a government forbids its citizens, under pain of death, to receive any pension or largess from the hands of foreigners, how gentle and easy is that law to those who, for the sake of their father-land and liberty, would, of their own accord, abstain from so unworthy an act! but on the contrary, how harsh and oppressive does it appear to those, who care for nothing but their selfish gains!

These exclamatory sentences are, correctly speaking, wholly, instead of being semi exclamatory. But it should be observed that they combine two different species of exclamatory sentences: the declarative and interrogative; and that properly named, they would be called semi-interrogative exclamatory. This name, however, is so long and complex, that I preferred the shorter designation, though not quite accurate.

THE MIXED SENTENCE, CIRCUMSTANCE AND PARENTHESIS.

The preceding classification comprises, I believe, every variety of sentence to be found in the English language; and, indeed, in any language, whether ancient or modern; for in them all, the laws of construction, if we except an unimportant difference in the arrangement of words, are precisely the same. It now only remains to observe, that these sentences are not always found in a pure state. They are frequently combined; and when combined, they are equally necessary to the sense and construction, or one or more of them are necessary to the sense, but not to the construction, or one or more of them are necessary neither to the sense nor construction. In the first case, I call the sentence a mixed sentence: in the second, the part or sentence not necessary to the construction, I call, after Dr. Blair, a circumstance: in the third case, the part or sentence inserted, but necessary neither to the sense nor construction, I call a parenthesis.

As the combinations, of course, somewhat modify the delivery, their peculiarities should be understood. I shall, therefore, before dismissing the classification of sentences, describe them: subjoining as hitherto a number of examples, sufficient for all the purposes of illustration.

I. The MIXED SENTENCE is formed of two or more of the same species, or of different species of sentences, so combined, that both or all are equally necessary to the construction and the sense.

Examples.

It is happy that these governors into whose hands you have resigned your power, are so good, and so gracious, as to continue your allowance to see plays.

It is the garment of vengeance with which the Deity arrays himself, when he comes forth to punish the inhabitants of the earth.

The counsel remarked that one of the letters should not be taken in evidence, because it was evidently and abstractedly private.

It is all resolute, manly resistance for conscience and liberty's sake, not merely of an overwhelming power, but of all the force of long-rooted habits and native love of order and peace.

If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop remained in my country, I never would lay down my arms.

I'm surprised at that;
Where I come from, it is the common chat.

Elias was a man subject to like passions as we are, and he prayed earnestly that it might not rain, and it rained not on the earth by the space of three years and six months.

Why do you repeat my words, as if you feared to trust your own?

When my eyes shall be turned to behold, for the last time, the sun in heaven, may I not see him shining on the broken and dishonored fragments of a once glorious union; on states dissevered, discordant, belligerent; on a land rent with civil feuds, or drenched, it may be, in fraternal blood! let their last feeble and lingering glance, rather, behold the gorgeous ensign of the Republic, now known and honored throughout the earth, still full high advanced: its arms and trophies streaming in their original lustre: not a stripe erased or polluted, nor a single star obscured: bearing for its motto, no such miserable interrogatory as, What is all this worth? nor those other words of delusion and folly, Liberty first and union afterward; but everywhere, spread all over in characters of living light, blazing on all its ample folds as they float over the sea and over the land, and in every wind under the whole heavens, that other sentiment, dear to every true American heart, Liberty and union, now and forever, one and inseparable!

The first three of these examples are respectively combinations of close and single compact sentence.

The fourth is a combination of a close and double compact.

The fifth is a combination of three single compacts. It is compact as a whole, and has a compact in each of its parts: *if—then*, being the correlative words of the whole; *as—so*, of the first part, and *while—then*, of the second.

The sixth contains two single compacts: one comprising the whole, and the other the second part: the first has the correlative words, *therefore—for*, *because*, and the second, *where—there*.

The seventh contains one compact, third form, third variety, which embraces the whole sentence. Correlative words *though—yet*. The first part of this compact contains another compact, second form: correlative words *so—as*: the second part, another compact, third form, third variety, with the correlatives *when—then*.

The eighth contains two single compacts: correlatives *so—as*, *then—if*: Why do you *so* repeat my words, *as then* you would, *if* you, &c. &c.

The last, a noble sentence, is singularly interlaced and complicated. It opens with the first part of a single compact, the second part of which begins the first of a double compact with the first and third proposition expressed: the last beginning at the exclamation and continuing with an imperfect loose construction until the word *motto* is reached; when another double compact with the first and third proposition expressed, is commenced to terminate only with the close. Let these examples suffice to show the nature of the mixed sentence. The punctuation conforms to the nature of the sentences combined.

II. A CIRCUMSTANCE is a part of a simple or compound sentence, required by the sense, but not essential to the grammatical construction.

It may be a word, clause or sentence: if a sentence, almost any of the species or varieties enumerated in the preceding classification.

It may stand at the beginning, in the middle, (by which I mean anywhere between the first and last word,) or at the end of a simple, or part of a compound sentence. At the beginning it should be followed, in the middle, preceded and followed, and at the end, preceded by a comma: at the end of the first part of a compact, it should have the comma after it: at the end of any part of a loose sentence except the last, it should be followed by the semicolon or colon: at the end of a simple, or of the last part of a compound sentence, it terminates of course with the period.

1. *Examples at the beginning.*

Thus, the Puritan was made up of two different men.

Soon, we hear they have filled Jerusalem with their doctrine.

In these respects, our poetry is more true to nature, and more conformable to just taste.

On the other side, there are those who have no love for polished perfection of style: for sustained and unimpassioned accuracy: for persuasive but equable diction.

Instead of catching occasional glimpses of the Deity through an obscuring veil, they aspired to gaze full on the intolerable brightness, and to commune with him face to face.

In the midst of all this peace, this innocence, and this tranquillity, this feast of the mind, this pure banquet of the heart, the destroyer comes.

2. *Examples in the middle.*

There is, therefore, now, no condemnation to them that are in Christ Jesus.

Whether, in any country, a choice altogether unexceptionable has been made, seems doubtful.

I have, with a good deal of attention, considered the subject on which I was desired to communicate my thoughts.

The combatants encountered with such rage that, eager to assail, and thoughtless of defence, they fell dead upon the field together.

Far be it from me, cried Demetrius, to lay so heavy a charge upon him.

There are some remembrances, said Harley, which rise involuntarily on my heart and make me almost wish to live.

A wife, who is said to be lovely even beyond her sex, and graced

with every accomplishment that can render it irresistible, had blessed him with her love.

God, who, at sundry times and in divers manners, spake, in times past, unto the fathers by the prophets, hath, in these last days, spoken unto us by his Son.

Why are the statues of the most celebrated modern sculptors, notwithstanding the perfection to which the arts have been carried, so much inferior to those of the ancients?

Will the condign punishment of their countrymen, not for disturbing the public peace, or the violation of property, but for a well-meant endeavor to diffuse the principles of piety and the blessings of religion, augment their reverence for the laws?

3. *Examples at the end.*

He has forfeited my esteem and attachment, answered Demetrius. And has he also forfeited the esteem and attachment of the rest of mankind? continued Socrates.

Acquaint me with those means, answered Demetrius; for I am a stranger to them.—No, answered Demetrius: I would repeat no grievances.

Hug not this delusion to your breast, I pray you.

No woman is capable of being beautiful, who is not incapable of being false.

I cannot tell how to account for it, but these people have usually the preference to our own fools, in the opinion of the sillier part of womankind.

I never travelled in my life, but I do not know whether I could have spoken of any foreign country with more familiarity than I do at present, in company who are strangers to me.

III. A PARENTHESIS is a sentence, or a part of a sentence, unnecessary both to the construction and sense of the sentence or paragraph in which it is inserted; and it is inserted either in another sentence, after a part making imperfect or perfect sense, or between two sentences.

The proper pauses are usually associated with the parenthetic marks; but when the parenthesis is very short, and especially when inserted, as it sometimes is, between the parts of a sentence which should not receive a pause if the parenthesis were not inserted, they are omitted.

The rule for the punctuation of a parenthesis is very short and simple: it always requires after it the pause, or the representative of the pause, which properly precedes it. The only exception to this rule occurs when the parenthesis concludes a sentence. Then, whatever the pause before it, the period, of course, must follow it.

The rule is sometimes transgressed, but with manifest impropriety; for any pause longer than a comma before and after the parenthesis, when inserted between parts of a sentence making imperfect sense, would destroy the connection. On the other hand, any pause, when the parenthesis is inserted between parts making perfect sense, shorter than the semicolon or colon, would make the connection closer than it really is. The application of the rule, when the parenthesis stands between two independent sentences, is too obvious to need remark.

EXAMPLES OF THE PARENTHESIS.

1. *With the pauses necessarily omitted.*

Godwin will punctually go again (Wednesday is Johnson's open day) yesterday four weeks next.

B. is coming to town on Monday (if no kind angel intervene) to surrender himself to prison.

Calling in accidentally on the Professor while he was out, I was ushered into the study; and my nose quickly (most sagacious always) pointed me to four tokens lying loose upon the table, which indicated thy violent and satanical pride of heart.

In particular, inquire at Florence for his colossal bronze statue (in the grand square, or somewhere) of Perseus.

My tragedy will be a medley (I intend it to be a medley) of laughter and tears, prose and verse, and in some places, rhyme, songs, wit, pathos, humor, and, if possible, sublimity.

Are you still (I fear you are) far from being comfortably settled?

It will be observed, that in these examples the parenthesis is inserted between parts not merely making imperfect sense, but parts that should not be separated, and are not, by the shortest pause, in the absence of the parenthesis.

2. *With the pauses omitted, but not necessarily.*

I write rather what answers to my feelings (which are sometimes sharp enough) than express my present ones.

I therefore walked back, and repassed her with such a look (for I could bring myself to nothing more) as might induce her to speak.

If no public regulation can be contrived for that purpose (though I cannot help thinking this disease of the great people meets the attention of government, as much as the distemper among the horned cattle) try, at least, the effects of private admonition, to prevent the sound from approaching the infected.

I know a merry fellow (you partly know him) who, when his medical adviser told him he had drunk away all that part, congratulated himself (now his liver was gone) that he should be the longest liver of the two.

3. *With the pauses properly inserted.*

We hold, you know, (and rightly too,) that all government is, or ought to be, made and managed for the benefit of the people.

And there will I nourish thee, (for yet there are five years of famine, lest thou, and thy household, and all that thou hast, come to poverty.

Know ye not, brethren, (for I speak to them that know the law,) how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth?

Should liberty continue to be abused in this country, as it has been for some time past, (and though demagogues may not admit, yet observing and sensible men will not deny that it has been,) the people will seek relief in a despotism, or in emigration.

The power of such characters in nature, says Mr. Whately, (from whom I am happy to borrow the following observations, not only from the beauty of their expression, but from their singular coincidence in the illustration of the fact I have been endeavoring to establish,) the power of such characters is not confined to the ideas which the objects themselves immediately suggest.

Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised;) and let us consider one another to provoke one another to love and good works.

Then went the Captain with the officers, and brought them without violence; (for they feared the people, lest they should have been stoned;) and when they had brought them, they set them before the council.

I will therefore chastise him, and release him. (For of necessity, he must release one unto them at the feast.) And they cried out all at once, saying, Away with this man, and release unto us Barabbas; (who for a certain sedition made in the city, and for murder, was cast into prison.)

While they wish to please, (and why should they not wish it?) they disdain dishonorable means.

Let the bishop be one that ruleth well his own house: having his children in subjection with all gravity: (for if a man know not how to rule his own house, how shall he take care of the church of God?) not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride he fall into the condemnation of the devil.

The little room (was it not a little one?) at the Salutation was already in the way of becoming a fading idea.

I am so ill just at present, (an illness of my own procuring last night: who is perfect?) that nothing but your very great kindness could make me write.

It was represented by an analogy, (oh, how inadequate!) which was borrowed from the religion of paganism.

She managed this matter so well, (oh, she was the most artful of women!) that my father's heart was gone, before I suspected it was in danger.

In short, my genius, (which is a short word now-a-days for what-a-great-man-am-I!) was absolutely stifled and overlaid with its own riches.

CHAPTER V.

EMPHASIS.

I SHALL speak of emphasis under two heads: *first*, the nature and different kinds of emphasis, and *secondly*, the effect.

SEC. I. THE NATURE OF EMPHASIS IN GENERAL; OR COMMON EMPHASIS.

1. Every word in a sentence in part declares, and in part implies three propositions: first, an affirmative; second, a negative, denying that affirmative; and third, another affirmative incompatible with the first.

Example.

By the faculty of a lively and picturesque imagination, a man in a dungeon is capable of entertaining himself with scenes and landscapes more beautiful than any that can be found in the whole compass of nature.

The definite article *the*, the second word in this sentence, is used by the author, as all will acknowledge, not only to designate a particular faculty to the exclusion of every other which forms a part of our constitution, but more especially to contradict a possible assertion or supposition, that there is more than one faculty with this particular function: an assertion or supposition which would be expressed, if *a*, *each* or *every* were substituted for *the* in the example.

Such being the case, we have found two of the propositions above enumerated: the first is that which *the* declares: the second is that which *the* contradicts. Somebody says, has said, or may say, By *a*, *each* or *every* faculty of, &c.; but the author, to exclude

this, says, By *the* faculty of, &c. But these two propositions necessarily imply a third; namely, an intermediate denial of the first; for to oppose one assertion to another, is equivalent to asserting, not merely that the one is true, but also that the other is not. Introducing then the intermediate proposition, we obtain the entire series involved in the use of the definite article in the case before us, as follows:

By *a* faculty: not by *a* faculty, but by *the* faculty.

Take another example: the word *faculty* is applied to the imagination by the author, in opposition to theories which would make it a mere modification of some other faculty, or of the intellect in general. It has a furtive reference, therefore, to one or both of these ideas, and excludes them as false. Consequently we have here, as above, three propositions, thus:

By the modification, &c.: not by the modification, &c., but by the faculty.

Proceeding from word to word, in the same manner, to the conclusion of the sentence, we shall find the same number of propositions involved in each: *e. g.*

By the faculty of memory: not of memory, but the imagination.
Of a dull and common-place: not a dull and common-place, but a lively and picturesque.
A man anywhere: not anywhere, but in a dungeon.
As beautiful: not as beautiful, but more beautiful.
Than some: not some, but any.
That have been: not that have been, but that can be.
In a province: not in a province, but in the whole compass of nature, &c. &c. &c. &c. &c.

2. The first of these propositions being that which the second denies, and the third contradicts, I term the relative idea of the series: the second, the negative: the third, the contradictory.

3. Most of the words in a sentence, being employed to convey received ideas, that is, ideas common both to the writer and reader, speaker and hearer, no necessity exists for indicating the exclusion of their relatives, either by for mallyintroducing the series of propositions involved, or by any other means.

This, however, is not true of all: in every sentence, one or more are intended to convey ideas, differing from those entertained by the reader or hearer; or supposed to be different; or different from those of third parties referred to: in a word, they are intended to convey, not merely particular ideas, but particular ideas in opposition to other ideas.

In this case, the exclusion of these other ideas must be shown by the process before neglected; or by some associated and received sign of that process; that is, either by formally introducing the series of propositions in every such instance, or by some other expedient, natural or conventional, which shall infallibly suggest them.

But to introduce the series of propositions in every such instance, would render discourse prolix and wearisome: hence, it is seldom done except in dialogue; where these consequences are shunned, or at least mitigated, by distributing the propositions among the different speakers. In continuous and sustained prose or poetry, the exclusion of the relative ideas is indicated by an unusual pressure of the voice alone, on the negative, or contradictory, or both, as the one, or the other, or both, happen to be expressed: a pressure, always associated with the series when expressed, and therefore the better fitted to suggest the series, when omitted.

4. This pressure of the voice is emphasis, which may therefore be defined, *a significant stress laid on a word to mark the exclusion of its relative idea or ideas, expressed or understood.*

It follows that such a thing as absolute emphasis, that is, emphasis without relation, a kind of emphasis for which Dr. Porter (*see his Analysis of Rhetorical Delivery*) contends at some length, is unknown to the English language. It will be seen that I have appropriated his examples below, (*see No.* 5 *and* 6,) as excellent illustrations of relative emphasis in its most common phase.

5. The series of propositions, involved, as we have seen, in every word of a sentence, and distinctly brought into view by emphasis, is, as I have already implied, often complete. More generally, however, one or two of the propositions are understood. I subjoin a number of examples sufficient to illustrate usage in this respect.

1. *An Example of the whole Series.*

He is the propitiation for our sins [only;] not for ours *only*, but also for the sins of the whole *world*. (*See* 2 *Tim.* iv. 8.)

2. *Of the first and second alone.*

What would content you? *Talent? No. Enterprise? No. Courage? No. Reputation? No. Virtue? No.* The men whom you would select, should possess, not *one*, but *all* of these.

Talent, enterprise, courage, reputation, virtue, are respectively the relative ideas of each succeeding *no*, or negative proposition, and a common contradictory understood; the exact nature of which may be inferred from the conclusion of the sentence. Converting then the interrogative into declarative sentences, expanding *no* into

its equivalent, and supplying the contradictory, we have the series of propositions as follows:

Talent would content you: not talent alone, but something more.

Enterprise would content you: not enterprise alone, but something more.

Courage would content you: not courage alone, but something more.

Reputation would content you: not reputation alone, but something more.

Virtue would content you: not virtue alone, but something more. The men whom you would select, should possess, not *one*, but *all* of these.

Or, if it please, thus:

Talent? No, but something more. Enterprise? No, but something more. Courage? No, but something more. Reputation? No, but something more. Virtue? No, but something more. The men whom you would, &c.

3. *Of the first and third alone.*

Pilate therefore willing to *release* Jesus, spake again to them. But they cried, saying, *Crucify* him: *crucify* him.

Pet. Good Lord, how bright and goodly shines the moon!
Kath. The moon! the *sun:* it is not moonlight now.
Pet. I say it is the *moon* that shines so bright.
Kath. I know it is the *sun* that shines so bright.

In both of these examples, the negative proposition is understood, and, to complete the series, must be supplied: if supplied, the series in the first will run thus:

Pilate was willing to *release* Jesus: do not *release*, but *crucify* him.

In the second, thus:

It is the *moon:* it is not the *moon;* it is the *sun.*
It is the *sun:* it is not the *sun;* it is the *moon.*

I wish the student to observe here the distribution of the propositions among different speakers in dialogue as hinted above.

4. *Of the second alone.*

Are you desirous that your talents and abilities may procure you esteem? Display them not *ostentatiously* to view.

The pleasures of the imagination are not so *gross* as those of sense, nor so *refined* as those of the understanding.

The relatives and contradictories, involved in these negatives,

being supplied, the series in the two examples would be the following:

Display them ostentatiously to view: display them not ostentatiously to view, but unostentatiously.

The pleasures of the imagination are as gross as those of sense: the pleasures of the imagination are not so gross as those of sense, but more refined.

The pleasures of the imagination are as refined as those of the understanding: they are not so refined as those of the understanding, but more gross.

5. *Of the second and third alone.*

The fault, dear Brutus, is not in our *stars*,
But in *ourselves*, that we are underlings.

It is not the business of virtue to *extirpate* the affections of the mind, but to *regulate* them.

Cæsar generously replied that he came into Italy, not to *injure* the liberties of Rome and its citizens, but to *restore* them.

When a Persian soldier was reviling Alexander the Great, his officer reprimanded him by saying, Sir, you was paid to *fight* against Alexander, not to *rail* at him.

Resolved into the series thus:

In our stars: not in our stars, but in ourselves.
To extirpate: not to extirpate, but to regulate.
To injure: not to injure; to restore.
To rail: not to rail; to fight.

The intelligent student will not fail to observe that this combination of the emphatic series is identical with the double compact, with the first and third part alone expressed.

6. *Of the third alone.*

By the faculty of a lively and picturesque imagination, a man in a *dungeon* is capable of entertaining himself with scenes and landscapes more beautiful than any that can be found in the whole compass of nature.

Up! comrades! up! in Rokeby's halls
Ne'er be it said your courage falls.

Hence! home, you idle creatures, get you home,
Is this a holiday?

The relative and negative of the first example, have already been given on a preceding page. (*See Sec. I*, 1.) Those of the second and third example are as follows:

We will stay, sit or lie here: stay, &c., not, but up! up!
Always be it said: not always, &c., but ne'er.
We will stay here: stay not here, but hence! home! &c.

6. The contradictory often excludes several relative ideas. This will be observed in the following *quasi* dialogue, and the two succeeding examples.

A. Describe an orange.

B. An orange is conical, yellow and juicy.

C. An orange is not *conical*, but *oblong*, yellow and juicy.

D. An orange is neither conical nor oblong, but *round*, yellow and juicy.

Round, the contradictory of *D*, excludes, as the two negatives before it clearly imply, both the relative *conical* in the description of *B*, and the relative *oblong* in that of *C*.

In the examples which follow, the relatives are understood, but the negatives render them obvious.

Rather than man's innocency should want an outward comfort, God will begin a new creation: not out of the *earth*, which was the matter of man; not out of the *inferior creatures*, which were the servants of man; but out of *man himself*.

Not outward *magnificence*, not *state*, not *wealth*, not the favor of the *mighty*, but *God* is the glory of Israel.

II. ANTITHETIC EMPHASIS.

I. Antithetic emphasis is emphasis in contrast with emphasis. It occurs only in the rhetorical figure, antithesis; from which, as well as from the nature of the emphasis itself, I derive the name. It is single, double, treble, quadruple, &c. &c.

1. Antithetic emphasis is single, when only one emphatic word in contrast occurs in each member of the antithesis: *e. g.*

The children of *this* world marry and are given in marriage, but they that shall be accounted worthy to obtain *that* world, neither marry nor are given in marriage.

2. It is double, when two emphatic words in one member of the antithesis, are in contrast with two in the succeeding member or members: *e. g.*

The young are slaves to novelty: the old, to custom.

The first gave two shillings; the second, three; the third, four; the fourth, five; the fifth, six; &c. &c.

3. It is treble, quadruple, &c., when three or more emphatic words occur in the same member of the antithesis in contrast re-

spectively with a corresponding number in the succeeding member or members. It should be observed, that antithesis of this kind seldom occurs; and when it does, on account of the difficulty, if not impossibility of marking such complicated contrasts with the voice, it is practically resolved into the double: I had almost said into the single; for rarely is more than three of the emphatic words, even of the double, distinctly marked as such by the voice; though in theory all of them are equally emphatic. But this effect, which is much like that of deferred emphasis, (*see Deferred Emphasis below,*) is strikingly obvious in the treble now under consideration; as the following examples, which I adduce from Walker, will show.

He raised a mortal to the skies;
She drew an angel down.

She in her girls again is courted;
I go a wooing with my boys.

The following example of the double, however, will prove that this effect is not confined to the treble.

A good man loves *himself* too well to *lose* an estate by gaming, and his *neighbor* too well to *win* one.

There are here four words in both members of the antithesis, which in theory are equally emphatic; yet three of them only, namely, *himself*, *neighbor*, and *win*, can, with propriety, be marked emphatically by the voice.

II. It is a peculiarity of antithetic emphasis, that each of the contrasted words has all the others for its relatives: *e. g.*

The children of *this* world marry and are given in marriage, but they who shall be accounted worthy of *that* world, neither marry nor are given in marriage.

Giving the series of propositions involved in each of these words, they will be as follows:

The children of *that* world marry and are given in marriage: not the children of *that* world, but the children of *this* world.

They who shall be accounted worthy of *that* world: not of *that*, but *this*.

Again:

The *young* are slaves to *novelty*: the *old* to *custom*.

Giving the series involved in each of these emphatic words, we shall have the following:

The old are slaves to novelty: not the old, but the young.
The young are slaves to custom: not the young, but the old.

Or the following:

The young are slaves to custom: not to custom, but to novelty.
The old are slaves to novelty: not to novelty, but to custom.

The same principle holds good, I believe, whatever the number of members of which the antithesis may consist: *e. g.*

The *young* are slaves to *novelty:* the *old*, to *custom:* the *middle-aged*, to *both:* the *dead*, to *neither*.

The following is the series of the first emphatic word in each member:

The old, middle-aged and dead are slaves to novelty: not the old, &c., but the young.

The young, the middle-aged and dead are slaves to custom: not the young, &c., but the old.

The young, old and dead are slaves to both: not the young, &c., but the middle-aged.

The young, old and middle-aged are slaves to neither: not the young, &c., but the dead.

An exception to this mutual or reciprocal relation occurs in an antithesis formed on negative propositions: *e. g.*

The pleasures of the imagination are not so *gross* as those of sense, nor so *refined* as those of the understanding.

If the student will turn to I, 5, 4, above, he will perceive that the two series, when produced, are entirely distinct; and consequently that the emphatic words are not mutually relative; for *gross* and *refined* relate, not to each other, but to *gross* and *refined* understood. Though antithetic in position, the example therefore must be regarded as a case of common emphasis.

III. DEFERRED EMPHASIS.

When two or more adverbs, adjectives, nouns, or verbs, immediately connected by copulative conjunctions expressed or understood, are in theory equally emphatic, the emphatic stress is laid on the last of the series only; that is to say, the emphasis is deferred.

To deliver them all with the same pressure of the voice, would cause at the same time harshness and monotony.

1. *Adverbs.*

When or *where* I saw it, I am unable, at the present moment, to say.

2. *Adjectives.*

True charity is not a meteor which occasionally glares, but a luminary which, in its orderly and *regular* course, dispenses a benignant influence.

In this respect its meaning, like that of words, is arbitrary, local and *mutable*.

Next to want of skill in selection, is the fault of an undiscriminating, *inanimate* manner of reading.

Its tidings, whether of peace or wo, are the same to the poor, the ignorant, and the *weak*, as to the rich, the wise, and the *powerful*.

3. *Nouns.*

It was a charge of which there was not only no proof or *probability*, but which was, in itself, wholly impossible to be true.

A man who cherishes a strong ambition for preferment, if he does not fall into adulation and *servility*, is in danger of losing all manly independence.

It is reasonable to suppose that affections, and intellectual habits, such as benevolence or *malignity*, cheerfulness or *melancholy*, deep thought or *frivolity*, must impress themselves upon the face.

4. *Verbs.*

If you had protested or *rebelled*, you might now have been safe.

Little minds are tamed and *subdued* by misfortunes; but great minds rise above them.

IV. CONVENTIONAL EMPHASIS.

By conventional emphasis, I mean emphasis established in particular instances by general consent, though improperly placed.

Among examples of this, may be enumerated the usual formula of continuation, *and so forth*, or simply, *&c.;* which is always delivered with emphasis on *so*, when *forth* is really the emphatic word.

To this head, we must also refer such phrases as, *from day to day, from week to week, from year to year, from month to month, from house to house, from hand to hand, from heart to heart, from time to time*, &c. &c. Custom uniformly places the emphasis in such phrases, on the nouns; when propriety manifestly requires it to be placed on the prepositions: as in Ps. xc. 2: Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, *from* everlasting *to* everlasting, thou art God.

SEC. II. THE VOCAL EFFECT OF EMPHASIS

I. The peculiar effect of emphasis is to raise the voice, by means of an upper sweep, above the level of the sentence, to cause its descent with unusual force upon the emphatic word, if a word of one syllable, or upon its primary accent, if a word of two or more syllables, and thence by means of a lower sweep, to carry it below the level of the sentence, and back again to it or above it. (*See Plate, Fig.* 2, *e. f.*)

In the examples which follow, other words are emphatic besides those which are marked as such. Those are marked which are intended for present illustration; to these the attention of the student is exclusively desired.

Examples of this effect.

The Americans may become faithful *friends* of the English, but subjects, never.

The good man loves *himself* too well to lose an estate by gaming, and his *neighbor* too well to win one.

No! I'm *surprised* at that;
Where *I* come from, it is the common chat.

Matches and overmatches! Those terms are more applicable *elsewhere* than here, and fitter for *other* assemblies than this.

You have *invited* me, and I have very willingly *accepted* your invitation, to address you on this anniversary occasion.

If he find himself *pleased* with the associations, and prepared to be quite satisfied, though the parallel should be entirely completed, I had almost said, I am satisfied also; but that I shall think of.

Yet the echo and report of the blows by which *other* countries have fallen, are supposed to have more effect on us than the blows *themselves* produced upon the miserable victims who sunk beneath them.

When I took occasion, Mr. President, two days ago, to throw out some ideas with respect to the policy of the government in relation to the public lands, nothing certainly could have been *further* from my thoughts, than that I should be compelled again to throw myself upon the indulgence of the senate.

II. The upper sweep is developed on so much of the sentence, as lies between the primary accent of the emphatic word, and the first pause either of perfect or imperfect sense preceding it; and the lower sweep on so much of the sentence, as lies between the primary accent of the emphatic word, and the first pause of imperfect sense succeeding it.

Here it is of the utmost importance to have in mind the various cases in which the comma is suppressed: in other words, the circumstances in which the shortest pause may be made, though the comma is not inserted; for in all these cases, the effect on emphasis is precisely the same, whether the comma is inserted or not: the development of the sweeps is arrested and limited to the division of sense to which the emphatic word belongs.

The rule above given applies exclusively to declarative or declarative exclamatory sentences.

Examples.

If the student will turn to the examples under the preceding head, he will find as much illustration as he needs, of the effect of emphasis in a central position. I shall limit my quotations here to the purpose of showing how the sweeps are affected by approximation of the emphatic word, or its primary accent, to the pause before and after it.

Other misfortunes may be borne, or their effects overcome.

Equinoctial storms occur in the spring and fall; they are distinguished both for length and severity.

There is a *natural* difference between merit and demerit.

Though he will not rise and give him because he is his *friend*, yet because of his *importunity*, he will rise and give him as many as he needeth.

These ages have no *memory*, but they left
Their traces in the desert.

For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend *themselves*, for they, measuring themselves *by* themselves and comparing themselves *among* themselves, are not wise.

I might multiply examples to any extent, but I presume the preceding are sufficient to show that the upper sweep diminishes with the approximation of the emphatic word to the pause before it, until, being the first word after the pause and having primary accent on its first syllable, the upper sweep is cut off, and the voice descends directly from a higher point than the level of the sentence upon it: (*see Plate, Fig.* 2, *b* :) to show also that with the approximation of the emphatic word to the pause of imperfect sense after it, the lower sweep diminishes, until it is formed on the last word and the very last syllable of that word, if having the primary accent. (*See Plate, Fig.* 2, *c.*)

Exception to the Rule. I. When emphasis is placed upon the last, or nearly the last word of a division of imperfect sense, followed by a short circumstance, the lower sweep is often developed on this circumstance, notwithstanding the pause.

Examples.

But *youth*, sir, is not my only crime.

We may be *assured*, gentlemen, that he who really loves the thing itself, loves its finest exhibitions.

The pillage and bloody devastation of Italy strike us with horror; but *Italy*, we are to believe, is contented with what has befallen her.

Oh, cease not yet to beat, thou vital urn!
Wait, gushing life, oh, wait my love's return.

There *be*, perhaps, who barren hearts avow,
Cold as the rocks on Torneo's hoary brow.

Real war, my friends, is a very different thing from that painted image of it, which we see on a parade, or at a review.

Exception II. Frequently when emphasis falls on a word in the first part, or member of the first part of a single or double compact, the upper and lower sweep are developed on the whole of that part or member, notwithstanding subdivisions, marked by the comma. (*See* 1*st sentence under improper use of period: Punctuation.*)

III. Though legitimately falling under the preceding rule, it deserves distinct notice, that when an emphatic word is immediately preceded and followed by the pause, (preceded by the pause either of perfect or imperfect sense, and followed by the pause of imper-

fect sense,) the emphasis is exhausted upon that word, though a word of one syllable, and forms the shortest possible development of the sweeps; viz., the circumflex. (*See Plate, Fig.* 1.)

Examples.

Necessity is the mother of invention.

Delicacy leans more to feeling: *correctness* more to reason and judgment.

War is the law of violence: *peace* the law of love.

The pause after the emphatic words in each of these examples, is produced by the emphasis. (*See Punctuation, Comma: Cases of Omission* 1, *Note.*)

Nothing certainly could have been further from my thoughts, than that I should be compelled *again* to throw myself on the indulgence of the senate.

Still, it may be well for some proud men to remember that a fire is lighted in these colonies, which one breath of their king may kindle into such fury, that the blood of all England cannot extinguish it.

No doubt the sheep he meant to steal;
But, *hapless,* close behind his heel,
Was ploughman Joe;
Who just arrived in time to stop
The murderous blow.

IV. When emphasis, and partial or perfect close, meet on the same word, they coincide. Occasionally the emphasis makes the close proceed from a higher pitch of voice, and descend with greater force, than usual.

Examples.

Nor is he willing to stop *there.*

The Americans may become faithful friends of the English, but subjects, *never.*

Whose is this image and superscription? They say unto him, *Cæsar's.*

And when the chief priests and Pharisees had heard his parables, they perceived that he spake of *them.*

Delicacy leans more to *feel`ing:* correctness more to reason and *judgment.* The former is the gift of *na`ture:* the latter more the product of culture and *art.*

These things I say now, not to insult one who is fallen, but to render more secure those who *stand`:* not to irritate the hearts of the wounded, but to preserve those who are not yet wounded, in sound *health`:* not to submerge him who is tossed on the billows, but to instruct those who are sailing before a propitious *breeze.*

It is the sacrament of our *na\ture:* not only the duty, but the indulgence of man. It is his first great *privilege.* It is among his last, most endearing delights, when the bosom glows with the idea of reverberated *love\:* when to requite on the visitations of nature, and return the blessings that have been received, what was emotion, is fixed into vital *prin\ciple ;* what was instinct, is habituated into a master-*pas\sion,* sways all the sweetest energies of *man*, hangs over each vicissitude of all that must pass *away*, aids the melancholy virtues in their last sad task of *life'*, cheers the languor of decrepitude and *age*, explores the *thought*, explains the aching *eye!*

V. When emphasis is placed on a word preceding partial or perfect close, in the same division of sense, the lower sweep is converted into the falling slide to the close: unless followed by another emphasis coinciding with partial or perfect close according to Rule IV. above. An example of this will be found in Ch. VII. Sec. 1, sentence 9, "*Judicious grieve.*" (*See Plate, Fig.* 2, *d.*)

This effect may be traced to the want of room for the development of the sweep before the influence of the close is felt.

Examples.

Force decided *all* things.

If the gentleman provoke the war, he shall *have* war.

The gentleman, sir, in declining to postpone the debate, told the senate, with the emphasis of his hand upon his heart, that there was something rankling here, which he wished to relieve. But the gentleman disclaims having *used* the word rankling. It would not be safe, Mr. President, for the honorable member to appeal to those around him, upon the question, whether he did, in fact, make use of that word, but he may have been *unconscious* of it. But still, with or without the use of that particular word, he had yet something here, he said, of which he wished to rid himself by an immediate reply. In this respect, sir, I have a great *advantage* over the honorable gentleman.

The value of the graphic art consists in its being a medium for the acquisition of knowledge, and for the *communication* of it.

Art may diminish, but cannot *remove* the difficulty.

VI. When emphasis in any part of a sentence is unusually strong, as in an earnest assertion, in an energetic and pointed denial, in a stern command, in an imprecation, or in a direct contradiction ; it is followed by the falling slide to the close partial or perfect, as the case may be. (*See ibid.*)

The reason of this is obvious: the force of the emphasis is overpowering: it carries every thing before it.

Examples.

Then, *patriotism* is eloquent: then, *self-devotion* is eloquent. The clear conception, outrunning the deductions of logic, the high purpose, the firm resolve, the dauntless spirit, speaking on the tongue, beaming from the eye, informing every feature, and urging the whole man onward, right onward to his object,—*this, this* is eloquence; or rather, it is something greater and higher than *all* eloquence: it is action; noble, sublime, *godlike* action.

And he began to curse and to swear: saying, I know *not* this man of whom ye speak.

It is not *true* that he played the traitor to his country in the hour of her trial.

Go to your natural religion.
Answer me to what I ask you.

Infected be the air whereon they ride!
Accursed be the tongue that tells me so!

Pet. How bright and goodly shines the moon!
Kath. The moon! the *sun*: it is not moonlight now.
Pet. I say it is the *moon* that shines so bright.
Kath. I know it is the *sun* that shines so bright.

VII. When emphasis is placed on any word in a definite interrogative, the only effect caused, is a dip or indentation in the general direction of voice, or rising slide. (*See Plate, Fig.* 6. *a. b. c. d.*)

Examples.

Were there not *ten* cleansed?
Will *ye* also go away?
Believe ye that I am *able* to do this?
Is Christ *divided?* was Paul *crucified* for you? or were ye baptized in the *name* of Paul?
If his son ask bread, will he give him a *stone?* or if he ask a fish, will he give him a *serpent?*
Are ye able to drink the cup that *I* drink of? and to be baptized with the baptism that *I* am baptized with?
Has a wise and good God furnished us with desires which have no corresponding *objects*, and raised expectations in our breasts, with no other view but to *disappoint* them?

VIII. When emphasis is placed on any word in an indefinite interrogative, it is preceded either by the upper emphatic sweep, or simply by accentual sweeps, and followed by the falling slide to

partial or perfect close; unless arrested by another emphatic word; in which case the voice recovers from the slide to repeat the previous process. (*Plate, Fig.* 7.)

Examples.

What think ye of *Christ*? whose son is he?
Who is *this*?
Whom do men say that I, the Son of man, am?
Who *touched* me?
Why *tempt* ye me?
Why, what *evil* hath he done?
What will ye then that I shall do unto him whom ye call the king of the *Jews*?
By what *authority* doest thou these things; or who *gave* thee this authority?
Why could not *we* cast him out?
When saw we thee an hungered, or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto thee?
Who could witness, without indignant desperation, the mother who bore him, inhumanly murdered in the defence of her infants?
Where is the youth in this assembly, who could, without agonized emotions, behold the Gallic invader hurling the brand of devastation into the dwelling of his *father*, or with sacrilegious cupidity plundering the communion-table of his *God*?

IX. Emphasis in indirect interrogations is preceded by the upper and followed by the lower sweep: producing the waving slide of this species of question. (*See Plate, Fig.* 2, *e. f.*)

Examples.

Your father gave you *permission* to go there yesterday?
You *saw* him after the event occurred?
You will ride to town to-day?
You *will* ride to town to-day?
You will *ride* to town to-day?
You will ride to *town* to-day?
You will ride to town to-*day*?

X. The effect of emphasis on the first part of a double interrogative is the same as that on definite interrogatives; and on the second part, it is the same as that on indefinite interrogatives, except that the upper emphatic sweep is scarcely ever developed. The strong tendency to slide down is almost too strong even for accentual sweeps. (*See Plate, Fig.* 6, 7.)

Examples.

Can we *see* God, or must we *believe* in him?
Will you ride to town to-*day*, or to-*morrou*?
Art thou he that should *come*, or do we look for *another*?

CHAPTER VI.

THE BEND, SWEEPS, SLIDES AND CLOSES APPLIED.

The design of the rules which follow, it must be borne in mind, is to prescribe only the peculiar and therefore characteristic delivery of the different species of sentences, enumerated in the Classification. With regard to pitch, force and rate, they are silent; and also with regard to emphasis: to the former, because it is a fundamental assertion in this system of elocution, that whatever the pitch, force or rate, the sentence is delivered, if delivered correctly, in the same manner: to the latter, because emphasis merely modifies the characteristic delivery of a sentence, without changing it; and more especially, because it modifies it in conformity to fixed and invariable rules which have been stated and illustrated with great care in the preceding chapter: rules, showing that its effects depend not at all on the structure of sentences, but with one or two exceptions, upon its position relatively to the pauses. The exceptions referred to, relate to its effects when unusually strong and on the rising and falling slide. (*See Emph. Sec.* 2, *VI, VII, VIII.*)

Such being the scope of the rules which follow, I now add that the consideration of pitch, force, rate and emphasis, is by no means excluded from the exercises under them. On the contrary, there is nothing, comprised in the general subject of modulation, which is not here to be applied. For this purpose the following directions are given, with great confidence in the tendency of a compliance with them to form a correct, varied and graceful delivery.

1. Describe the sentence before you, as simple or compound; declarative, interrogative or exclamatory; close, compact or loose, &c.: continually defining what you mean by simple, by compound, &c. &c.

2. State the proper punctuation; and why proper, with allowable deviations; and in what circumstances allowable.

3. Give its characteristic delivery under the rule.

4. Deliver it at every variety of pitch; finally at the true or medium pitch: with every variety of force; finally with the proper degree: with every variety of rate; finally with the proper rate.

5. Show what would be the effect of emphasis on each of the words in succession, or some of the most important of them; and the reason why; and finally point out the true emphatic word, and describe the effect of emphasis on it.

6. Now deliver the sentence, as modified by emphasis.

In obeying the last of these directions, the student should be careful to give as full a development of the emphatic sweeps, as the nature of the case will allow. No harm will be done, if even they are a little exaggerated; that is, if their curves are expanded somewhat beyond the actual demands of the sense. They break up, and break up effectually, habits of monotony: they give compass and variety to intonation; flexibility and power to the voice.

SEC. I. SIMPLE SENTENCES.

CLASS I. SIMPLE DECLARATIVE SENTENCES.

RULE I. Simple declarative sentences are delivered with accentual sweeps, the bend, if necessary, at intermediate pauses, and perfect close.

Accentual sweeps, it will be remembered, are those slight undulations produced in the tenor of speech by articulatory accents: the bend, a slight upward turn of the voice: perfect close, a fall of the voice at the end of a sentence to the key, or below it. (*See Modulation*, ch. iii.) For the effects of emphasis, *see Emphasis, ch. v. sect. ii.*

Simple sentences seldom have intermediate pauses, and when they do, the bend is not always associated with them: a bare suspension of the voice being all that is necessary to mark the division of sense. (*See Plate, Fig.* 8, *a. b.*)

Examples for exercise.

Jesus wept. Rejoice evermore. Birds fly. Remember Lot's wife. It was the general. All were hushed. Pray without ceasing. It is not ten years ago. The national independence had been won. Let love be without dissimulation. Be of the same mind one toward another. Let every one be subject to the higher powers. Let every one please his neighbor for his good to edification. Ye are the light of the world. I was never there in my life. I have told you the truth. I heard their drowning cry, mingling with the wind. He was distinguished by modesty. That garment is not well made. Be not forward in the presence of your superiors.

He left his father's house for the halls of the academy. We were up before daylight to enjoy the magnificent spectacle of the rising sun. His great qualities were attended by a due sense of

his own imperfections. Then shall the innumerable varieties of the human race worship in her glorious temple. It shall turn to you for a testimony. Ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake. He makes a vow to forsake the world. Thus have ye made the commandment of God of none effect by your tradition. I received a letter in time to reply before the departure of the mail last Saturday morning. Accept the patriotic farewell of an overflowing heart. The universe might be poised on a drop of water kept in a compact state.

Now did Micah begin to see some little glimpses of his own error. This occasioned his being hissed by the whole audience. His wit was of the first order. The stores of his mind were inexhaustible. The army is loaded with the spoil of many nations. Let no one detract from the influence of woman. Now the God of peace be with you all. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you. And every man went to his own house. Thou art the Son of God. Now his parents went every year to Jerusalem at the feast of the passover. Their claim possesses a peculiar title to our consideration. The contest becomes, at last, a scene of unmitigated anguish.

Virtue′ is the condition of happiness. Ignorance′ is the mother of error. One ounce of gold′ is worth fifteen ounces of silver. To listen to the voice of reason is always safe. The distinction of his fortune was the consequence of his temerity. The whole course of his life has been distinguished by generous actions. The study of mathematics is an excellent discipline of the mind. Sensitiveness to the approbation of virtuous men, is laudable.

Of neither of these persuasives′ have the effects been great. At the bottom of the garden′ ran a little rivulet. With his conduct last evening′ I was not pleased. That interesting history′ he did not read. To the perusal of the authors of the second class I shall now proceed. To the ancients fire-arms were unknown. That he is a great man you cannot deny. After a denial of the charge he withdrew in dignified displeasure to his own house. To pray well is the better half of study. Over these matchless talents probity threw her brightest lustre. To the fate of the government is united the fate of the country. But on this part of the subject I need not enlarge. For successive infractions of the law these punishments may be increased up to a certain limit. Of a new truth then flashed on his mind the first gleams.

Another impediment to excellence is versatility. From the nature of Christianity this must be so. Like a spectre in the night, the grandeur of Rome has vanished. Among the most remarkable of its attributes, is justice. To the necessity of endeavoring to reach New York by land, this embarrassing circumstance reduced him.

To her′, many a soldier, on the point of accomplishing his ambition′, sacrifices the opportunity. Vanity, of all the passions, is the most unsocial. I cannot part with you, fellow-citizens, without urging the long remembrance of our present assembly. He ought, therefore, to take the greatest care of the fortune still in his possession. The prayers of David, the son of Jesse, are ended. And very early in the morning, the first day of the week, they came unto the sepulchre at the rising of the sun.

In the autumn of 1783′, the war had closed with glory. The different periods of revolving day seemed each, with cunning magic′, to diffuse a different charm over the scene. The loss of reputation for good management′, is, in this case, to be traced to a little circumstance. Risk not, for a moment, in visionary theories, the solid blessings of your lot. But on this part of the subject, I need not enlarge. The less pleasing task now devolves upon me, of bidding you, in the name of the nation, adieu. The success of one, is the disappointment of multitudes. The surest evidence of Robert Hall's greatness, is the very fact of his celebrity.

You may be assured, gentlemen′, of my continued regard. You live, my friends′, in an extraordinary age. It is too late, now′, to make a fresh distribution of the honors to the worthies of the Revolution. To all, in truth, the same lesson comes. Suddenly, the sound of the signal-gun broke the stillness of the night. We will endeavor to refute, now, his third argument. To a great extent, the same is true of literary pursuits. But every difference of opinion, is not a difference of principle. It is in vain, sir, to extenuate the matter. Besides, sir, we have no election. He may not accept the invitation without the permission of his parents. An orator may often, by this kind of style, gain great admiration, without being near to his proper end.

It has been usual, on occasions like the present′, to give a history of the wrongs endured by our fathers. In the prodigious efforts of a veteran army beneath the dazzling splendor of their array′, there is something revolting to a reflecting mind. Sir, I see no wisdom in making this provision for future changes. Beyond that, I seek not to penetrate the veil.

Nations would do well
To extort their truncheons from the puny hands
Of heroes.
With eye askance
I view the muscular proportioned limb
Transformed to a lean shank.

And still, in memory's twilight bowers,
The spirits of departed hours,

With mellowing tints, portray
The blossoms of life's vernal flowers
Forever fallen away.

Light o'er the woods of dark brown oak,
The west wind wreathed the hovering smoke
From cottage roofs, concealed
Below a rock abruptly broke
In rosy light revealed.

To the rule above given for the delivery of simple declarative sentences, there are apparently many exceptions; but it will be found, on examination, that they are merely apparent, not real. I refer to those sentences which, instead of coming to a perfect declarative close, terminate with the emphatic lower sweep or with the circumflex. These are not simple declarative sentences, nor even, in the main, simple sentences; but simple indirect interrogatives incorrectly punctuated; or the first part of a single compact either incorrectly punctuated orhaving the second part understood; or the first part of a double compact incorrectly punctuated. I subjoin examples of each, that when the student meets with them, he may easily recognise and refer them to their appropriate places in the classification.

Examples.

My dear, you have some pretty beads there. Yes, papa.—
He is not gone. No.

He could go there. But when I asked him to go with me, he refused.—Surely he was guilty of a great breach of propriety.

Aman. He saw her and gave the letter.
Mar. Well.
Aman. And when he got his answer he returned.
Mar. Well.
Aman. And finding no one at home, came to me.
Mar. Well.
Aman. Well, well: what means this well?
Mar. It means, tell me all.

It was not on account of his manners. His morals formed the objection.

I am not the panegyrist of England. I am not dazzled by her riches, nor awed by her power.

The first two of these examples, though they look very much like simple declarative sentences, are obviously indirect questions.

Again, the first part of the next example looks altogether like a simple declarative; when in fact it is the first part of a single compact, of which, *but*, immediately succeeding, begins the second. The two parts should have been separated by the comma. The sentence which follows the dash is a simple indirect interrogative of the third kind.

Well, in the dialogue, three times repeated, is each time the first part of a single compact: the second part is understood. If complete, it would read thus: "Well, indeed, but what then?" Or thus: "He did so far well, indeed, but what did he next?"

The last pair of examples are first parts of double compacts: the first being followed by the third part, and the second being one of a series of the first part. The period, in both cases, incorrectly supplants the semicolon.

CLASS II. SIMPLE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

1. THE DEFINITE INTERROGATIVE.

RULE II. Simple definite interrogative sentences are delivered with the rising slide, ending only with the last word. (*See Plate, Fig.* 3.)

For the effect of emphasis, *see Emph. II.* 7. Pauses have so little influence on this species of sentence, that I have thought it unnecessary to notice them in the rule. Unless the sentence is a long one, they should not have the bend associated with them, but be merely marked by a suspension of the voice.

Examples.

Can you read? Shall we go? Do they sing well? Have they gone into the country? Will you ride to town to-day? Will it not afflict your friends? Did not your submission appease the anger of your offended father? Should not merchants be punctual in paying their debts? Is not forgiveness honorable to any man? Shall we sully a character, rendered illustrious by an uninterrupted career of virtue? Should I not have devoted myself entirely to the service of my country? Would you wish to ruin yourself in public opinion to gratify your resentment? Would it be proper to write to his friends, now absent from home, about this melancholy event? Are you aware of the discreditable reports in circulation about you? May not this disastrous event, my friend, have, after all, a tendency to advance the interests of those, at present, most painfully affected by it? Has any one called on you, this morning, to invite you to the musical entertainment at the Odeon? Could you, with your knowledge of his character, deem him vain enough to aspire to that high degree of honor? Are ye without understanding also? Shall the Turk still pollute the soil sanctified by the brightest genius? Will you not contribute to the release of this people? Will you make no effort for their redemption? Shall they still bend their neck to the cruel yoke for the want of your assistance? Did not even-handed justice, ere long, commend the poisoned chalice to their own lips? And has it come to this? May we fly at the approach of danger?

Is this a dagger lying now before me,
The handle toward my hand?

Can the tuned follower of the sacred nine
Soothe, with his melody, insatiate death?

Can wisdom lend, with all her heavenly power,
The pledge of joy's anticipated hour?

Has nature, in her calm, majestic march,
Faltered with age at last?—Does the bright sun
Grow dim in heaven?

When a circumstance succeeds a simple definite interrogative sentence, and is dependent on it, both are delivered with the same rising slide; or rather, the slide of the interrogation is continued to the end of the circumstance.

Examples.

Am I my brother's keeper? said the unhappy man.

Have you read my Key to the Romans? said Dr. Taylor, of Norwich, to Mr. Newton.

Do you dread death in my company? he cried to the anxious sailors, when the ice on the coast of Holland had almost crushed the boat that was bearing him to the shore.

Exceptions to the rule.

1. When the same simple definite question is repeated, the repetition may adopt the delivery of the indefinite interrogative. (*See Rule III.*)

I say *may* adopt, because, though in most cases, reversing the slide gives variety and increased energy to the delivery, it is not absolutely necessary. This repetition usually takes place in conversational or dramatic pieces; when a question, asked for the first time, has not been distinctly understood; when the reply is not to the point or evasive; or when the question refers to two different objects antithetically opposed. In formal discourses it is employed simply for the sake of greater emphasis. Examples of each are subjoined in the order of enumeration.

Examples.

Is he honest? Is he faithful? *Is he capable?*

Am. Did you see him there?
Karl. Sir?
Am. *Did you see him there?*

Count. Howe'er, I charge thee,
As Heaven shall work in me for thine avail,
To tell me truly.
Hel. Good madam, pardon me!
Count. Do you love my son?
Hel. Your pardon, noble mistress!
Count. *Love you my son?*
Hel. Do not you love him, madam?
Count. Go not about: my love hath in't a bond,
Whereof the world takes note. Come, come, disclose
The state of your affections.

Peters, fearful that his companion might overlook some of the happy hits of the different personages on the stage, soon electrified the audience by exclaiming, without turning his head, in a suppressed

but emphatic voice when particularly pleased, Austin, d'ye hear that? and again after a little while, *Austin, d'ye hear that*?

Has the gentleman done? *Has he completely done*? He was unparliamentary from the beginning to the end of his speech.

Will you deny it? *Will you deny it*? said he, repeating the question in a louder and more emphatic tone.

2. A series of simple definite questions, with or without intermediate answers, may have its last member delivered like an indefinite interrogative. (*See Rule III. and Plate, Fig.* 4.)

I say *may* for the same reason as before. The nature of the series will not always admit of it; but when it will, reversing the slide has a fine effect.

Examples.

Fie, fie on all tired jades, on all mad masters, and all foul ways. Was ever man so beaten? Was ever man so rayed?* *Was ever man so weary*?

Do you know me, sir? Am I Dromio? Am I your man? *Am I myself*?

Is he the God of the Jews only? *Is he not also of the Gentiles*?

Am I not an Apostle? Am I not free? Have I not seen Jesus Christ our Lord? *Are not ye my work in the Lord*?

Have ye not known? Have ye not heard? Hath it not been told you from the beginning? *Have ye not understood from the foundation of the world*?

Are all apostles? Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Are all workers of miracles? Have all the gifts of healing? Do all speak with tongues? *Do all interpret*?

Shy. Three thousand ducats: well.
Bass. Ay, sir, for three months.
Shy. For three months: well.
Bass. For the which, I told you, Antonio shall be bound.
Shy. Antonio shall become bound: well.
Bass. May you stead me? Will you pleasure me? *Shall I know your answer*?

Art thou bound to a wife? Seek not to be loosed. *Art thou loosed from a wife*? Seek not a wife.

The greatest elegance in the delivery of the answers to the questions in most of the examples which occur in the succeeding form, may be secured by treating each (answer) as an indirect interrogative, and delivering each with a waving slide except the last: the last like a simple declarative. (*See Rule IV. Exception.*)

What would content you? Talent? No. Enterprise? No.

* Dirty, bewrayed.

Courage? No. *Virtue*? No. The men whom you would select, should possess, not one, but all of these.

Are they Hebrews? So am I. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they the seed of Abraham? So am I. *Are they the ministers of Christ*? I am more.

I am the king; for so stands the comparison: thou the beggar; for so witnesseth thy lowliness: shall I command thy love? I may. Shall I enforce thy love? I could. *Shall I entreat thy love*? I will.

Oh how hast thou with jealousy infected
The sweetness of affiance! Show men dutiful?
Why so didst thou. Or seem they grave and learned?
Why so didst thou. Come they of noble family?
Why so didst thou. *Seem they religious*?
Why so didst thou.

Are you ignorant of many things? The Gospel offers you instruction. Have you deviated from the path of duty? The Gospel offers you forgiveness. Do temptations surround you? The Gospel offers you the aid of heaven. Are you exposed to misery? It consoles you. *Are you subject to death*? It offers you immortality.

Do you plead the unavoidable consequences of illustrious descent? You know some who, with a name still more distinguished than your own, impart sanctity to splendor. Do you plead the vivacity of your years? Every day will show you some who, in the bloom of youth, and with all the talents suited to this world, have their minds supremely bent on heaven. Is it the distraction of business? You may see those engaged in the same cares with yourself, who, notwithstanding, make salvation their principal concern. Is pleasure your delight? Pleasure is the first desire of all men, and of the righteous; in some of whom it is even stronger, and whose natural dispositions are less favorable to virtue, than your own. Do you plead your afflictions? There are some good men distressed. Or prosperity? There are those to be met with, who, amid their abundance, devote themselves to God. *Or the state of your health*? You discover some who, in sickly bodies, possess souls filled with divine fortitude.

Leonato, stand I here?
Is this the prince? Is this the prince's brother?
Is this face Hero's? *Are our eyes our own*?

Art thou ambitious? Why then make the worm
Thine equal? Runs thy taste of pleasure high?

Why patronize sure death of every joy ?
Charm Riches ? Why choose beggary in the grave,
Of every hope a bankrupt and forever ?

2. THE INDEFINITE INTERROGATIVE.

RULE III. Simple indefinite interrogative sentences are delivered with accentual sweeps, or the upper emphatic sweep, to the emphatic word, and the falling slide from it to the close. (*See Plate, Fig. 7, a. b. c. d.*)

If the question is not very energetic, accentual sweeps should precede the emphasis: on the contrary, if the question has energy, and especially, if it has unusual energy the emphatic sweep should precede. With the former the voice will proceed, of course, nearly on a level to the emphasis: with the latter move upward to it; and the higher it ascends to reach the emphatic word and begin the falling slide, the more earnest and energetic will the question be.

Examples.

Why ? When ? Where ? Wherefore ? How ? Who ? Which ? What ? Whose ? Whom ? Wherein ? In which ? In whom ? In whose ? In what ? For which ? For whom ? For whose ? For what ? Through which ? By whom ? In relation to what ? In consequence of whose ? With respect to which ? Why so ? Where then ? Where am I ? What will you do ? Who told you that ? Who touched me ? How can he succeed ? Who then can be saved ? In what can I serve you ? Whom will you consult ? To what purpose is this waste ? When will he arrive there ? Which of these pictures do you prefer ? How long will you continue abroad ? What shall be the sign of his coming ? Why are all the works of nature so perfect ? Why, on the contrary, are the works of man so imperfect ? How then can the Scriptures be fulfilled ? Which is the great commandment in the law ? Who can forgive sins but God only ? Why reason ye these things in your hearts ? How then will ye know all parables ? What think ye ? Why doth this man thus speak blasphemies ? What shall we do to inherit eternal life ? Where are you going ? From whence hath this man these things ? Why troublest thou the master any further ? Who hath warned you to flee from the wrath to come ? To what shall I liken the men of this generation ? Where is the promised fruit of all his toils ? Whence can a man satisfy these men with bread here in the wilderness ? In which way shall I extricate myself ? By whom was this extraordinary work of art executed ? Where shall I eat the passover with my disciples ? What were the unpleasant circumstances spoken of ? How is it possible in such a case to be impressed by the solemnity of the divine admonitions ? What foreigner is

sufficiently versed in the English language to discover the excellences of Shakspeare? Why was he displeased with your conduct on the occasion referred to in your interesting letter to me of last Thursday morning? Who is this? How is it to be reconciled to common sense? To whom is it addressed? To what interest does it appeal? What have we in this ode? Wherein lies the difference between these two men?

What are the riches of Mexico's mines
To the riches far down in the deep waters shining?
What terror can confound me,
With God at my right hand?
But who the wonders of his hand can trace
Through the dread ocean of unfathomed space?
Then why to these rude scenes repair,
Of shades the solitary guest?
Where then, ah, where shall poverty reside,
To 'scape the pressure of contiguous pride?
What dost thou mean by shaking of thy head?—
What means that hand upon that breast of thine?—
Why holds thine eye that lamentable rheum,
Like a proud river peering o'er its bounds?
What dotage will not vanity maintain?—
What web too weak to catch a modern brain?
Why weeps the muse of England?—what appears
In England's case, to move the muse to tears?

The interrogative character of what is usually called 'expletive' *why*, has been already alluded to in the Classification; where it was also intimated that it has a twofold delivery. In the examples which I subjoin, it should be delivered in conformity to the rule; but with the shortest possible falling slide: merely, if I may so speak, with a downward intimation.

Why, what evil hath he done?

Charles. And what may that be?

Penn. *Why*, I depend upon themselves, &c. &c.

Penn. What right hast thou to their lands?

Charles. *Why*, the right of discovery, to be sure; &c.

Penn. A kind of strange right, indeed. Now suppose, friend Charles, that some canoe loads of these Indians, crossing the sea and discovering thy island of Great Britain, were to claim it as their own, and set it up for sale over thy head; what wouldst thou think of it?

Charles. *Why,—why,—why,*—I must confess, I should think it a piece of impudence in them.

Hoh. Your patriot care, sir, would redress all wrongs
That spring from harsh restraints of law and justice:

Your virtue prompts you to make war on tyrants
And like another Brutus free your country.

Alas. *Why,* if there were some slanderous tool of state,
Some taunting, dull, unmannered deputy,
Some district despot prompt to play the Tarquin,
By Heaven! I well could act the Roman part,
And strike the brutal tyrant to the earth.

Siv. Here 's rich poverty
Though wrapped in rags: my fifty brave companions,
Who through the force of fifteen thousand foes,
Bore off their king, and saved his great remains.

Gust. *Why,* Captain,
We could but die alone; with these we conquer.

The first of these examples is equivalent to, "Why so?" The next three are respectively equivalent to the question, "Why should you ask?" or "Why ask?" The fourth to, "Why should it be concealed?" or "Why deny it?" and the fifth to, "Why make such a fuss about it, Captain?"

When a circumstance follows an indefinite interrogative, it is delivered with a continuation of the same falling slide; as,

Who was it? said the unhappy man to his friend.

An exception to this occurs, when the interrogative is followed by a compellative. The circumstance is then delivered with the rising slide; to which the bend, with which the compellative terminates, has a decisive tendency; as,

Who was it, William? said the unhappy man to his friend.

The compellative, however, has no influence when the question is one of a very energetic character. (*See Rule below for the delivery of compellative exclamatory sentences: Exception.*)

Exception to the Rule. When a simple indefinite is repeated to obtain a more distinct answer, or when another simple indefinite is put as if to obtain a repetition of a previous remark or question, it is delivered with the rising slide. (*See Plate, Fig.* 3.) Such repetitions only or mainly occur in conversation or dialogue.

Examples.

When will you finish my picture? Next week. *When will you finish my picture?* Next week.

Falstaff. A plague on all cowards, say I.

Prince H. What's the matter?

Fal. What's the matter? Here be four of us have taken a thousand pounds this morning.

Prince H. Where is it, Jack? Where is it?

Fal. Where is it? taken from us, it is.

Dr. W. Hark you, fellow; whom do you live with?

T. O'K. Whom do I live with? Why, with my mistress to be sure.

Dr. W. And pray, sir, how long have you lived with her ladyship?

T. O'K. How long? Ever since the day she hired me.

Bowl. Well, then, away goes old Jack to the hospital.
Capt. What's that you say? &c. &c.

Douglass. Percy: knowest thou that name?
Raby. How? What of Percy?

What is he? *What?* Touchpaper, to be sure.

Why did I do that? Why? Because of wrongs,
Deep, bitter wrongs, which they had done me.

Why, why, I will tell you.

By comparing the last two of these examples, the student may perceive how it is that "expletive" *why* may often have a delivery different from that above under the rule.

3. THE INDIRECT INTERROGATIVE.

RULE IV. The simple indirect interrogative is delivered with the waving slide; that is to say, with the upper sweep to the emphatic word and the lower sweep from it. (*See Plate, Fig.* 2, *e. f.*)

As this slide is the most difficult to execute with ease and grace, no pains should be spared to acquire a perfect command of it. The student should, therefore, be detained by the examples below until every one of them can be delivered at a glance with precision.

It should be remembered that the sweeps are developed relatively to the position of the emphatic word. If it be the first word, and in proportion to its approximation to the first word, the upper sweep is curtailed: if the last, &c., the lower. If the sentence consists of a single word, the slide is reduced to a simple circumflex.

No pains should be spared to acquire the proper delivery of this sentence: not more for the sake of propriety of utterance, than for its connection with emphasis, and its salutary influence on the voice.

1. *Examples of the first kind.*

He? She? It? We? You? They? His? Ours? Theirs? Yours? Both? He went? They fell? So she came? The flock rose on the wing then? You overcame him in the struggle? The company saw it? They were gone on your arrival? Hoped for it? Met them? All were carried off? Without notice all this was done? He did not deny his share in the unhappy transaction? To strike your toe with a tight shoe on, then, rather disturbs your equanimity, my good friend? It was expected of him on that occasion last year? He never recovered, notwithstanding the most skilful medical assistance, from the effects of that fall from his horse last winter?

Orlando. I pray you, mar no more of my verses with reading them ill-favoredly.
Jaq. Rosalind is your love's name?
Orl. Yes, just.
Capt. Give it here, my honest fellow.
Bowl. You will take it?
Capt. To be sure I will.
Bowl. And will smoke it?

Capt. That I will. (*Feeling in his pocket.*)
Bowl. And will not think of giving me any thing in return?
Capt. (*Withdrawing his hand from his pocket.*) No: no: you are right.
And. You live here, sir?
Mark. Yes, sir.
And. You know Mr. Brown, living the other side of the way?
Mark. I do, sir.
And. He is at home now?
Mark. No; he left yesterday for Bath.
And. He did not take Emily with him?
Mark. No.
And. She is at home, then?
Mark. Before I answer any more of your questions, sir, I should like to know who you are.

Exceptions. The last member of a series of simple indirect interrogatives, requires the delivery of a simple declarative sentence.

In some cases I am inclined to believe all the members after the first may be delivered thus with propriety.

Examples.

My dear, you have some pretty beads there? Yes, papa. And you seem to be vastly pleased with them? Yes, papa.

Dr. You are not a glutton, sir?
Pat. God forbid! sir: I'm one of the plainest men living in the west.
Dr. Then, perhaps, you are a drunkard?
Dr. You take a little pudding, then?
Pat. Yes.
Dr. And afterwards some cheese?
Pat. Yes.
Dr. You west-country people generally take a glass of Highland whiskey after dinner?
Pat. Yes, we do.

2. *Examples of the second kind.*

Dear Queen, give me that hand of yours to kiss? Grant me permission to go there this once? Mother, let me stay with you at home to-day? Forgive me for trespassing upon you? Tell me the way to the city? Jesus, Master, have mercy on us? Give us this day our daily bread?

Note. This kind of indirect, as well as that which follows, is very unusual in books; though the latter is more frequently found than the former; but both occur; and the few examples given will enable the student to understand their nature. In conversation, they occur perhaps as often as any other.

3. *Examples of the third kind.*

Surely you are mistaken in that supposition ? Surely the Lord is in this place ? They will surely reverence my son ? Certainly he, at least, complained of such conduct ? He undoubtedly entered a protest against their measures ? You surely cannot be ignorant of the consequences ? Unquestionably it was a hard case ? Truly this was the Son of God ? Surely thou wilt slay the wicked ?

The definite interrogative often follows the indirect in colloquial pieces and in conversation; as,

You will go there ? will you not ?
He was not intoxicated at the time ? was he ?

When this is the case, the definite interrogative sometimes requires the falling slide; or the delivery of Rule III; as,

You didn't do it ? did you ?
She does not know every thing ? does she ?

This delivery is explained by the supposition that the indirect is a colloquial substitute for a definite interrogative; and that the definite is a repetition of this; and consequently is delivered according to Rule II, Exception 1; as,

Did you do it ? Did you do it ?
Does she know every thing ? Does she know every thing ?

When a circumstance follows an indirect interrogative, it is delivered with a continuation of the same slide; as,

Then you never knew the history of the young man ? said the other to him.

MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES OF SIMPLE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

What shall I do with my doublet ? What did he ? What said he ? How looked he ? Wherein went he ? What makes he here ? Did he ask for me ? How parted he with thee ? When shalt thou see him again ?

Who came ? The king. Why did he come ? To see. Why did he see ? To overcome. To whom came he ? To the beggar. What saw he ? The beggar. Who overcame he ? The beggar. The conclusion is victory. On whose side ? The king's. The captive is enriched. On whose side ? The beggar's. The catastrophe is a nuptial. On whose side ? The king's ? [No, on both in one.] I am the king. Thou art the beggar. Shall I command thy love ? I may. Shall I enforce thy love ? I could. Shall I entreat thy love ? I will. What shalt thou exchange for rags ? Robes.

What sayest thou ? What ? Is she pleased ?—You saw my master wink upon you ? Stands Scotland in its place ? Who comes there ? Do you mark that ? Shall I doubt his disposition to approve of the enterprise ?

No pleasure ? Are domestic comforts dead ?
Are all the nameless sweets of friendship fled ?

No pleasure? Has some sickly eastern waste
Sent us a wind to parch us at a blast?—
Can British Paradise no scenes afford
To please?
Are sweet philosophy's enjoyments run
Quite to the lees?—And has religion none?

Then you never knew the history of the young man? What have you to advance against this charge? Will you deny it? By what name shall I call you? Shall I call you soldiers? What did the British lion do? Did he whet his tusks? Did he bristle up? Did he shake his mane? Did he roar? What power shall blanch the sullied snow of character? Can there be an injury more deadly? Can there be a crime more cruel? He did, ay? Did what?

Who leads the British senate? A protestant Irishman. Who guides the British arms? A protestant Irishman. Why, then, is Catholic Ireland, with her quintuple population, stationary? Have physical causes neutralized its energies? Has the religion of Christ stupified its intellect? Has the God of mankind become the partisan of monopoly? Has he put an interdict on its advancement?

How then? Can honor set a leg? No. Or an arm? No. Or take away the grief of a wound? No. Honor hath no skill in surgery, then? No. What is honor? A word. What is in that word, honor? What is that honor? Air. Who hath it? He that died on Wednesday. Doth he feel it? No. Doth he hear it? No. Is it insensible, then? Yes, to the dead. But will it not live with the living? No. Why? Detraction will not suffer it.

Can this man have been a prince in Africa? said I to myself. But is this absolutely necessary? But is this absolutely necessary? said he, repeating the question.

[Sisters and brothers, little maid,]
How many may you be?
How many? [seven in all, she said,
And wondering looked at me.]

Whence this magic of thy mind?—
Why thrills thy music on the springs of thought?—
Why, at thy pencil's touch refined,
Starts into life the glowing draught?

Are we in life through one great error led?—
Is each man perjured?—Is each nymph betrayed?—
Of the superior sex art thou the worst?—
Am I of mine the most completely curst?

He would not receive you? He gave you no intimation of good will? Is not this the son of Joseph? What went ye out in the

wilderness to see? A reed shaken by the wind? But what went ye out to see? A man clothed in soft raiment? But what went ye out to see? A prophet? By what authority doest thou these things? Who gave thee this authority to do these things? Hearest thou? Why then did ye not believe on him? For what purpose did the infinite Creator give existence to this majestic monument of his almighty power? Was it not to communicate happiness? Is he not infinitely good?

Have any alarms been occasioned by the emancipation of our Catholic brethren? Has the bigoted malignity of any individual been crushed? Do you wish to prepare then for the revocation of these improvident concessions? Whence that doubt? exclaimed Morton. You do not suppose it entirely unfounded? What do you say to this? What? Are you mad? How? Will you persist? When will this farce terminate? When?

Is any among you afflicted? Let him pray. Is any merry? Let him sing psalms. Is any sick among you? Let him send for the elders of the church.

Why throw away a needful day
To go in search of yarrow?

O terror! What hath she perceived? O joy!
What doth she look on?—Whom doth she behold?—
Her hero slain upon the beach of Troy?—
His vital presence?—His corporeal mould?
What could he do,
Thus daily thirsting, in that lonesome life,
With blind endeavors?
May I name
Without offence, that fair-faced cottage-boy?
Are they not mainly outward ministers
Of inward conscience?
Grain shall I call it? Grain of what?—For whom?
What could she perform
To shake the burden off?
Can the mother thrive
By the destruction of her innocent sons?

CLASS III. SIMPLE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

RULE V. Simple exclamatory sentences are delivered like the corresponding declarative and interrogative sentences from which they are derived; except that they express additionally the peculiar effects of the emotions or passions.

These peculiar effects are perceived in the intonation, not at all in the general direction, of the voice. For example: the slide in the definite interrogative exclamation is precisely the same in all respects as in the definite interrogative. The voice proceeds through the same succession of tones, in the same direction, and to the same limits; but in the exclamation the succession of tones begins at a lower or higher pitch, succeed each other more slowly or rapidly, are tremulous or firm, soft or harsh, gentle or violent, &c., according to the nature of the emotion or passion which they are employed to express. These modifications of tone, force, pitch and rate, I need scarcely say, can be taught only by nature.

There is, I believe, but one exception to the rule: this will be noticed under the head of equivalent spontaneous exclamations.*

I. SIMPLE DECLARATIVE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES. (*Rule* 1.)

Examples.

Live! Die! Be gone! Away! Strike! Make haste! Retire! Pursue them! May he live! Scorn to be slaves! Forget not your fathers! Forbid it! Welcome to our shores! Be ye blotted from my mind forever! He is fallen! The foe is gone! We meet again this night! They are gone together! That was well! So said the spectre! I appeal to history! The war is actually begun! The throne is in danger! Talk of hypocrisy after this! She murmured in a hollow voice! I shudder to see thee approach my couch! Never shall they return! The serenest beam of your glory is extinguished in the tomb! Pour into their hearts the spirit of departed heroes! There stands the mighty Mansfield! Our brethren are already in the field! May my tongue cleave to the roof of my mouth! May I be the last victim sacrificed to the furious spirit of party! God grant to those few friends courage to declare themselves in opposition to your formidable enemies!

My flesh trembles at the prospect! Behold the French Demosthenes! Look on this massive wedge of gold! That soldier is a man! It is the shriek of America! Washington is no more! The sky is changed! Sin not against thy God! It was the night of the soul! My mind was wrapped in impenetrable gloom! My eyelids seemed pressed downward with an invincible burden! My eyeballs were ready to burst from their sockets! The whole endless night seemed filled with one appalling idea! Think on my chains! Let not the blood of heathen millions, in that hour, be found in our skirts! All are now vanished! I will paint the death-dew on his brow!

The shaft of fate
Strikes the devoted victim to the ground!

---

* I am inclined, on a review of the text, to believe that there is another. I think I have heard the indefinite interrogative exclamatory, when expressive of sorrow, turn upward at the close, like the end of a waving slide, instead of continuing uninterruptedly downward, according to Rule III; as,

Why do I suffer so many sorrows!

Lo! unveiled
The scene of those dark ages!

The starless grave shall shine
The portal of eternal day!

Night the pall of gloom had thrown
On Nature's still convexity!

Thus Switzerland again was free!—
Thus death made way for liberty!

The faithful watchman's cry
Speaks a conflagration nigh!

It gives birth
To sacred thought in souls of worth!

He lay, like a warrior taking his rest,
With his martial cloak around him!

The call of each sword upon liberty's aid,
Shall be written in gore on the steel of its blade!

A parent's curse light on the whole Gipsy race!—
They have bowed me almost to the grave!

Far along,
From peak to peak, the rattling crags among,
Leaps the live thunder!

Simple declarative exclamations often appear in a fragmentary form; and when they so appear, they should be delivered precisely as they would be, if they were complete. Several examples are given at the beginning above; but a more enlarged illustration here, will not, I presume, be thought impertinent. The examples subjoined, are, in several instances, necessarily interwoven with other sentences; but they will be readily distinguished by the exclamation point which succeeds. (*See Classification, Simple Definite Interrogative Exclamation, Note.*)

Examples.

Go! Beware! See! Stand! Run! Up! Hear! Make way! Hark! There! Here! He! She! Them! We! Ours! Yours!

Back! back! It is impossible!—Hurt thee, darling? No!—How now? A priest! What means this most unwelcome visit?—Not so! Mercy on me!—A trial of skill upon my child? Impossible!—What is life? A shadow!—There! thus do I trample on the insolence of Gesler.—Well done!—Thoughtless boy!—The foe! they come.

All. Rest thee content.
Theo. Content! O mockery of grief! Content!
Oh, must we part forever? Cruel fortune!
Wilt thou then tear him hence? Severe divorce!

Deluded hopes !—Oh worse than death.

My friend destroyed !—Oh piercing thought !—
Oh dismal chance !—In my destruction ruined !—
In my sad fall undone !

Without the smile from partial beauty won,
Oh what were man? A world without a sun !

Under the head of simple declarative sentences, it was shown that a sentence, in consequence of defective construction or incorrect punctuation, is often apparently simple declarative, when in fact it is either a compound sentence or a simple indirect interrogative. The same is as often the case with simple declarative exclamations.

Examples.

1. Beware ! Think of thy chains.—
2. In vain ! I must give o'er.

In the first of these examples, the exclamation, instead of being simple, as it seems to be, is either the first member of a close, or the first part of a loose sentence. If treated as the former, it should be delivered as if written and punctuated thus: Beware, and think *of* thy chains: if as the latter, thus: Beware: think *of* thy chains.

The exclamation in the second example, is either the first part of a compact, or of a loose. If treated as compact, with both correlative words *as—so*, understood, it should be delivered as if written thus: In vain; I must give o'er: if as a loose sentence, thus: It is in vain: I must give o'er.

1. You are not all here! Time and the sword have thinned your ranks.—
2. Let him not faint ! Rack him till he revives.—
3. I will not be dragged into the defence of my friend from Missouri ! The South shall not be forced into a conflict not its own. The gentleman from Missouri is able to fight his own battles.

Example 1st, is a double compact, with the first and second proposition expressed. The exclamation, therefore, is not a simple sentence.

Example 2d, is a double compact, with the first and third proposition expressed.

Example 3d, is a double compact, with the first and second proposition expressed: the first having two members, of which the first only is pointed as an exclamation. All these exclamations seem to be simple sentences.

1. 'Twas so ! But it is vanished : gone.
2. *Rienzi.* Ye dare not
   Ask for mercy now.
   Sav. Yet he is noble !
   Let him not die a felon's death.
3. *Cat.* Would you destroy ?
   Aur. Were I a thunderbolt !
   Rome's ship is rotten :
   Has she not cast you out ; &c. ?
4. *Ham.* 'Tis very strange !
   Hor. As I do live, my honored lord, 'tis true ;
   And we did think it writ down in our duty,
   To let you know it.

The exclamation in the first example is the first part of a single compact, followed by the second part. The exclamation represents the comma, thus: "It was so indeed, but it is vanished: gone."

The exclamation in the second is the first part of a single compact indirect semi-interrogative exclamation with both the correlative words understood. If complete it would read thus: Yet because he is noble, therefore let him not die a felon's death! The interrogative portion is the second kind of indirect: that used in supplication.

The exclamation in the third example is the first part of a single compact, with the second part understood, thus: If I were a thunderbolt, then I would destroy.

In the fourth and last example, the exclamation is a simple indirect interrogative: having the reply partly understood, thus:

Ham. 'Tis very strange!
Hor. *Yes, indeed, but* as I do live, my honored lord, 'tis true; &c.

II. INTERROGATIVE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

1. THE DEFINITE INTERROGATIVE EXCLAMATORY. (*Rule II.*)

Examples.

Art thou my father! Is he dead! Was it not terrible! Are such things possible! Darest thou thus provoke me, insolent! Could he think of it in those circumstances! Has it come to this! Were they infatuated! Am I, with undoubted right on my side, to be thus despoiled! Will this unhappy contest, already quite too protracted for the reputation of the parties, never come to an end! Can it be possible! Is that little insignificant creature the cause of all this turmoil!

This sentence appears for the most part in fragments. I subjoin numerous examples. They are delivered precisely as when complete.

Examples.

Liberty! It is for noble minds.—I am charged with being an emissary of France. An emissary of France!—Sell my country's independence to France! And for what?—Not inferior to this was the wisdom of him who resolved to shear the wolf. Shear a wolf!—As their parents are, so are they destined to become. Destined!—Is a man possessed of talents adequate to the occasion? Adequate!—To send forth the merciless cannibal thirsting for blood! Against whom?

Mr. H. And why were they overworked, pray?
Stew. To carry water, sir.
Mr. H. To carry water! And what were they carrying water for?
Stew. Sure, sir, to put out the fire.
Mr. H. Fire! What fire?
Stew. Oh, sir, your father's house is burned down to the ground.
Mr. H. My father's house burned down! And how came it set on fire?

Stew. I think, sir, it must have been the torches.
Mr. H. Torches! What torches?
Stew. At your mother's funeral.
Mr. H. My mother dead!

Thou here! And have not prison gloom
And taunting foes, and threatened doom
Obscured thy courage yet?

2. THE INDEFINITE INTERROGATIVE EXCLAMATORY. (*Rule III*)

Examples.

What sounds these are! What a scene is this! How beautiful it appears! How he glares! What an honorable testimony this from a vanquished adversary! What a noble idea doth it give of that wonderful orator's action! With what force, in particular, does he maintain the doctrines of grace! With what feelings must an intelligent heathen approach his final catastrophe! Oh why am I thus! Where could my thoughts have been! How wretched the condition of that infatuated man! How pleasing is the prospect! What a deal of pains for little profit! How great the command over his passions! What an affecting gracefulness in his instructions!

Who ever thought
In such a homely piece of stuff, to see
The mighty senate's tool!

What bare-faced shifting!—

Fragmentary indefinite exclamations are common; but there is too little variety in them to require much illustration.

Examples.

Who! When! What! Where! Which! Why!—For what! A mess of pottage.—How! To whom! How beautiful! What greatness of conception! How pale! What impertinence! How shameful! What a spectacle!

Simple indefinite exclamations, like simple indefinite interrogatives, frequently call for a repetition of a previous declaration or question either not understood, or of such an extraordinary character as to appear improbable if literally understood; in which case their delivery is in like manner reversed; that is to say, instead of taking the falling slide, they take the rising. (*See Indefinite Interrogative.*)

Generally, however, such exclamations consist merely of interrogative pronouns and adverbs, as, for the most part, in the examples subjoined.

Examples.

How! Will you suffer your glory to be sullied?—What! Shall we be told that the exasperated feelings of a people were excited?

—What motive, then, could have such influence in their bosom? What motive! That which nature, the common parent, plants in the bosom of men.—Not inferior to this was the wisdom of him who resolved to shear a wolf. What! Shear a wolf?

But how, and by what means?
What! Not a word! I ask you once again.

How! Leap into the pit our life to save?
To save our life, leap all into the grave?

When! Why, yesterday,
When all the world were out to play.

3 THE INDIRECT INTERROGATIVE EXCLAMATORY. (*Rule IV.*)

1. *Examples of the first kind.*

You will not go there! He was not a hypocrite! Then we shall not see him pass by with chains on his legs! He went! Thou wert unarmed! Thou hearest him deny the atrocious deed! You have not read it, then! Thou art not wont to join in idle tales! You never met the like but once! You did not see him, then! They were all present in that hour! Ye will not murder him! Then saw you not his face! You would not screen a traitor from the law! Thou wouldst not have me make a trial of my skill upon my child! You witnessed the horrid spectacle! They saw nothing in that transaction to disgrace them forever! You left them on the verge of the precipice!

These sentences, like the interrogatives from which they are derived, are often fragmentary; and when so employed, it is difficult to distinguish them from simple declarative and simple definite interrogative exclamations. If, however, the emotion be either purely or in part that of contempt, scorn or disgust, the fragment, it is pretty certain, is indirect, and should be delivered with the waving slide.

Examples.

Thou wear a lion's hide! doff it for shame,
And hang a calf-skin on those recreant limbs.

Wal. Alasco, this is wild and mutinous:
An outrage, marking deep and settled spleen
To just authority.
Alas. Authority!
Show me authority in honor's garb,
And I will down upon the humblest knee
That ever homage bent to sovereign sway.

Val. Indeed, when you turned justice into rigor,
And even that rigor was pursued with fury,

We undertook to mediate for the queen,
And hoped to moderate ——
Van. To moderate!
What would you moderate? My indignation?
To mediate for the queen!—You undertook!—
Wherein concerned it you?
Val. Did not the Romans civilize you?
Van. No.
Val. We found you naked.
Van. And you found us free.
Val. Would you be temperate once and hear me out—
Van. Speak things that honest men may hear with temper:
Speak the plain truth and varnish not your crimes.
Say that you once were virtuous: long ago
A frugal, hardy people, like the Britons,
Before you grew thus elegant in vice,
And gave your luxuries the name of virtues.
The civilizers!—the disturbers, say:
The robbers: the corrupters of mankind.

2. *Examples of the second kind.*

Spare him! Grant me this favor for once! Let me not perish in this horrid manner! Let me live! Give us this day our daily bread! For heaven's sake, permit me to go with you!

The rare occurrence of this exclamation, in books, must be my apology for so few examples, The interrogative is very scarce, but the exclamation is still more so.

3. *Examples of the third kind.*

You are surely mistaken in that supposition! She will certainly get lost in this wilderness of streets! You surely will not deprive me of my only pleasure in life! Verily, it is a wonderful thing! Surely I have seen you in very different circumstances! Surely it is unnecessary for a man to make a fool of himself to pass for a man of fashion!

How is this, my father?
You are not angry, sure! What have I done?

III. COMPELLATIVE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

Compellative exclamations, being imperfect divisions, strictly speaking, of declarative sentences, form no exception to the rule that exclamatory sentences are delivered like the corresponding

declarative and interrogative from which they are derived. Peculiarities, however, they have, which deserve attention.

1. Whether they occur at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of perfect sense, they should always, with an exception to be noticed in the proper place, terminate with the bend. Ordinary divisions of imperfect sense at the end of perfect sense, terminate with partial or perfect close.

2. They are often repeated: sometimes for the purpose of being heard and sometimes not. When repeated for the purpose of being heard, the repetition is delivered with perfect close; and every succeeding repetition is delivered in the same manner, but with increased force: when repeated, but not for the purpose of being heard, the repetition, or the last of the series of repetition, is delivered with the circumflex.

Examples.

1. Of simple compellatives not repeated.

Gentlemen′, I rise to address you on one of the most interesting subjects that can engage the human mind.

Ladies′, the consequence of such a step on your fame and happiness would be too serious to be lightly incurred.

Wives′, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord.

Husbands′, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the Church.

Children′, obey your parents in the Lord; for this is right.

Servants′, be obedient to them that are your masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling, in singleness of heart, as unto Christ.

When I came here, my friends′, I little expected to behold a scene like this.

I perceive, conscript fathers′, that every look, that every eye, is fixed on me.

Long since, Cataline′! ought the consul to have doomed thy life a forfeit to thy country.

As to the wealth, Mr. Speaker, which the colonies have drawn from the sea by their fisheries, you had all that matter opened at the bar.

To form a just estimate of Cæsar's aims, Mr. President, look to his triumphs after the surrender of Utica.

You are a fool‵, Harry′.* Your senses leave you‵, Caius′! Give

---

* It is very important to observe, that the compellative is the only reason for the turning of the voice upward at the end of these sentences. Without it, they properly end with the perfect close.

me answer', Drusus'! Good morning', uncle'. Good morning', little man'. Stay thee', Saladin! Read here, young Arthur! How now, foolish rheum!

Yes, land of liberty'! thy children have no cause to blush for thee.

Haughty lord!
Think not I stoop to deprecate your wrath.

Unhappy youth!
Art thou a sufferer too from that same fight?

Bright angels! strike your loudest strings:
Your sweetest voices raise:
Let heaven and all created things
Sound our Immanuel's praise.

Arise, O King of grace, arise,
And enter to thy rest:
Lo! thy church waits with longing eyes,
Thus to be owned and blessed.

Here, mighty God, accept our vows:
Here let thy praise be spread:
Bless the provision of thy house,
And fill thy poor with bread.

For heaven's sake, Hubert, let me not be bound!
Nay, hear me, Hubert! drive these men away.

Are you sick, Hubert? You look pale to-day.

How now, Rodrigo?
I pray you, after the lieutenant: go.

Mon. What's the matter, lieutenant?
Cas. A knave!—teach me my duty.
I'll beat the knave into a twiggin bottle.

Des. Let me find a charter in your voice
To assist my simpleness.
Duke. What would you, Desdemona?

Bra. Come hither, Moor.
I here do give thee that with all my heart
Which, but thou hast already, with all my heart
I would keep from thee.—For your sake, jewel,
I am glad at soul I have no other child;
For thy escape would teach me tyranny,
To hang clogs on them.—I have done, my lord.

EXCEPTION. Single compellatives, when at the end of very emphatic declarative or indefinite interrogative sentences, or their

derivative exclamations, conform to the delivery of those sentences; that is, submit to the partial or perfect close of the one, or the falling slide of the other: *e. g.*

Get thee behind me, Satan`. Hence! home! ye idle creatures`.

This is all idle: there are deeds to do:
Arouse thee, Procida`!

Charge, Chester`! Charge! On! Stanley`! On!
Were the last words of Marmion.

Love. Get along, you impudent villain!
James. Nay, sir, you said you wouldn't be angry.
Love. Get out, you dog`! you ——

Why tempt ye me, ye hypocrites`!

2. Of simple compellatives repeated.

1. For the purpose of being heard.

John´, John`! Mr. Speaker´, Mr. Speaker`! Fellow-citizens´, fellow-citizens`! Lord´, Lord`! open unto us. Macbeth´, Macbeth`, Macbeth`! beware Macduff!

Oh, mother´, mother`, do not jest
On such a theme as this.

Emil. [*Within.*] My lord´, my lord`! what! ho! my lord´, my lord`!
Oth. What noise is this?—Not dead? Not yet quite dead?
I, that am cruel, am yet merciful:
I would not have thee linger in thy pain.—
So: so.
Emil. What! ho! my lord, my lord!
Oth. Who's there?
Emil. O good my lord, I would speak a word with you.

Ham. Hold off thy hand.
King. Pluck them asunder.
Queen. Hamlet, Hamlet!
All. Gentlemen, ——
Hor. Good my lord, be quiet.

Help me, Lysander!* help me! do thy best
To pluck this crawling serpent from my breast!
Ah me, for pity! What a dream was here!

---

* This should be delivered like the exceptions above. The lady being asleep at this point, is not supposed to recollect that she has called on Lysander here. Hence repetition does not begin until the seventh line, and third Lysander

Lysander, look how I do quake and fear.
Methought a serpent ate my heart away,
And you sat smiling at his cruel prey.
Lysander! what! removed? Lysander! lord!*
What! out of hearing? gone? no sound, no word?

2. Repeated, but not for the purpose of being heard.

Oh, my son Absalom! my son! my son *Absalom'!* would to God I had died for thee, O Absalom! my son! *my son'!*

Oh! Raimond, *Raimond'!*
If it should be that I have wronged thee, say
Thou dost forgive me.

O Cromwell, *Cromwell'*,
Had I but served my God with half the zeal
I served my king, he would not in mine age
Have left me naked to mine enemies.

Oh monster, *monster'!*
The brute that tears the infant from its nurse,
Is excellent to thee, for in his form
The impulse of his nature may be read;
But thou, so beautiful, so proud, so noble,—
Oh, what a wretch art thou!

Reg. What! did my father's godson seek your life?
He whom my father named? Your Edgar?
Glo. O lady, lady, Shame would have it hid!

IV. SPONTANEOUS EXCLAMATIONS.

1. INVARIABLE SPONTANEOUS EXCLAMATIONS.

These are all fragments of simple declarative sentences, and, of course, are delivered like simple declaratives. (*See the Rule.*)

Examples.

See there'! behold'!† look'! lo!†
If I stand here, I saw him!

And they bowed their knees before him, and mocked him: saying, Hail'! king of the Jews.

---

* The word *lord*, being the equivalent of Lysander, is delivered as if it was Lysander; that is, it being the second repetition, with increased force, but with perfect close.

† These two exclamations are of constant occurrence in the Scriptures: they should always be delivered in the manner here indicated.

But previously I should have mentioned the very impolite behavior of Mr. Burchell; who, during this discourse, sate with his face turned to the fire, and at the conclusion of every sentence would cry out, Fudge! an expression that displeased us all, and in some measure damped the rising spirit of the conversation.

Tush'! tush'! son, said Cecropia: if you say you love, but withal you fear, you fear lest you should offend.

Tut'! man: one fire burns out another.

And he said, tut'! tut'! tut'! shaking his head three or four times.

Rob. I'll make all happy: I'll lower all your rents.

All. Huzza! Long live lord Robin!

Rob. You shant pay no rent at all.

All. Huzza'! huzza'! Long live lord Robin!

Rob. I'll have no poor people in the parish, for I'll make them all rich; I'll have no widows, for I'll marry them all; I'll have no orphan children, for I'll father them all myself; and if that's not doing as a lord should do, then I say I know nothing about the matter: that's all.

All. Huzza'! huzza'!*

Sir H. Upon my word, sir, you must beat me, or I will beat you: take your choice.

Ald. S. Psha! psha! you jest.

Pris. Hem! hem!

Witty. He's dry: he hems: on quickly.

I am your lordship's most obsequious ——— zounds! what a peer of the realm!

Rosse. Let not your ears despise my tongue forever,
Which shall possess them with the heaviest sound,
That ever yet they heard.

Macd. Humph! I guess at it.

Avaunt! thou witch! Come, Dromio: let us go.

Mercy! sir, how the folks will talk of it!

'Tis not his words that shake me thus—Pish!

James. Why, sir, since you will have it, then, they make a jest of you everywhere: nay, of your servants on your account. One says, you pick a quarrel with them quarterly, in order to find an excuse to pay them no wages.

Love. Poh! poh!

Fie! daughter: fie! when my old wife lived, upon
This day, she was both pantler, butler, cook:
Both dame and servant.

---

* *Hurrah*, pronounced *hooraw*, is the same word, differently, but more correctly, written.

Fie! fie! Gratiano! Where are all the rest?

Yes, forsooth, I will hold my tongue. So your face bids me, though you say nothing. Mum! mum!

Hum! hum! And so there is no remedy? None? None.

Hum! Is this a vision? Is this a dream? Do I sleep? Master Ford, awake! awake!

Slender. Whoo! ho! ho! Father Page.

Page. Son! How now? how now, son? Have you despatched?

Stew. Help, ho! murder! help!

Kent. Strike, you slave: stand, rogue: stand: you neat slave, strike.

Stew. Help, ho! murder! help!

Heigh! sirs, what a noise you make here.

Heigh! heigh! what's the matter?

I do so: I confess it. Sir, a body would think this was well counterfeited: I pray you, tell your brother how well I counterfeited.—Heigh ho!

'Tis almost five o'clock, cousin: 'tis time you were ready: by my troth, I am exceeding ill: hey ho!

Hey-day! What Hans Flutterkin is this? What Dutchman does build or frame castles in the air?

2. VARIABLE SPONTANEOUS EXCLAMATIONS.

These exclamations form the only exception to the general rule of delivery; namely, that exclamatory sentences are delivered like the corresponding declarative and interrogative from which they are derived. Strictly speaking, indeed, even these are not exceptions; since, to be exceptions, they should be derivatives, like other exclamations; and this they are not. They spring directly from the passions, as they are exclusively employed by the passions.

Though I have enumerated them among sentences, it is only by courtesy that they can receive that title. In the classification, I have therefore denominated them equivalents; *i. e.* of the declarative and different interrogative exclamations which have so far been noticed: a name, which seems to express with perfect precision their true character.

As equivalents, they are delivered exactly like the sentences for which they are substituted.

Examples.

I. Of *Ah!*

1. *Ah*, when used to express surprise, suspicion, curiosity or triamph, is equivalent to a definite interrogative exclamation: *e. g.*

What! so rank? Ah! ah! There is mischief in this man.

O 'twas most wonderful!—Ah! was it so?

2. When used to express pity, it is equivalent to a declarative, or an indefinite interrogative exclamation: *e. g.*

What a pity!—Ah! poor thing! ah!

3. When used to express sorrow, a wish, admiration, &c., it is a mere emission of sound, forming a species of key-note to the phrase, clause or sentence which follows: *e. g.*

Ah, that same pale hard-hearted wench, that Rosaline, torments him so, that he will surely run mad.

Ah, sinful nation.—Ah! beautiful!—Ah! if you only had been there.—Ah! sir, ah! sir. Well, death's the end of all.—Ah me! This object kills me.

Rom. That I might touch that cheek!
Jul. Ah me!
Rom. She speaks!

II. Of *Ha!* or *Hah!*

1. When this expresses surprise or exultation, it is equivalent to a definite interrogative exclamation: *e. g.*

Ha! sure it is not so?—Ha! sayest thou so?—Hah! what is't thou sayest?—Hah! have I caught thee at last?—

Des. Well, well,
Do your discretion.
Iago. Ha! I like not that.

Iago. You cannot, if my heart were in your hand;
Nor shall not, while 'tis in my custody.
Oth. Ha!
Iago. O beware, my lord, of jealousy.

2. When it expresses fear or disgust, it is equivalent to a declarative exclamation: *e. g.*

Hah! it is a sight to freeze one!
Ha! it sickens me.

3. When employed as an imitation of laughter, it is equivalent to a declarative exclamation: *e. g.*

Fool. Then, pr'ythee, be merry; thy wit shall not go slip-shod.
Lear. Ha! ha! ha!

Cap. Wife, go you to her ere you go to bed,
Acquaint her here of my Paris' love,
And bid her, you mark me, on Wednesday next ——
But, soft: what day is this?
Par. Monday, my lord.
Cap. Monday? ha! ha! Well, Wednesday is too soon:
On Thursday let it be.

III. Of *Aha!* or, *Ah! ha!*

This is always an expression of innocent or insulting exultation; and it is equivalent to two definite interrogative exclamations delivered in quick succession: *e. g.*

Ah! ha! you thought me blind: did you?
Ah! ha! Mrs. Ford and Mrs. Page, have I encompassed you? Go to: *via!*
Yea, they opened their mouth against me and said, aha! aha! our eye hath seen it.
Let them be desolate for a reward of their shame which say unto me, Aha! aha!

Ham. Didst perceive?
Hor. Very well, my lord.
Ham. Upon the talk of the poisoning ——
Hor. I did very well note him.
Ham. Ah, ha!—Come, some music: come, the recorders.—

IV. Of *Eh!*

When an expression of surprise or curiosity, it is equivalent to a definite interrogative exclamation: when of pain, to a declarative exclamation: *e. g.*

Eh! are you sure of it?
Eh! you hurt me.

James. Sir, how the folks will talk of it! Indeed, people say enough of you already.
Love. Eh! what do the people say, pray?

V. Of *O!* or *Oh!*

1. When these exclamations are prefixed to exclamatory sentences expressing admiration, wonder, astonishment, love, fear, grief, &c., &c., they form, like No. I, 3, above, merely the key-note, more or less prolonged, of those sentences: *e. g.*

O noble judge! O excellent young man!
O, let me not be mad, not mad, sweet heaven!
Keep me in temper: I would not be mad!

Nurse. O lamentable day!
Lady Cap. What's the matter?
Nurse. Look! look! O heavy day!
Lady Cap. O me! O me! my child, my only life!
Revive, look up, or I will die with thee!

Oh, that the salvation of Israel were come out of Zion! When God bringeth back the captivity of his people, Jacob shall rejoice and Israel shall be glad.

Oh that I knew where I might find him! that I might come even to his seat!

2. When used to convey a sneer, contempt, incredulity, &c., they are equivalent to indirect interrogative exclamations: *e. g.*

Oh, but he paused upon the brink! He should have perished upon the brink before attempting to cross it!

3. When employed independently to express mental or physical suffering, they are equivalent to declarative exclamations: *e. g.*

Why, then let fall
Your horrible pleasure: here I stand, your slave:
A poor, infirm, weak, and despised old man.—
But yet I call you servile ministers,
That have with two pernicious daughters joined
Your high-engendered battles, 'gainst a head
So old and white as this. O! O! 'tis foul!
Had it pleased Heaven
To try me with affliction; had he rained
All kind of sores, and shames, on my bare head;
Steeped me in poverty to the very lips;
Given to captivity me and my utmost hopes;
I should have found in some part of my soul
A drop of patience: but (alas!) to make me
A fixed figure, for the hand of scorn
To point his slow, unmoving finger at,—
O! O!

Iago. What! are you mad? I charge you, get you home.
Emil. Good gentlemen, let me have leave to speak:
'Tis proper I obey him, but not now.—
Perchance, Iago, I will ne'er go home.
Oth. O! O! O! [*Hanging over his wife.*]
Emil. Nay, lay thee down and roar;
For thou hast killed the sweetest innocent,
That e'er did lift up eye.
O Desdemona! Desdemona! dead?
Dead! O! O! O!

Oh! oh!—Sir, you'll certainly break my bones.

Quick. With trial-fire touch me his finger-end:
If he be chaste, the flame will back descend
And turn him to no pain; but if he start,
It is the flesh of a corrupted heart.

Pist. A trial: come.

Eva. Come: will this wood take fire?

[*They burn him with their tapers.*]

Falstaff. Oh! Oh! Oh!

VI. Of *Alas!* and *Alack!*

These two words, which are really the same though differently written, are unlike all the preceding, in being equivalent to a part of a sentence only, terminating with the bend. Its delivery is accurately represented by the first two words in each of the following sentences: "A lass, just sixteen years old to-day, was married this morning, at the house of her father." "A lack, I mean of rupees, is equal to fifty-five thousand dollars." *E. g.*

Alas, the day! I know not.—Alas! sir, how fell you beside your five wits.

Alas! alas!
It is not honesty in me to speak
What I have seen and known.

Alas, what boots it with incessant care,
To tend the homely, slighted shepherd's trade,
And strictly meditate the thankless muse?

Alack! how may I do it: having the hour limited?

Alack! alack! Edmund, I like not this unnatural dealing.

Scar. I never saw an action of such shame:
Experience, manhood, honor, ne'er before
Did violate so itself.

Eno. Alack! alack!

Miscellaneous Examples of Exclamations.

Some of these examples are not, correctly speaking, the simple sentences they purport to be, but rather parts of compound sentences. I wish it particularly understood, therefore, that every exclamation point separates what precedes from what follows it, into perfect independence of each other. Each is to be considered by itself, as if the other had no existence. The Rhetorical pause or dash, is here and there employed, as an additional means of separation.

What a spectacle!—Behold a parent subject to the degrading influence of an ungovernable temper!—Her very soul sickened at the sight!—O impossible! replied Mary.—O shocking!—How very tiresome!—And this was once a court! thought she.—Humph!

that's the reason people are always glad to see them.—Fatigue! Phoo! I am sure I mind fatigue as little as any man.—My sweetest Blanch, do be quiet!

I look after the pigs, Mr. Guffaw! I am really astonished at you! Do I look like a person made to look after pigs? For heaven's sake, Mr. Guffaw, make less noise!

But you thought me the greatest delicacy of all! my dear.—You left all your other delicacies for me! Ha! ha! ha!—What do you say to that? Ha! ha! ha!——Surely, my mother cannot be displeased at my attending church! said she in astonishment. —Oh! what a situation I am placed in!—How fortunate!—How excessively childish!—

There's a slap on the cheek for me! Mercy! how it burns!—God's will be done!—What! afraid of the effects of evil example! —shocking! to mention pigeon-pies in the same breath with roses! —Oh! my friends! how little with all my boasting have I known my own heart!—Alas! all earthly good still blends itself with home!—I shall go down to posterity with the code in my hand! —Strive now to rival him in the sacred arts of peace!

Oh! with what a sorrowful air of forced gayety was all this uttered!—How shall I endure it!—Oh! Epictetus, how!—Pho! pho! nonsense, man! I never saw you before!—Never saw me! Never saw me! Is it come to this!—Who then can be saved!—You are not angry, sure!—Grant me this favor for once!—Let me not perish in this horrid manner!—Tush! tush! man, I made no reference to you!—Out upon you!

Nurse. [*Within.*] Madam!
Jul. I come anon.—But if thou mean'st not well,
I do beseech thee ———
Nurse. [*Within.*] Madam!
Jul. By-and-by I come:—
To cease thy suit and leave me to my grief:
To-morrow will I send.

And yet—yet what? No news! Mankind is mad!

Unheard their clock repeats the hours!—
Cold is the hearth within their bowers!—
Die for thy country!—Thou romantic fool!
Thy country! What to thee?—

But hark! What nearer war-drum shakes the glade?
Joy! joy! Columbia's friends are trampling through the shade!

It is
That man of sorrow! O how changed! What pomp!
In grandeur terrible, all heaven descends!

Hark! from the battlements of yonder tower,
The solemn bell has tolled the midnight hour!—
Soon may this fluttering spark of vital flame,
Forsake its languid ———————— frame!

Miscellaneous Examples of Declarative, Interrogative and Exclamatory Sentences.

How now, brother? Where is my cousin? Hath he provided this music?

To be whipped! What's his fault? Wilt thou make a trust, a transgression? The transgression is in the stealer.

D. How now? Why are you sad?
C. Sad! I am not sad.
D. How then? Sick?
C. I am neither, sir.

What fire is in mine ears? Can this be true?
Contempt, farewell! Maiden pride, adieu!

Hero. Fie upon thee! Art thou not ashamed?
Marg. Of what, lady? Of speaking honorably? Is not marriage honorable in a beggar? Is not your lord honorable without marriage?

Friar. You come hither, my lord, to marry this lady?
Claud. No.
Leon. To *be* married to her, friar. *You* come to *marry* her.
Friar. Lady, you come hither to be married to this count?
Hero. I do.

Claud. Bid her answer truly.
Leon. I charge thee, daughter, to do so.
Hero. O God! defend me! How I am beset! What kind of catechising do you call this?
Claud. To make you answer truly to your name.
Hero. Is it not Hero? Who can blot that name with any just reproach?

Bene. How doth the lady?
Beat. She seems dead. Help, uncle!
Hero! Why, Hero!—Uncle! Seignior Benedick! friar!
Leon. O Fate! take not away thy heavy hand!
Death is the fairest cover for her shame.
Beat. How now, cousin Hero?
Friar. Have comfort, lady.
Leon. Dost thou look up?

Friar. Wherefore should she not?
Leon. Wherefore? Why,* doth not every earthly thing
Cry shame upon her? Could she here deny
The story?

Besides all this, his children had the general advantage of a father's example. Piety in him was recompensed by peace of mind. Benevolence in him was rewarded by self-satisfaction. Integrity in him was crowned by the blessings of a good conscience. How natural the result! Each became a reflection of his worth. Is not this an encouraging illustration of the power of a good life in purifying the domestic atmosphere? What could be more? The question needs no answer. Parents! consider it well. Your own happiness is involved in this matter.

This, Oh men of Athens! my duty prompted me to represent to you on this occasion. May God inspire you to determine upon measures most expedient for the common good of our country!

Proceed then, Athenians, to support your deliberations with vigor. Has not Philip, contrary to all treaties, insulted you in Thrace? Is he not an implacable enemy? Indeed, what is he not?

What have you left unviolated? By what name shall I now address you? Shall I call you soldiers? Soldiers! Can I call you citizens? Citizens!

If I exist?—Hah! whence that doubt? "We meet again this night!"—so said the spectre! Dreadful words, be ye blotted from my mind forever! Hassan, to your vigilance, I leave the care of my beloved. Fly to me that instant, on the approach of any unbidden footstep to your door. I'll to my couch. Follow me, Saib.

How long did he pause on the brink of the Rubicon? How came he to the brink of that river? How dared he cross it? Shall a man pay no respect to the boundaries of his country's rights? How dared he cross that river? Oh! but he paused upon the brink! He should have perished upon the brink before attempting to cross it! Why did he pause? Why does a man's heart palpitate, on the point of committing an unlawful deed? Why does the very murderer strike wide of the mortal part? [Because of conscience!] That made Cæsar pause upon the brink of the Rubicon!—What was the Rubicon? The boundary of Cæsar's province. From what did it separate his province? From his country. Was that country a desert? No.

Suffer not yourselves to be betrayed with a kiss. Let us not deceive ourselves, sir. What means this martial array? Is it not designed to force us to submission? Can gentlemen assign any other possible motive for it? Has Great Britain an enemy in this

---

* In this example, the necessity of treating *why* as an interrogative, is very apparent. (*See Classification, Sec. I*, 2. 2.)

quarter of the world, to call for all this accumulation of force? No! Sir. She has none. They are meant for us. And what have we to oppose to them? Shall we try argument? Sir, we have been trying that for the last ten years. Have we any thing new to offer upon the subject? Nothing. Shall we resort to humble supplication? Let us not, sir, deceive ourselves longer.

Blush, Grandeur! Blush, proud Courts! Withdraw your blaze,
Ye little stars! Hide your diminished rays.

Fear held them mute. [Alone, untaught to fear,
Stood dauntless Carl.] "Behold that rival here!"

"A rat! [a rat!] Clap to the door."—
The cat comes bouncing on the floor.

What! They admire him for his jokes?
See but the fortune of some folks!

Let Sporus tremble. What? that thing of silk?
Sporus! [that mere white curd of asses milk?]
Satire, alas! alas! can Sporus feel!
Who breaks a butterfly upon a wheel?

Booth enters. Hark! the universal peal!
But has he spoken? Not a syllable.

Alas! delusive dream!
Too well I know him.

Give me another horse.—Bind up my wounds.—
Have mercy, Jesu!—Soft! I did but dream.*—
O coward conscience! how dost thou afflict me!
The lights burn blue.—It is now dead midnight.
Cold, fearful drops stand on my trembling flesh.
What do I fear? Myself? There's none else by.*—
Is there a murderer here? No.—Yes.—I am.
Then fly.—What! from myself? Great reason.* Why?
Lest I revenge. What? Myself on myself?
I love myself. Wherefore?

---

* All these sentences have the appearance of being simple declarative sentences, and as such, seem to be at variance with the rule laid down for their delivery: inasmuch as they end with the inferior sweep. But are they declarative sentences? The first is an indirect interrogative, (with the answer implied,) put by the speaker to himself, to assure himself of the real state of things: the second, is the first part or negative of a double compact, with the affirmative opposed to it understood, but implied by the next line; which, because it contained a compound sentence, I have not inserted in the text. Adding the affirmative and subjoining the line omitted, the whole passage will read thus:

There is none else by, but Richard is alone.
And Richard loves Richard; that is, I am I.

The third sentence is the first part of a single compact, with the corresponding words and the second part suppressed. Written in full, it would read thus: Then fly. What! from myself? Yet I have great reason, though I should or do not. Why? Lest I revenge.

The fourth is likewise a single compact, thus: "To the penitent, indeed, but I am not penitent."

Mess. My lord! My lord! [*Knocking.*]
Hast. [*Within.*] Who knocks?
Mess. One from lord Stanley.
Hast. [*Within.*] What is't o'clock?
Mess. Upon the stroke of four.

War is the law of violence. Peace is the law of love. That law of violence prevailed without mitigation from the murder of Abel to the advent of the Prince of Peace.

Brothers! let us talk together of Logan. Ye aged men! bear ye testimony to the deeds of his strength. Who was like him? Who could resist him? Who may withstand the winds uprooting the great trees of the mountain? Let him be the foe of Logan. Thrice in one day hath he given battle. Thrice in one day hath he come back victorious. Who may bear up against the strong man? Let the young hear me. Let them follow him. Warriors! Logan was the father of Harold!

What! old acquaintance! could not all this flesh
Keep in a little life? Poor Jack, farewell!

Bal. You are, doubtless, happy in your prosperity?
Far. Happy in my prosperity! How can I be? Can prosperity give me back my buried child?
Bal. For such a sorrow there is a divine consolation. Have you sought it?
Far. A consolation beyond my reach. I dare not seek it.
Bal. Why not? God is abundantly merciful?
Far. To the penitent.* I, alas! am not penitent. I cannot repent without restoring my ill-gotten wealth to its owners. Hence all my sorrows.
Bal. Sir, you deserve them. May they not prove eternal!

SEC. II. COMPOUND SENTENCES.

I. DECLARATIVE SENTENCES.

1. CLOSE SENTENCES.

RULE VI. The close declarative is delivered with accentual sweeps, the bend at intermediate pauses, and perfect close. (*See Rule I, and note: also Plate, Fig.* 9.)

Examples.

The whole multitude of them arose and led him to Pilate. They

* See note on the preceding page.

who are moderate in their expectations′, meet with few disappointments. The rocks and hills of New England will remain till the last conflagration. Rome carefully recorded these requests and intercessions′, and smiled to see the nations throw themselves into her arms. Rome was the great′est, the rich′est, the most powerful city in the world. And the chief priests and scribes stood and vehemently accused him.

The citizens of America celebrate that day which gave birth to their liberties. The recollection of this event swells every heart with joy′, and fills every tongue with praise. It was then that they struck that terrible blow under which the greatness of Persia sunk and expired. Old nations, with different systems of government′, may be slow to acknowledge all that justly belongs to us. There are two principles, gentlemen′, strictly and purely American′, which are now likely to overrun the world. Popular governments and general education, acting and reacting′, mutually producing and reproducing each other′, are the mighty agencies, which, in our days, appear to be exciting, stimulating and changing the aspect of the civilized world.

It is a considerable benefit of piety′, that it affords the best friendships and sweetest society. To have a friend, wise and good, to whom, upon all occasions, we may resort for advice, for assistance, for consolation′, is a great convenience in life. A late English writer has permitted himself to say′, that the original establishment of the United States, and that of the colony of Botany Bay′, were pretty nearly modelled on the same plan. The meaning of this slanderous insinuation is, that the United States were settled by deported convicts, in like manner as New South Wales has been, by felons whose punishment has been commuted into transportation. It is a principle amply borne out by the history of the great and powerful nations of the earth, and by that of none more than the country of which we speak, that the best fruits and choicest action of the commendable qualities of the national character, are to be found on the side of the oppressed few.

That great man, Luther′, gave an impulse to society, which it has ever since preserved. He unfolded to the wondering gaze of men′, a form of moral beauty, which had been too long shrouded from their eyes by the timid dogmatism of the Papal Church. It is to protestant Christianity, gentlemen′, that you are indebted for the noblest exercise of your rational powers. It is to protestant Christianity that you owe the vigor of your intellectual exertions and the purity of your moral sentiments. I could easily show you how much the manliness of English literature, and the fearless intrepidity of German speculation, and how much even of the accurate sciences of France, may be ascribed to the spirit of protestant Christianity.

It is from the influence of this spirit, that the sublime astronomy of La Place, has not been, like that of Galileo, condemned as heretical.

The ambition and avarice of man are the sources of his unhappiness. Natural dispositions, or acquired habits′, regulate the tenor of our lives. I feel your kindness′, and wish for an opportunity to requite it. To the beauty of her form and excellence of her natural disposition, a parent, equally indulgent and attentive, had done the fullest justice. A man may enjoy the present and forget the future, at the very moment in which he is writing of the insignificance of the former and the importance of the latter. The dying Englishman, pouring his medicine, which has paid seven per cent., into a spoon which has paid fifteen per cent., flings himself back upon his chintz bed which has paid twenty-two per cent., makes his will on an eight-pound stamp, and expires in the arms of an apothecary who has paid a license of a hundred pounds for the privilege of putting him to death.

War, peace, darts, spears, towns, rivers, every thing, in short, in his writings′, is alive. Fire of imagination′, strength of mind′, and firmness of soul′, are gifts of nature. Wit, grace and beauty, are captivating. The warbling of birds′, the murmuring of streams′, the enamel of meadows′, the coolness of woods′, the fragrance of flowers′, and the sweet smell of plants′, contribute greatly to the pleasures of the mind′ and the health of the body. The diversity of objects, the extent of the horizon, the immense height, the country like a map at your feet, the ocean around, the heavens above, conspire to overwhelm the mind. That faith which is one, that faith which renews and justifies all who profess it, that faith which confessions and formularies can never adequately express, is the property of all alike. A mind bold, independent and decisive, a will despotic in its dictates, an energy that distanced expedition, and a conscience pliable to every touch of self-interest, marked the outline of this extraordinary character.

He who follows the pleasures of the world, which are in their very nature disappointing′, is in constant search of care, solicitude, remorse and confusion. Notwithstanding all the pains which Cicero took in the education of his son′, history informs us, that nature rendered him incapable of improving by all the rules of eloquence′, the precepts of philosophy′, his own endeavors′, and the most refined conversation of Athens. His library consisted of several volumes of sermons′, a concordance′, Thomas a Kempis′, Antoninus' Meditations′, the works of the author of the Whole Duty of Man′, a translation of Boethius′, the original editions of the Spectator and Guardian′, Cowley's Poems′, Dryden's Works′, Baker's Chronicle′, Burnet's History of his own times′, Lamb's Royal Cook-

ery′, Abercromby's Scots Warriors′, and Nisbet's Heraldry. With the newly-found continent of New Holland, she embraces under her protection, or in her possession, the Philippine Islands, Java, Sumatra′; passes the coast of Malacca′; rests for a short time fruitlessly to endeavor to number the countless millions of her subjects in Hindostan′; winds into the sea of Arabia′; skirts along the coasts of Coromandel and Ceylon′; stops for a moment for refreshment at the Cape of Good Hope′; visits her plantations of the Isles of France and Bourbon′; sweeps along the whole of the Antilles′; doubles Cape Horn to protect her whalemen in the northern and southern Pacific Oceans′; crosses the American continent, from Queen Charlotte's Sound to Hudson's Bay′, glancing in the passage at her colonies of the Canadas, Nova Scotia and New-Brunswick′; thence continues to Newfoundland, to look after and foster her fisheries′; and then takes her departure for the united kingdoms of England, Scotland and Ireland.

Whatever may be the obstacles which ignorance, prejudice and envy oppose to the doctrines of religion′, we ought never to be deterred from propagating them. Whatever talents you may possess′, whatever advantages you may have received from nature and education′, with whatever perfections you may be endowed′, expect only the suffrage of a small number of men. By ascending to an association with our ancestors′, by contemplating their example and studying their character′, by partaking their sentiments and imbibing their spirit′, by accompanying them in their toils′, by sympathizing in their sufferings and rejoicing in their successes and their triumphs′, we mingle our existence with theirs, and seem to belong to their age. How men have labored to disprove them; what intellectual power and ardor and acumen, urged on by inveterate hate, have assailed their credibility; what stores of learning have been exhausted, what wit and what ridicule expended, to evince their absurdity; what ferocity of godless ambition, of bigoted power, and even of popular legislation, have been employed to enervate, if not destroy their influence; is well known. Those who fell victims to their principles in the civil convulsions of the short-lived republics of Greece, or who sunk beneath the power of her invading foes; those victims of Austrian tyranny in Switzerland, and of Spanish tyranny in Holland; the solitary champions, or the united bands of high-minded and patriotic men who have in any region or age, struggled and suffered in this great cause; belong to that people of the free, whose fortunes and progress are the most noble theme which man can contemplate.

Besides the ignorance of masters who teach the first rudiments of reading, and the want of skill, or negligence in that article, of those who teach the learned languages; besides the erroneous

manner, which the untutored pupil falls into, through the want of early attention in masters, to correct small faults in the beginning, which increase and gain strength with years; besides bad habits contracted from imitation of particular persons, or the contagion of example; from a general prevalence of a certain tone or cant in reading or reciting, peculiar to each school, and regularly transmitted from one generation to another: besides all these, which are fruitful sources of vicious elocution; there is one fundamental error in the method universally used in teaching to read, which at first gives a wrong bias, and leads us ever after blindfold from the right path, under the guidance of a false rule.

From the worm that grovels in the dust beneath our feet, to the track of the leviathan in the foaming deep; from the moth that corrupts the secret treasure, to the eagle that soars above his eyry in the clouds; from the wild ass in the desert, to the lamb within the shepherd's fold; from the consuming beast, to the cattle upon a thousand hills; from the rose of Sharon, to the cedar of Lebanon; from the crystal stream, gushing forth out of the flinty rock, to the wide waters of the deluge; from the lonely path of the wanderer, to the gathering of a mighty multitude; from the tear that falls in secret, to the din of battle, and the shout of a triumphant host; from the solitary in the wilderness, to the satrap on the throne; from the mourner clad in sackcloth, to the prince in purple robes; from the gnawings of the worm that dieth not, to the seraphic visions of the blest; from the still small voice, to the thunders of Omnipotence; from the depths of hell, to the regions of eternal glory; there is no degree of beauty or deformity, no tendency to good or evil, no shade of darkness nor gleam of light, which does not come within the cognizance of the holy Scriptures.

Our immense extent of fertile territory opening an inexhaustible field for successful enterprise, thus assuring to industry a certain reward for its labors, and preserving the land, for centuries to come, from the manifold evils of an over-crowded, and consequently degraded population; our magnificent system of federated republics, carrying out and applying the principles of representative democracy to an extent never hoped or imagined in the boldest theories of the old speculative republican philosophers, the Harringtons, Sydneys, and Lockes of former times; the reaction of our political system upon our social and domestic concerns, bringing the influence of popular feeling and public opinion to bear upon all the affairs of life in a degree hitherto wholly unprecedented; the unconstrained range of freedom of opinion, of speech, and of the press, and the habitual and daring exercise of that liberty upon the highest subjects; the absence of all serious inequality of fortune and rank in the condition of our citizens; our divisions into innu-

merable religious sects, and the consequent co-existence, never before regarded as possible, of intense religious zeal, with a great degree of toleration in feeling and perfect equality of rights; our intimate connection with that elder world beyond the Atlantic, communicating to us, through the press and emigration, much of good and much of evil not our own, high science, refined art, and the best knowledge of old experience, as well as prejudices and luxuries, vices and crimes, such as could not have been expected to spring up in our soil for ages;—all these, combined with numerous other peculiarities in the institutions and in the moral, civil and social condition of the American people, have given to our society, through all its relations, a character exclusively its own.

The sick untended then′,
Languished in the dark shade, and died afar from men.

In man or woman′, but far most in man′,
And most of all in man that ministers
And serves the altar′, in my soul I loathe
All affectation.

All night the dreadless angel, unpursued,
Through heaven's wide champaign held his way, till morn,
Waked by the circling hours, with rosy hand
Unbarred the gates of light.

He that attends to his interior self,
That has a heart and keeps it, has a mind
That hungers, and supplies it, and who seeks
A social, not a dissipated life,
Has business.

Through the night
Of years, the steps of virtue she shall trace,
And show the earlier ages, where her sight
Can pierce the eternal shadows o'er her face.

Late, from this western shore, that morning chased
The deep and ancient night, that threw its shroud
O'er the green land of groves, the beautiful waste,
Nurse of full streams, and lifter up of proud
Sky-mingling mountains that o'erlook the cloud.

Upon the hill
The tall old maples, verdant still,
Yet tell, in grandeur of decay
How swift the years have passed away,
Since first, a child and half afraid,
I wandered in the forest shade.
This little rill that, from the springs

Of yonder grove, its current brings,
Plays on the slope awhile, and then
Goes prattling into groves again,
Oft to its warbling waters drew
My little feet.

To the reverent throng′,
Grave and time wrinkled men, with locks all white,
Gave laws, and judged their strifes, and taught the way of right
Till bolder spirits seized the rule and nailed
On men the yoke, that man should never bear′,
And drove them forth to battle.

Then all this youthful paradise around′,
And all the broad and boundless mainland′, lay
Cooled by the interminable wood that frowned
O'er mount and vale, where never summer ray
Glanced, till the strong tornado broke his way
Through the gay giants of the sylvan wild.

His simple heart
Might not resist the sacred influences′,
Which, from the stilly twilight of the place′,
And from the gray old trunks that high in heaven
Mingled their mossy boughs, and from the sound
Of the invisible breath that swayed at once
All their green tops, stole over him, and bowed
His spirit with the thought of boundless power
And inaccessible majesty.

His native hills that rise in happier climes′,
The grot that heard his song of other times′,
His cottage-home′, his bark of slender sail′,
His glassy lake′, and broomwood-blossomed vail′,
Rush on his thoughts.

Each ray, that shone, in early time, to light
The faltering footstep in the path of right′;
Each gleam of clearer brightness shed to aid
In man's maturer day his bolder sight′;
(All blended, like the rainbow's radiant braid′;)
Pour yet, and still shall pour, the blaze that cannot fade.

Whatever fruits in different climes are found
That proudly rise, or humbly court the ground;
Whatever blooms in torrid tracts appear,
Whose bright succession decks the varied year;
Whatever sweets salute the northern sky

With vernal lines that blossom but to die;—
These, here disporting, own a kindred soil,
Nor ask luxuriance from the planter's toil.
The hills
Rock-ribbed, and ancient as the sun, the vales
Stretching in pensive quietness between,
The venerable woods, rivers that move
In majesty, and the complaining brooks
That make the meadows green, and, poured round all,
Old Ocean's gray and melancholy waste,
Are but the solemn decorations all
Of the great tomb of man.

This royal throne of kings; this sceptred isle;
This earth of majesty; this seat of Mars;
This other Eden, demi-paradise;
This fortress, built by nature for herself,
Against infection, and the hand of war;
This precious stone, set in the silver sea,
Which serves it in the office of a wall,
Or as a moat defensive to a house,
Against the envy of less happy lands;
This blessed plot; this earth; this realm; this England;
This nurse; this teeming womb of Royal Kings,
Feared by their breed, and famous by their birth;
Renowned for their deeds, as far from home
As is the sepulchre, in stubborn Jewry,
Of the world's ransom, blessed Mary's son:
This land of such dear souls; this dear, dear land;
Dear for her reputation, through the world;
Is now leased out, (I die pronouncing it,)
Like to a tenement or paltry farm.

EXCEPTION. I have the same remark to make here that I made under Rule first; namely, that indirect interrogatives, and parts of compacts, both single and double, in consequence of incorrect punctuation, are often mistaken for compound close declaratives: *e. g.*

You could not foresee the reception you met with.—No.
Father, give me the portion of goods that falleth to me.
It is surely excessively extraordinary that she should have alarmed me so much about your health, and sent me such precise instructions to take care of it.

The *mind* may improve′, may enlarge its stores of information and strengthen its powers, after a certain age′. The body having reached its maturity, falls inevitably into decay.

I *admit* that the evidence of this man's guilt must insure his condemnation'. Yet we are to consider, and consider well, what we shall do with him after condemnation.

I am not the advocate of indolence and improvidence'. But I pity the poor who have become poor in consequence of disasters they could not avert.

We should not bestow our faculties on a multitude of small and unimportant affairs'. This is to waste them without benefit to ourselves or mankind'. We should employ them in the pursuit of some one great and good end.

The first three of these examples are indirect interrogatives: one of each kind. The succeeding three are single compacts; the parts of which should be separated by the comma, except in the first of these; which, having both correlative words understood, may receive the semicolon. (*See Punct. of Single Compact.*) The last example is a double compact, with the first, second and third proposition expressed.

2. COMPACT SENTENCES.

1. *Single Compact.*

RULE VII. The first part of a single compact sentence, and all the members of the first part, should it comprise more than one, terminate with the bend: the second part, if it comprise but one member, must terminate with perfect close; but if it comprise two or more members, the series must be delivered like an imperfect loose sentence. (*See Imperfect Loose below, and Plate, Fig.* 10.)

The first part, and the members of the first part, should there be any, may be either simple or compound; and if compound, either close or compact: the second part, and also the members of the second part, in addition to this variety of construction, may be also either perfect or imperfect loose: and hence the generality of the rule. It refers only to the termination of parts, or members of parts. The delivery of the intermediate portion of these, depends on their construction: if simple declaratives, they should be delivered like simple declaratives, in conformity with Rule I: if close, like close: if compact, like compact: if loose, like loose.

I have said in the rule above, that "the first part of a single compact, and all the members of the first part, should it comprise more than one, terminate with the bend." The following cases may be regarded as exceptions to this.

1. If two compact sentences with the same correlative words immediately succeed each other, the first part of each, being in contrast with that of the other, the second first part, instead of being terminated with the bend, according to the rule, ends with partial close: *e.g.*

[His style is always beautiful.] If clear', you are pleased with him. If he is obscure', you are pleased with him.

2. If the same compact sentence comprise two similar members in the first part in contrast, the second of these members is delivered with partial close: *e.g.*

If a good man has injured you', if a bad man has injured you', it is all the same': you must forgive.

3. If the last member of a series in the first part, contain an intensive particle, it should terminate with partial close: *e.g.*

If they have wealth', if they have even a competency', then, many think, they could be happy.

Though they lost the esteem of the world', though their nearest and dearest relatives forsook them', nay, though even the sanc-

tity of life itself was invaded', yet they held to their faith unshaken: met all: endured all.

4. The last member of a series in the first part, though it contain neither contrast nor intensive particles, may yet, for the sake of varying the delivery, be made to terminate with partial close. Of this I need give no example, since the experiment may be made with any of the examples of a series, which follow under the general rule. (*The delivery here recommended, conforms to the representation, Plate, Fig.* 14, *c.*)

5. When the first part, with or without a series of members, begins with the word *suppose* in the imperative, it terminates with partial close. In this case, however, the second part almost uniformly comprises an interrogative: in other words, the first and second part together form a semi-interrogative. (*See Rule XVIII, Note.*)

Examples.

1st FORM: with both the correlative words expressed.

As it was then', so is it now.

As ye have received Christ', so walk ye in him.

As in Adam all die', so in Christ shall all be made alive.

As soon as he sees what he never saw before', so soon does he feel what he never felt before.

As the lightning that lighteneth out of the one part under heaven, shineth unto the other part under heaven', so shall the Son of Man be in his day.

As in private character adversity is often requisite to give a proper direction and temper to strong qualities', so the noblest traits of a national character, even under the freest and most independent of hereditary governments, are commonly to be sought in the ranks of a minority, or of a dissenting sect.

As the admirer of painting is most offended with the scrawls of a dauber', as the enthusiast in music is the most hurt with the discords of an ill-played instrument', so the lover of mankind, as his own sense of virtue has painted them, when he comes abroad into life and sees what they really are, feels the disappointment in the severest manner.

As the middle, and the fairest, and the most conspicuous places in cities, are usually chosen for the erection of statues and monuments, dedicated to the memory of worthy men who have nobly deserved of their country'; so should we in the heart and centre of our soul, in the best and highest apartment thereof, in the places most exposed to ordinary observation, and most secure from worldly care, erect lively representations, and lasting memorials of divine bounty.

As a covetous man, whatever besides he is doing, will be carking about his bags and treasure', an ambitious man will be devising his plots and projects', a voluptuous man will have his mind on his dishes', a lascivious man will be doting on his amours', a studious man will be musing on his notions', every man according to his particular inclination, will lard his business and besprinkle all his

actions with cares and wishes tending to the enjoyment of what he most esteems and affects′; so may a good Christian, through all his undertakings, wind in devout reflections, and pious motions of soul toward the chief object of his mind and affection.

As no cause
For such exalted confidence could e'er
Exist′, so none is now for fixed despair.

As men from men
Do, in the constitution of their souls,
Differ by mysteries not to be explained′;
And as we fall by various ways, and sink
Through manifold degrees to guilt and shame′;
So manifold and various are the ways
Of restoration.

As one who long in thickets and in brakes
Entangled, winds now this way and now that,
His devious course uncertain, seeking home′;
Or having long in miry ways been foiled,
And sore discomfited, from slough to slough
Plunging, and half despairing of escape′;
If chance at length he find a greensward smooth
And faithful to the foot, his spirits rise,
He cheerups brisk his ear-erecting steed,
And winds his way with pleasure and with ease′;
So I, designing other themes, and called
To adorn the sofa with eulogium due,
To tell its slumbers, and to paint its dreams,
Have rambled wide.

As when a traveller, a long day past
In painful search of what he cannot find,
At night's approach, content with the next cot,
There ruminates, awhile, his labor lost,
Then cheers his heart with what his fate affords,
And chants a sonnet to deceive the time,
Till the due season calls him to repose;
Thus I, long travelled in the ways of men,
And dancing, with the rest, the giddy maze,
Where disappointment smiles at hope's career;
Warned by the languor of life's evening ray,
At length have housed me in an humble shed;
Where future wandering banished from my thought,
And waiting, patient, the sweet hour of rest,
I chase the moments with a serious song.

Because sentence against an evil work is not executed speedily', therefore the heart of the sons of men is fully set in them to do evil.

Because he saw his head higher, his arms stronger, his sword and spear larger, his shield heavier than any Israelite's, therefore he defies the whole host.

For that [because] they hated knowledge, and did not choose the fear of the Lord, they would none of my counsel, they despised all my reproof, therefore shall they eat of the fruit of their own way, and be filled with their own devices.

Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life.

Profit is therefore so much affected and pursued, because it is, or doth seem, apt to procure or promote some good desirable to us.

The gain of money, or of something equivalent, is therefore specially termed profit in the language of men', because it readily supplies necessity'; furnishes convenience'; feeds pleasure'; satisfies fancy and curiosity'; promotes ease and liberty'; supports honor and dignity'; procures power, dependencies and friendships'; renders a man somewhat considerable in the world'; and, in fine, enables one to do good.

Because I eat and drink without luxury, banishing all foreign superfluity; because I dress myself in a way at once comfortable, and pleasing to the eye; because I reinstate the manly beard in its lost honor; because I withstand the privileges and prejudices of my class, and would pass for no more than I am worth; because I believe that I have not stained myself by marriage with a maiden of lower and unhonorable descent; because I will not establish my character by a duel, or bear about the insignia of real or feigned services, as a show upon my breast; because I make my slaves my free companions and friends; because I forswear deceit, and assert the truth without fear; therefore am I treated in the nineteenth century as a fool.

Whereas a treaty of cession was concluded at Washington city, in the District of Columbia, by James Barbour, Secretary of War, of the one part, and John Stidman and others, of the other part, and which treaty bears date the twenty-fourth day of January, one thousand eight hundred and twenty-six'; and whereas the object of said treaty being to embrace a cession, by the Creek nation, of all the lands owned by them within the chartered limits of Georgia, and it having been the opinion of the parties, at the time when the said treaty was concluded, that all, or nearly all of said lands were embraced in said cession, and by the lines as defined in said treaty, and the supplemental article thereto'; and whereas it having been since ascertained that the said lines in said treaty, and the supplement thereto, do not embrace all the lands owned by the Creek nation within the chartered limits of Georgia, and the President of

the United States having urged the Creek nation further to extend the limits as defined in the treaty aforesaid, and the chiefs and head men of the Creek nation being desirous of complying with the wish of the President of the United States′; therefore, they, the chiefs and head men aforesaid, agree to cede, and they do hereby cede, to the United States, all the remaining lands now owned or claimed by the Creek nation, not heretofore ceded, and found, on actual survey, to lie within the chartered limits of the State of Georgia.

Either the mere will of the magistrate′, or the conscience of the individual must decide in the case.

Either he will hate the one and love the other′, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other.

He either thought the action so near to indifferent that he forgot it, or so laudable that he expected his friend to approve it.

Neither hath this man sinned, nor his parents.

Neither could he obtain the benefits which he so earnestly desired, and diligently sought, nor avert the calamities which he so greatly feared.

If he′, then I.

If he confessed it′, then forgive him.

If there be no resurrection of the dead′, then is Christ not risen.

If Christ be not risen′, then is our preaching vain; and your faith is also vain.

If, in the wanton exercise of this right, we capriciously reject the old and faithful servant, whose services have an equal claim on our admiration and gratitude, then we are tyrants.

If through female encouragement and example, the spirit of this age is to be purified from folly′, if it is to be elevated and adorned by excellence, then women must be sincerely and practically religious.

My son, if thou wilt receive my words, and hide my commandments with thee, so that thou incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart unto understanding′; yea, if thou criest after knowledge, and liftest up thy voice after understanding′; if thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasure′; then shalt thou understand the fear of the Lord, and find the knowledge of God.

If pleasure, unmixed with forecastings of retributive bitterness, is sought; if the body is to be recruited after the exhaustion of disease; if the wounded spirit is to be healed after the anguish of privation, or the agony of misfortune; nay,* if there be any hope

---

* Not only so, but if, &c. (*See Classification*, *Simple Declarative*, Yes *and* No, *Double Comp.*, *Gen. Note and Rule VIII*, 3.)

that reason shall resume her power after the pressure of the mind has been more than its strength; then, the joy that bringeth no sorrow, the medicine for the disease, the balm for the wounded spirit, the asylum for the wandering mind, are found nowhere but in the sunny glades, the green canopies, and the life-imparting breezes of nature.

If indeed we desire to behold a literature like that which has sculptured with such energy of expression, which has painted so faithfully and vividly, the crimes, the vices, the follies of ancient and modern Europe; if we desire that our land should furnish for the orator and the novelist, for the painter and the poet, age after age, the wild and romantic scenery of war; the glittering march of armies and the revelry of the camp; the shrieks and blasphemies, and all the horrors of the battle-field; the desolations of the harvest and the burning cottage; the storm, the sack, and the ruin of cities: if we desire to unchain the furious passions of jealousy and selfishness, of hatred, revenge, and ambition, those lions that now sleep harmless in their den; if we desire that the lake, the river, the ocean, should blush with the blood of brothers; that the winds should waft from the land to the sea, from the sea to the land, the roar and smoke of battle; that the very mountain-tops should become altars for the sacrifice of brothers: if we desire that these, and such as these, (the elements to an incredible extent of the literature of the old world,) should be the elements of our literature; then, but then only, let us hurl from its pedestal the majestic statue of our union, and scatter its fragments over all our land.

If haply, from his guarded breast,
Did steal the unsuspected sigh;
And memory, an unbidden guest,
With former passions filled his eye′;
Then, pious hope and duty praised
The wisdom of the unerring sway;
And while his eye to heaven he raised,
Its silent waters sunk away.

If the midnight bell
Did, with his iron tongue and brazen mouth,
Sound one unto the drowsy race of night′;
If this same were a churchyard where we stand,
And thou possessed with a thousand wrongs′;
Or if that surly spirit, melancholy,
Had baked thy blood and made it heavy, thick′;
Or if that thou couldst see me without eyes,
Hear me without thine ears, and make reply

Without a tongue ; using conceit alone,
Without eyes, ears, and harmful sound of words′ :
Then, in despite of brooded, watchful day,
I would into thy bosom pour my thoughts.

Yes, indeed′, but not now.
The spirit, indeed, is willing′, but the flesh is weak.
Bourdaloue is, indeed, a great reasoner′, but his style is verbose.
The harvest truly is plenteous, but the laborers are few.

Innocence, indeed, possessed my heart′, but it was innocence unguarded and intoxicated with foolish desires and liable to temptation.

Ye shall, indeed, drink of my cup, and be baptized with the baptism that I am baptized with, but to sit on my right hand and on my left is not mine to give.

I would not, indeed, undertake to maintain that no one can be an orator who is not a virtuous man, but there certainly is a kind of moral excellence implied in a renunciation of all effort after display, in a forgetfulness of self, which is absolutely necessary, both in the manner of writing and in the delivery, to give the full force to what is said.

Theirs is, indeed,
A teaching voice′, but 'tis the praise of them,
That whom it teaches, it makes prompt to learn,
And, with the boon, gives talents for its use.

The mind, indeed, enlightened from above,
Views him in all, ascribes to the grand cause
The grand effect, acknowledges with joy
His manner, and with rapture tastes his style′ ;
But never yet did philosophic tube,
That brings the planets home into the eye
Of observation, and discovers, else
Not visible, his family of worlds,
Discover him that rules them.

Rather he′, than I.
Rather be good′, than seem to be.
I had rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God, than dwell in the tents of wickedness.

He chose rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season.

In the Church I had rather speak five words with my understanding, that by my voice I might teach others also, than ten thousand words in an unknown tongue.

Than prefer the temporal to the eternal with its happiness and glory, than give up the joy I find in religion, than forsake God

who has hitherto crowned my life with loving-kindness and tender mercy, and consequently who has deserved at my hands nothing but veneration, gratitude and love ; I would rather die.

Greater is he that prophesieth, than he that speaketh with tongues.

It is better to trust in the Lord, than to put confidence in princes.

Of greater uncharitableness we cannot be guilty, than to interpret the afflictions that befall our neighbors, as punishments and judgments.

It had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.

Though deep′, yet clear.

Though he slay me′, yet will I trust in him.

Though Samson's hair was shorter′, yet he knew God's hand was not.

Yet he said not a word of the angels′, though it was the invariable custom to do so on St. Michael's day.

Although it is not true that this man intended to take the life of his neighbor, yet it cannot be denied that he was the cause of his death.

Though the bare word of an offender can never be taken against the oath of his accuser, yet it must be acknowledged that the matter of his defence was sufficiently pertinent to obtain his acquittal.

Although the fig-tree shall not blossom, neither shall fruit be in the vines′; the labor of the olive shall fail, and the fields shall yield no meat′; the flock shall be cut off from the fold, and there shall be no herd in the stalls′; yet I will rejoice in the Lord: I will joy in the God of my salvation.

Though I bewail
This triumph′, yet the pity of my heart
Prevents me not from owning that the law
By which mankind now suffers, is most just.

Though from the world and worldly care
My wearied mind I mean to free′;
Yet every hour that heaven can spare,
My Armine, I devote to thee.

Though thy wild heart some hapless hour may miss
The peaceful tenor of unvarying bliss′,
Yet still may hope her talisman employ
To snatch from heaven anticipated joy.

Though dull the close of life, and far away
Each flower that hailed the dawning of the day′;

Yet o'er her lonely hopes that once were dear,
The time-taught spirit, pensive, not severe,
With milder griefs her aged eye shall fill,
And weep their falsehood, while she loves them still.

When you hear this′, then fly.

When this shall have occurred, then be assured their ruin is at hand.

When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, standing in the holy place′, then let them who are in Judea flee into the mountains.

When your fear cometh as desolation, and your destruction cometh as a whirlwind′; when distress and anguish cometh upon you′; then shall they call upon me, but I will not answer: they shall seek me early, but they shall not find me.

When you hear a man making any exceptions to any fundamental law of duty in favor of some particular pursuit or passion, and considering the dictates of *honor* as neither more nor less than as motives of selfish prudence in respect to character, in other words, as conventional and ever-changing regulations, the breach of which will, if detected, *blackball* the offender, and send him to Coventry in that particular rank and class of society of which he was born or has become a member′; when, instead of giving instantaneous and unconditional obedience to the original voice from within, a man substitutes for this, and listens after, the mere echo of the voice from without′; then I say, that to smile, or show yourself *smiling-angry*, as if a tap with your fan was a sufficient punishment, and a "for shame! you don't think so, I am sure," or, "you should not *say* so," a sufficient reproof, would be an ominous symptom either of your own laxity of moral principle and deadness to true honor and the unspeakable *contemptibleness* of this gentlemanly counterfeit of it′, or of your abandonment to a blind passion kindled by superficial advantages and outside agreeables, and blown and fueled by that most base and yet frequent thought, "one must not be over-nice, or a woman may say no, till no one asks her to say yes."

When any fresh, any rare, any remarkable benefit happens to us′; when prosperity attends our honest endeavors′; when unexpected favors fall, as it were, of their own accord into our bosoms, like the grain in the golden age, springing, without our care or our toil, for our use and enjoyment′; when we are delivered from straits, in our apprehension, inextricable′, surmount difficulties seeming insuperable′, escape hazards apparently inevitable′; when we revolve in our minds the favorable passages of Providence, that in the whole course of our lives have befallen

us′; how in our extreme poverty and distress, God has raised up friends who have commiserated, comforted and succored us, and changed our sorrowful condition into a state of joy′; has turned our mourning into dancing′; has put off our sackcloth and girded us with gladness′; has considered our troubles and known our soul in adversity′; has set our feet in a large room and furnished us with plentiful means of subsistence′: how in the various changes and adventures and travels of our life, upon sea and land, at home and abroad, among friends and strangers and enemies, he has protected us from wants and dangers′; from devouring disease, and the distemperature of infectious air′; from the assaults of bloody thieves and barbarous pirates′; from the rage of fire and the fury of tempests′; from disastrous casualties′; from treacherous surprises′; from open mischiefs that with dreadful force approached and threatened our destruction′: when the ordinary effects of divine providence do, in any advantageous manner, present themselves to our view′; when we peruse the volumes of story, and therein observe the various events of human actions′; especially the seasonable rewards of virtue, the noticeable protections and deliverances of innocence, and the unexpected punishments of malicious wickedness′; when we contemplate the wonderful works of nature, and, walking about at our leisure, gaze upon this ample theatre of the world, considering the stately beauty, constant order, and sumptuous furniture thereof′; the glorious splendor, and uniform motion of the heavens′; the pleasant fertility of the earth′; the curious figure and fragrant sweets of plants′; the exquisite frame of animals′; and all the amazing miracles of nature, wherein the glorious attributes of God are most conspicuously displayed′; then should we admire, exult and celebrate: then should our hearts be filled with gratitude and our lips break forth in praise.

When Babel was confounded, and the great
Confederacy of projectors, wild and vain,
Was split into diversity of tongues′;
Then, as a shepherd separates his flock,
These to the upland, to the valley those,
God drave asunder, and assigned their lot,
To all the nations.

While we are deeply moved at the awful spectacle of majesty laboring under a permanent and hopeless eclipse′, then we are consoled with the reflection that he walked in the light while he possessed the light.

While we were engaged in the fearful struggle which has been at length so successfully terminated′, then it pleased the great Ruler

of nations to visit our aged, beloved and revered monarch with one of the most dreadful calamities incident to human nature.

Even while his mother, during her last illness, was obliged to accept of money from her physician, because she could not obtain payment of her jointure; and while, after her decease, his two sisters were dunning him, every day, without effect, for the small annuity left them by their father, then, even then, he was called a good-hearted man by three-fourths of his acquaintance.

Where I am′, there shall also my servant be.

Where the Spirit of the Lord is′, there is liberty.

Where the carcass is′, there will the eagles be gathered together.

For where two or three are gathered together in my name′, there am I in the midst of them.

Where you see a man meeting obstacles and removing them, struggling with difficulties and overcoming them, and still pressing forward under every discouragement, self-denying and self-relying; there you see a man who will probably rise in the world.

Wheresoever there is faith in God, there God abides.

Wheresoever God is, there is awakened a zeal which urges and constrains men to perform good works.

Where the olive leaves were twinkling in every wind that blew′,
There sat beneath the pleasant shade a damsel of Peru.

There is a cave,
Within the mount of God, fast by his throne′,
Where light and darkness in perpetual round
Lodge and dislodge by turns.

There is not a people on earth so abject′, as to think that national courtesy requires them to hush up the tale of the glorious exploits of their fathers and countrymen.

He was so filled with the desire of wealth′, so engrossed by the cares of business′, and, in a word, so lost to all other considerations than those of money′, that the moral and intellectual welfare of his children were entirely forgotten.

2d FORM: with one of the correlative words expressed.

As the South American states have thus won an honorable station among independent states′, it becomes our imperative duty to treat them as such.

As his excessive good-nature makes him take vast delight in the office′, his great penetration into the human mind, joined to his great experience, renders him a wonderful proficient in it.

As the authors of this race were more desirous, perhaps, of being admired than understood′, they sometimes drew their conceits from

recesses of learning not very much frequented by common readers of poetry.

As the right to use the means of happiness which God has given him in such manner as he will, provided he do not violate the corresponding rights of others, is conferred upon the individual by the Creator′, it is manifest that no being but the Creator can restrict it.

As it is impossible for us to conceive either how numerous, or how important may be our relations to other creatures in another state, or how much more intimate may be the relations in which we shall stand to our Creator′; and as there can be no limit conceived to our power of comprehending these relations, nor to our power of becoming conscious of the obligations they involve′; it is manifest that no limit can be conceived to the progress of man's capacity for virtue.

He was not worthy of death, inasmuch as he hated him not in time past.

Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me.

Inasmuch as I have an exclusive right to appropriate innocently, the possessions I have acquired by the means stated above; and inasmuch as every other man has the same right; we may, if we choose, voluntarily exchange our right to particular things with each other.

Forasmuch as many have taken in hand to set forth in order a declaration of those things which are most surely believed among us, even as they delivered them unto us, who, from the beginning, were eye-witnesses and ministers of the word; it seemed good to me also, having had perfect understanding of all things from the very first, to write unto thee, in order, most excellent Theophilus, that thou mightest know the certainty of those things wherein thou hast been instructed.

Because I live, ye shall live also.

The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling.

Because I tell you the truth, ye believe me not.

We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren.

Because some men have suddenly become rich by some happy accident of fortune, without labor′; because others have been brought, by an extraordinary combination of circumstances, unexpectedly into popular notice and esteem′, and yet others have risen to eminence without showing the successive steps by which they attained it′; many foolishly imagine that advancement goes by destiny; and so they waste their lives in indulging, idly, expectations which can end only in bitter disappointment.

Because this is a time of peace; because there is a perfect calm,

except so far as an agitation among the principal manufacturers may interrupt it; because you are not subject to any coercion whatever; I entreat you to bear in mind that the aspect of affairs may change: that we may have to contend with worse harvests than that of this year: that it may be wise to avail ourselves of the present moment to effect an adjustment which, I believe, must ultimately be made; and which could not be long delayed without engendering feelings of animosity between different classes of her Majesty's subjects.

Raphael, said he, thou hearest what stir on earth
Satan, from hell 'scaped through the darksome gulf,
Hath raised in Paradise; and how disturbed
This night the human pair; how he designs
In them at once to ruin all mankind:
Go, therefore, half this day, as friend with friend,
Converse with Adam, in what lower shade
Thou findest him from the heat of noon retired,
To respite his day-labor with repast
Or with repose.

You may skim the surface of science', or fathom its depths.

You may become florid declaimers', or cloud-compelling reasoners.

Genius, intellect, imagination, taste and sensibility, must be baptized into religion'; or they will never know, and never make known their real glory and immortal power.

You may, if you please, become literary fops and dandies, and acquire the affected lisp and drawling nonchalance of the London cockney; or you may learn to wield the herculean club of Doctor Johnson.

It will be a blessing of inestimable value to the human family of every clime from the frozen regions of the north to the sunny and luxuriant slopes of the south, from the rising sun to its setting, quite round the globe; or a disappointment of all aspirations after something nobler and purer; something better adapted to human nature, its circumstances, wants and tendencies, than the miserable apologies for governments which now exist throughout the world.

If any man love the world', the love of the Father is not in him.

If we say we have no sin', we deceive ourselves and the truth is not in us.

If we confess our sins', he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

If, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the

death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.

If the spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead, shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his spirit that dwelleth in you.

If we are true to our country, in our day and generation, and those who come after us shall be true to it also; assuredly, assuredly we shall elevate her to a pitch of prosperity and happiness, of honor and power, never yet reached by any nation beneath the sun.

Had our forefathers failed on that day of trial which we now celebrate′; had their votes and their resolves ended in the breath in which they began′; had the rebels laid down their arms as they were commanded, and the military stores which had been frugally treasured up for the crisis, been, without resistance, destroyed′; then the Revolution had been at an end; or rather it had never been begun.

If we entered the world with the same reason which we carry with us to an *opera*, the first time we enter a theatre; and if the curtain of the universe, if I may so term it, were to be rapidly drawn up; struck with the grandeur of every thing which we saw, and all the obvious contrivances exhibited, we should not be capable of refusing our homage to the Eternal Power which had prepared for us such a spectacle.

Were there indeed but reason enough to stir or stagger the infidel; were it somewhat dubious, which is far from being the case, whether punishments are reserved for impiety; were there but any small reason for a judgment to come, as there are apparently very many and great ones; had most men conspired in denying Providence, as ever generally they have consented in avowing it; were there a pretence of miracles for establishing the mortality and impunity of souls, as there have been numberless strongly testified by good witnesses and great events, to confirm the opposite doctrine; did most wise and sober men judge in favor of irreligion, as commonly they ever did, and still do, otherwise; yet wisdom would require that men should choose to be pious; since otherwise no man can be thoroughly secure.

If a multitude of parts, all manifestly relating to each other, and producing a result, which itself has as manifest a relation to the results of other proportions, cannot be observed by us without an irresistible impression of design; if it is impossible for us to conceive, that nine millions of alphabetical characters could fall of themselves into a treatise or a poem; that all the pictures, I will not say in the whole world, but even the few which are to be found in a single gallery, were the product of colors, thrown at random

from a brush upon canvas; that a city with all its distinct houses, and all the distinct apartments in those houses, and all the implements of domestic use which those apartments contain, could not have existed without some designing mind, and without some hands that fashioned the stone and the wood, and performed all the other operations necessary for erecting and adorning the different edifices: if it be easier for us to believe, that our senses deceived us in exhibiting to us such a city, and that there was truly nothing seen by us, than to believe that the houses existed of themselves, without any contrivance; the only question, as I have already said, is, whether the universe exhibit such combination of parts relating to each other as the poem, the picture, the city, or any other object for which we find it necessary to have recourse to designing skill.

If self must be denied,
And sin forsaken quite′;
They rather choose the way that's wide,
And strive to think it right.

If your ears refuse
The language of his grace′;
And hearts grow hard like stubborn Jews,
That unbelieving race′;
The Lord, in vengeance drest,
Will lift his hand and swear,
"Ye that despise my promised rest,
Shall have no portion there."

Had it pleased Heaven
To try me with affliction; had he rained
All kinds of sores, and shames, on my bare head;
Steeped me in poverty to the very lips;
Given to captivity me and my utmost hopes:
I should have found in some part of my soul
A drop of patience.

If servility, with supple knees
Whose trade it is to smile, to crouch, to please;
If smooth dissimulation, skilled to grace
A devil's purpose with an angel's face;
If smiling peeresses, and simpering peers
Encompassing his throne a few short years;
If the gilt carriage and the pampered steed
That wants no driving, and disdains the lead;
If guards, mechanically formed in ranks,
Playing, at beat of drum, their martial pranks,

Should'ring and standing as if struck to stone,
While condescending majesty looks on;
If monarchy consist in such base things;
Sighing, I say again, I pity kings.

I go′, but I return.
Well′, but he fled.
Yes′, but with hesitation.
What you say is true′, but not at all to the point.

You may starve me′, but you can never compel me to do what you ask.

You may have a large share of these and other estimable principles′, but along with these many things, you may lack one thing‵; and that one thing is the love of God.

You may try to darken and transform this piece of casuistry as you will, and work up your own minds into the peaceable conviction that it is all right, and as it should be; but be very certain that where the moral sense of your domestic is not already overthrown, there is, at least, one bosom within which you have raised a war of doubts and difficulties.

He may be feelingly alive to the beauties of what is seen and what is sensible; the scenery of external nature may charm him; the sublimities of a surrounding materialism may kindle and dilate him with images of grandeur; even the moralities of a fellow-creature may engage him, and, with works of genius, may fascinate him into an idolatrous devotion of human power or human virtue; but while he thus luxuriates and delights himself with the forms of derived excellence, there is no sensibility of his heart toward God.

Jurists may be permitted with comparative safety to pile tome upon tome of interminable disquisition upon the motives, reasons and causes of just and unjust war; metaphysicians may be suffered with impunity to spin the thread of their speculations until it is attenuated to a cobweb; but for a body created for the government of a great nation, and for the adjustment and protection of its infinitely diversified interests, it is worse than folly to speculate on the causes of war until the great question shall be presented for immediate action.

O it is excellent
To have a giant's strength′, but 'tis tyrannous
To use it like a giant.

Nature inanimate employs sweet sounds′,
But animated nature sweeter still,
To soothe and satisfy the human ear.

It is a fearful thing
To stand upon the beetling verge, and see

Where storms and lightning, from that huge gray wall,
Have tumbled down vast blocks, and at the base
Dashed them in fragments, and to lay thine ear
Over the dizzy depth, and hear the sound
Of winds, that struggle with the woods below,
Come up like ocean murmurs′; but the scene
Is lovely round; a beautiful river there
Wanders amid the fresh and fertile meads:
The paradise he made unto himself;
Mining the soil of ages.

Philosophy, indeed, on Grecian eyes
Had poured the day, and cleared the Roman skies;
In other climes, perhaps, creative art,
With power surpassing theirs, performed her part;
Might give more life to marble, or might fill
The glowing tablets with a juster skill;
Might shine in fable, and grace idle themes
With all the embroidery of poetic dreams:
'Twas theirs alone to dive into the plan
That truth and mercy had revealed to man.

Sweet is the breath of morn, her rising sweet,
With charm of earliest birds; pleasant the sun,
When first on this delightful land he speeds
His orient beams on herb, tree, fruit, and flower,
Glistering with dew; fragrant the fertile earth
After soft showers; and sweet the coming on
Of grateful evening mild; then silent night
With this her solemn bird, and this fair moon,
And these the gems of heaven, her starry train;
But neither breath of morn when she ascends
With charm of earliest birds, nor rising sun
On this delightful land, nor herb, fruit, flower
Glistering with dew, nor fragrance after showers,
Nor grateful evening mild, nor silent night
With this her solemn bird, nor walk by moon
Or glittering starlight, without thee, *is* sweet.

Though hotly pursued′, he escaped.

Though they soon discovered their mistake, the mischief was done.

Though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel unto you than that we *have* preached unto you′, let him be accursed.

In freedom, as in most things, the ancient nations made surprisingly near approaches to the truth′, yet for want of some one great principle or instrument, came utterly short of it in practice.

Some of them ventured boldly to sea, and possessed an aptitude for commerce, yet for want of the mariner's compass, they could not navigate distant oceans, but crept for ages along the shores of the Mediterranean.

Though I would most willingly have continued a gratified listener, my engagements to you, gentlemen of the Adelphic Union, require that I should trespass for a short time upon the patience of the audience, even at this late hour, with the utterance of some thoughts on that subject which, upon an anniversary like this, may be regarded as the only peculiarly appropriate topic of discourse.

Though the blood of a Wallace had failed to purchase freedom for his country, and the conquest of Scotland had added glory to the triumphs of an Edward; though the short-lived flame which burst from the enthusiasm of a Cromwell had served only to render still darker the succeeding political obscuration; though the vices of a Stuart had, like the pestilential soil of Egypt, produced their swarms of devouring locusts, gilded with titles of nobility; the battles of Saratoga, Monmouth and Yorktown, proclaimed in language not to be misunderstood, that all men are born equal; that the right to govern, must be based upon the will of the governed; and that, in this country, no distinctions can be tolerated, save those which flow from merit and ability.

Rightly is it said,
That man descends into the vale of years′;
Yet have I thought that we might also speak,
And not presumptuously, I trust, of age
As of a final eminence.

The gay will laugh
When thou art gone′; the solemn brood of care
Plod on, and each one as before will choose
His favorite phantom′; yet all these shall leave
Their mirth and their employment, and shall come
And make their bed with thee.

Though forced to drudge for the dregs of men
And scrawl strange words with the barbarous pen,
And mingle among the jostling crowd,
Where the sons of strife are subtle and loud;
I often come to this quiet place,
To breathe the airs that ruffle thy face
And gaze upon thee in silent dream.

Take the wings
Of the morning, and the Barcan desert pierce;
Or lose thyself in the continuous woods
Where rolls the Oregon, and hears no sound,

Save his own dashing; yet the dead are there;
And millions in those solitudes, since first
The flight of years began, have laid them down
In their last sleep.

Though you untie the winds and let them fight
Against the churches; though the yesty waves
Confound and swallow navigation up;
Though bladed corn be lodged, and trees blown down;
Though palaces and pyramids do slope
To their foundations; though the treasure
Of nature's germs do tumble all together
Even till destruction sicken; answer me
To what I ask you.

When he rose′, every sound was hushed.

When you look into the Bible′, you see holiness and purity its great characteristics.

When it speaks of God′, it represents him as the greatest and holiest being in the universe.

When it speaks of man′, it speaks of his primitive integrity with approbation, and of his subsequent apostacy and sinfulness, with pity and abhorrence.

When my spirit shall be wafted to a more friendly port′; when my shade shall have joined the bands of those martyred heroes who have shed their blood on the scaffold and in the field′; this is my hope.

When this mental disease, for so it may be called without a metaphor′, seizes irrecoverably upon the thoughts of the retiring, the sensitive and timid lover of books and meditation′, his capacity for useful exertion is ended′: he is thenceforward doomed to lead a life of fretful restlessness, alternated with querulous dejection.

When the great Earl of Chatham first made his appearance in the House of Commons, and began to astonish and transport the British Parliament and British nation by the boldness, the force and range of his thoughts, and the celestial fire and pathos of his eloquence; it is well known that the minister Walpole, and his brother Horace, from motives very easily understood, exerted all their wit, all their oratory, all their acquirements of every description, sustained and enforced by the unfeeling insolence of office, to heave a mountain on his gigantic genius, and hide it from the world.

When in this almost prodigal waste of life, we perceive that every being, from the puny insect which flutters in the evening ray, from the lichen which the eye can easily distinguish on the mouldering rock, from the fungus that springs up and reanimates the mass of

dead and decomposing substances; that every living form possesses a structure as perfect in its sphere, an organization sometimes as complex, always as truly and completely adapted to its purposes and modes of existence, as that of the most perfect animal: when we discover them all to be governed by laws as definite, as immutable, as those which regulate the planetary movements; great must be our admiration of the wisdom which has arranged, and the power which has perfected this stupendous fabric.

When, however, we consider the wonderful connection and interdependence of all knowledge, made more and more manifest by every day's advance in science, so as almost to prove by an accumulation of particular examples the sublime hypothesis of the old philosophy, "that by a circuit of deduction, all truth out of any truth may be concluded;" when we reflect how singularly adapted the various parts of knowledge are to the individual tastes and character of different men, so as to seize and draw them as with an irresistible mental magnetism to their several studies; we cannot, I think, doubt that all that is most valuable in science or literature, will find votaries among us, who, not content to make such studies the amusements of their leisure, or to devote a life of monastic gloom to their solitary worship, will make or find for them a fit application.

When he breathes his master-lay
Of Alloway's witch-haunted wall',
All passions in our frames of clay,
Come thronging at his call.

When the soft hand of sleep had closed the latch
On the tired household of corporal sense,
And fancy, keeping unreluctant watch,
Was free her choicest favors to dispense;
I saw in wondrous perspective displayed,
A landscape more august than happiest skill
Of pencil, ever clothed with light and shade.

When thoughts
Of the last bitter hour come like a blight
Over thy spirit, and sad images
Of the stern agony, and shroud and pall,
And breathless darkness, and the narrow house
Make thee to shudder and grow sick at heart;
Go forth, under the open sky, and list
To nature's teachings.

When to the common rest that crowns our days,
Called in the noon of life, the good man goes',
Or full of years, and ripe in wisdom lays

His silver temples in their last repose′ ;
When o'er the buds of youth, the death-wind blows
And blights the fairest′ ; when our bitterest tears
Stream, as the eyes of all that loved us, close′ ;
We think on what they were, and leave the coming years.

When man and nature mourned their first decay ;
When every form of death and every woe
Shot from malignant stars to earth below ;
When murder bared his arm, and rampant war
Yoked the red dragons of his iron car ;
When peace and mercy, banished from the plain
Sprung on the viewless winds to heaven again ;
All, all forsook the friendless guilty mind,
But hope, the charmer, lingered still behind.

Where thou goest′, I will go.

They could not fairly pretend to reap′, where they had not sowed.

Where a correspondence cannot be obtained′, it is necessary to be content with something equivalent.

Where a community is limited in number, and forms one great patriarchal family, as in an Indian tribe, the injury of an individual is the injury of the whole.

Where men speak affection in the strongest terms, and dislike in the faintest, it is a comical mixture of incidents to see disguises thrown aside in the one case, and increased on the other, according as favor or disgrace attended the respective objects of men's approbation or disesteem.

Where the demands for competent ability are so pressing, and the temptations to employ that ability in such occupations as bring with them instant rewards are so great, it is quite certain that but few will be found inclined to spend their lives in studies which have no interest for others, and no perceptible bearing on private or public good.

Where high the heavenly temple stands,
The house of God not made with hands′ ;
A great High Priest our nature wears‵ :
Our friend and advocate appears.

And where his willing waves yon bright blue bay
Sends up to kiss his decorated brim,
And cradles, in his soft embrace, the gay
Young group of grassy islands born of him,
And, crowding nigh, or in the distance dim,
Lifts the white throng of sails that bear or bring

The commerce of the world; with tawny limb
And belt and beads in sunlight glistening,
The savage urged his skiff like wild bird on the wing.

While he is sick′, he is penitent.
While he enjoys prosperity′, he shows good-nature.
While he remained in the city, and he remained nearly two weeks′, he scarcely went abroad.
While most others were solicitous to procure for themselves fame or wealth′, Wesley seemed only ambitious to do good.
While he delights in enterprise and action, and the exercise of the stronger energies of the soul, she is led to engage in calmer pursuits, and seek for gentler employment.
While he is summoned into the wide and busy theatre of a contentious world, where the love of power and the love of gain, in all their innumerable forms occupy and tyrannize over the soul, she is walking in a more peaceful sphere.
While that venerated instrument shall continue to exist; while its sacred spirit shall dwell with the people of this nation, or the free institutions that have grown out of it, be preserved and respected; our children, and our children's children, to the latest generation, will bless the names of these illustrious benefactors, and cherish their memory with reverential respect.
While then we should seek, by every proper influence, to send abroad the spirit and the blessings of liberty, and hail with enthusiasm the arrival on our shores of all men of every name, and from every clime, who love liberty, and are prepared to enjoy and preserve it′; as the depositaries and sentinels of that inestimable birthright which God has conferred upon us, let us be ever erect and ever wakeful′: prepared at all times to give up all, rather than this crown of our country, and glory of our age.
While we perceive with gladness the happy social uses to which nature has made the passion for power in mankind instrumental, or rather, to speak with more accuracy, the uses for which nature has made us susceptible of this passion; and while we know well, that the world, therefore, never can be without those who will be moved by ambition to seek the honors and dignities which it is necessary for the happiness of the world that some should seek; it is pleasing for those, whose fortune or whose wishes lead them to more tranquil and happier, though less enviable occupations, to think, that the happiness which so many are seeking, is not confined by nature to the dignities which so very few only are capable of attaining; that it is as wide as the situations of men; and that while no rank is too high for the enjoyment of virtue, there is no rank that can be regarded as too low for it.

And while that spot so wild and lone and fair,
A look of glad and innocent beauty wore′,
And peace was on the earth and in the air′,
The warrior lit the pile, and bound the captive there.

Yet while with close delight and inward pride,
Which from the world my careful soul shall hide,
I see thee, lord and end of my desire,
Exalted high as virtue can require,
With power invested and with pleasure cheered,
Sought by the good, by the oppressor feared,
Loaded and blest with all the affluent store
Which human vows at smoking shrines adore;
Grateful and humble grant me to employ
My life subservient only to thy joy.

Since such is the fact′, you have no cause for solicitude.

Since God is a moral governor and must delight in and reward virtuous tempers′, there is a manifest moral propriety in his making these tempers the antecedent to his bestowment of blessings.

Since any event whatever may be the antecedent to any other event whatever′, we are surely not competent to say that prayer cannot be the antecedent to the bestowment of favors, any more than to say this of any thing else.

Since every impure, revengeful, deceitful or envious thought, is a violation of our obligations to our Maker, and much more, the words and actions to which these thoughts give rise′; and since even the imperfect conscience of every individual accuses him of countless instances, if not of habits, of such violation′; if the preceding observations be just, it is manifest, that our present moral condition involves the elements of much that is alarming.

Since worth, he cries, in these degenerate days,
Wants e'en the cheap reward of empty praise′;
In those cursed walls, devote to vice and gain,
Since unrewarded science toils in vain′;
Since hope but soothes to double my distress,
And every moment leaves my little less′;
While yet my steady steps no staff sustains,
And life still vigorous revels in my veins′;
Grant me, kind Heaven, to find some happier place,
Where honesty and sense are no disgrace.

3d FORM: with neither of the correlative words expressed.

It is sown in corruption′; it is raised in incorruption.
It is sown a natural body′; it is raised a spiritual body.

Were it true that the Gospel constrains men′; its constraint would be preferable to that of fashion and vice.

Affected passion, intense expression, the pomp of declamation, all may aspire after it′; they cannot reach it.

Had they informed themselves of all the circumstances, hazards and demands of the enterprise before engaging in it′; had they after engaging in it, listened to the advice of those who were better informed than themselves′; or had they withdrawn from it, when they discovered the obstacles to its success′; they might have escaped dishonor.

Did faithful history compel us to cast on all England united, the reproach of those measures that drove our fathers to arms; and were it, in consequence, the unavoidable effect of these celebrations to revive the feelings of revolutionary times in the bosoms of the aged; to kindle those feelings anew in the susceptible hearts of the young: it would still be our duty, on every becoming occasion, in the strongest colors, and in the boldest lines we can command, to retrace the picture of the times that tried men's souls.

Could the genius of our country reveal to our astonished view the future glories which await the progress of confederated America; could he show us the countless millions who will swarm in the wide-spread valleys of the west, tasting of happiness and sharing the blessing of equal laws; could he unroll the pages of her history, and permit us to see the fierce struggles of her factions, the rapid mutations of her empire, the bloody fields of her triumphs and her disasters; could he crowd these awful visions upon our souls; we should see that all the prosperity that awaits us depends on the supremacy of mind: on the cultivation of intellect: on the diffusion of knowledge and the arts.

Had Milton confined himself to the studies of his library or the halls of his university; had he not thrown himself into the hottest conflicts of the day; had he not stood forth the terrible champion of freedom of opinion and of republican liberty, raising on high his spirit-stirring voice in their defence in worst extremes, and "on the perilous verge of battle where it raged;" had he not participated in counsel, in act, and in suffering with England's boldest spirits; had he not thus felt in himself, and seen in others, the "might of the unconquerable will," the unshaken, unseduced, unterrified constancy of faithful zeal and love; he would not have gained that insight into the seemly and generous arts and affairs, that intimate acquaintance with the nobler parts of human nature that made him the greatest of poets.

Doubtless he'll see us to the city gate;'
'Twill be the least respect that he can pay
To his fallen rival.

Would I describe a preacher, such as Paul,
Were he on earth, would hear, approve, and own';
Paul should himself direct me.

Hadst thou but shook thy head, or made a pause,
When I spake darkly what I purposed;
Or turned an eye of doubt upon my face,
And bid me tell my tale in express words;
Deep shame had struck me dumb, and made me break off;
And those thy fears might have wrought fears in me.

Rejecting the vain systems of the schoolmen', he adhered to the plain word of God.

Seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses', let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us.

Having, therefore, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, by a new and living way, which he hath consecrated for us through the veil, that is to say, his flesh'; and having an high priest over the house of God'; let us draw near with a true heart`: in full assurance of faith`; having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.

Disappointed and disgusted', they are now tempted to ascribe their disappointment to the republican institutions of their country.

Trained and instructed', strengthened by wise discipline and guided by pure principle', it ripens into an intelligence but little lower than the angels.

Deeply impressed with the greatness of that love of God, which is from everlasting, the herald of grace adopted a strain of impassioned earnestness in the invitations which he addressed to the irresolute and fearful.

Vexed at the arbitrary proceedings of the assembly; willing to escape from a town where good people pointed with horror at his freedom; indignant also at the tyranny of his brother, who, as a passionate master, often beat his apprentice; Benjamin Franklin, then but seventeen years old, sailed clandestinely for New York.

Sent to defend an extensive mountain frontier with forces wholly inadequate to the object, the sport of contradictory orders from a civil governor inexperienced in war, defrauded by contractors, tormented with arrogant pretensions of subaltern officers in the royal army, weakened by wholesale desertions in the hour of danger, misrepresented by jealous competitors, traduced, maligned; the

youthful commander-in-chief was obliged to foresee every thing, to create every thing, to endure every thing, to effect every thing, without encouragement, without means, without co-operation.

A professed Catholic, he imprisoned the Pope.

The orphan of Saint Louis, he became the adopted child of the Republic.

Grand, gloomy, and peculiar, he sat upon the throne a sceptred hermit wrapped in the solitude of his own originality.

A royalist, a republican, and an emperor; a Mohammedan, a Catholic, and a patron of the synagogue; a subaltern and a sovereign; a traitor and a tyrant; a Christian and an infidel; he was through all his vicissitudes, the same stern, impatient, inflexible original: the same mysterious, incomprehensible self: the man without a model and without a shadow.

At that fortunate age when the physical and intellectual powers are displayed in the highest perfection, and the hasty impulses of youth, without any loss of its vigor, are brought under control of large experience in public affairs; with a mind capable of descending to minute details, as well as conceiving a grand system of national policy; calm and deliberate in judgment, self-possessed and fluent in debate, of dignified presence, never unmindful of the courtesies becoming social and public intercourse, and of political integrity unimpeachable; he was admirably fitted for the post of leader of the 27th Congress.

Confused and struck with silence at the deed′,
He flies, but, trembling, fails to fly with speed.

Consulting what I feel within,
In times when most existence with herself
Is satisfied′, I cannot but believe,
That, far as kindly nature hath free scope,
And reason's sway predominates, even so far,
Country, society, and even time itself,
That saps the individual's bodily frame,
And lays the generations low in dust,
Do, by the Almighty Ruler's grace, partake
Of one maternal spirit′: bringing forth
And cherishing with ever constant love,
That tires not, nor betrays.

Seek′, and ye shall find.

I was hungry′, and ye gave me no meat.

He enjoyed fine opportunities to establish a character′, and he neglected them.

Seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness′; and all these things shall be added unto you.

The idea of God, it is said, may be expunged from the heart of man; and that heart will be the seat still of the same constitutional impulses.

They feel that they have incurred no outrageous forfeiture of character among men; and this instils a treacherous complacency in their own hearts.

Here is a case, in which the voice, that cometh forth from the tribunal of public opinion, pronounces one thing; and the voice, that cometh forth from the sanctuary of God, pronounces another.

Let the sinner then look to God through the medium of such a revelation; and the sight which meets him there may well tame the obstinacy of that heart, which had wrapped itself up in impenetrable hardness against the force of every other consideration.

Let me be made to understand, that God has passed by my transgressions, and generously admitted me into the privileges and the rewards of obedience; I see in this, a tenderness, and a mercy, and a love, for his creatures, which, if blended at the same time with all that is high and honorable in the more august attributes of his nature, have the effect of presenting him to my mind, and of drawing out my heart in moral regard to him, as a most amiable and estimable object of contemplation.

Give me a man who seizes with ravenous approbation all that I have to bestow, and who hoards it, or feeds upon it, or in any way rejoices over it, without one grateful movement of his heart toward me; and you lay before me a character, not merely unlike, but diametrically opposite, to the character of him who obtains the very same gift, and, perhaps, derives from the use of it, an equal, or a greater degree of enjoyment, to the sensitive part of his nature, but who, in addition to all this, has thought, and affection, and the higher principles of his nature, excited by the consideration of the giver.

The simple truths of the Gospel may enter with acceptance into the mind of a peasant, and there work all the proper influences on his heart and character which the Bible ascribes to them; and yet he may be utterly incapable of tracing that series of inward movements, by which he is carried onwards from a belief in the truth, to all those moral and affectionate regards, which mark a genuine disciple of the truth.

Let him who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, shine into our hearts to give us the light of the knowledge of his own glory, in the face of Jesus Christ; let us only look upon him as God in Christ reconciling the world unto himself, and not imputing unto them trespasses; let him, without expunging the characters of truth and majesty from that one aspect of perfect excellence which belongs to him; let him, in his own unsearchable wis-

dom, devise a way by which he can both bring them out in the eye of sinners with brighter illumination, and make these sinners feel that they are safe; let him lift off from the men of this guilty world, the burden of his violated law, and make it honorable; let him publish a full release from all its penalties, but in such a way as that the truth which proclaimed them, and the justice which should execute them, shall remain untainted under the dispensation of mercy; let him, instead of awaking the sword of vengeance against *us*, awake it against a sufferer of such worth and dignity, that his blood shall be the atonement of a world, and by pouring out his soul unto death, he shall make the pardon of the transgressor meet and be at one with the everlasting righteousness of God; in a word, instead of the character of God being lighted up in the eye of the sinner by the fire of his own indignation, let it through the demonstration of the Spirit be illustrated and shone upon by the mild and peaceful light of the Sun of Righteousness; and then may the sinner look in peace and safety on the manifested character of God.

GENERAL NOTE. I.

The single compact sentence, with or without correlative words expressed, often appears in a fragmentary form. If either of the correlative words is expressed, the nature of the sentence and the delivery will be obvious; for the mere fact of its being fragmentary changes neither the one nor the other. When the correlative words are wanting, the nature of the sentence may not be at once apparent; and though the compact delivery should be plainly required, the cause of this, may not be suspected. I subjoin one or two examples: they are printed in italic.

Val. We found you naked.
Van. And you found us free.
Val. *Would you be temperate once, and hear me out'.*
Van. Speak things that honest men may hear with temper.

[*Enter attendant and Malek Adhel.*]

Sal. Leave us together. [*Exit attend.*] (Aside.) *I should know That form.*

Judge Bronson. Well, Mr. Cooper, but he didn't publish it.
Mr. Cooper. That was not necessary to make out the libel.
Judge B. (Smiling.) *Pretty near it, though.*

The first of these examples, if complete and regularly constructed, would probably read thus: If you would, &c., then you would, &c.: the second, thus: Therefore I should know that form, because its proportions or features are familiar: the third thus: Pretty near it, though that was not necessary to make out, i. e. absolutely necessary to make out the libel.

GENERAL NOTE. II.

Single compact sentences, like simple and compound close declaratives, are often employed as indirect interrogatives with or without interrogative punctuation: *e. g.*

Ros. *You'll marry me, if I be willing?*
Phe. That would I, should I die the hour after.

He admitted the validity of the will, when you produced it. Yes, but with hesitation.

2. *Double Compact.*

RULE VIII. The first part of a double compact sentence is delivered like the first part of a single compact: the remaining part or parts, like the parts of a perfect loose sentence. (*See Loose Sentence below.*)

1. The parts separately considered may have all the varieties of construction which distinguish the parts of single compact. (*See Remarks under the Rule for the delivery of Single Compact Sentences, above.*)
2. When the first part is employed in connection with the other parts and consists of two or more members, the last of these, like the last of a similar series in the first part of a single compact, may be terminated with partial close; in which case, the delivery will conform to *Fig.* 14, *c*: (*See Plate:*) when the first part is employed alone, the last of the series must necessarily terminate with perfect close.
3. When *no* or *nay* ends a series of members in the first part, it should always be delivered like the first member; and the member immediately preceding it, should end with partial close. The reason of this is, that *no*, in such a case, to all intents begins the sentence anew.

Examples.

1. Of double compact with all the parts.

Swear not by heaven′; for it is God's throne‵; but let your communication be yea, yea; and nay, nay‵; for whatsoever is more than these, cometh of evil.

It was not an eclipse that caused the darkness at the crucifixion of our Lord′; for the sun and moon were not relatively in a position to produce an eclipse‵; but a direct interposition of God‵; for on no other supposition can we account for it.

2. With the fourth part omitted.

And not as it was by one that sinned, so also is the free gift′; for the judgment was by one unto condemnation‵; but the free gift is of many offences unto justification.

They had not come hither in search of gain′, for the soil was sterile and unproductive‵; but they had come that they might worship God according to the dictates of their own consciences.

It was not enough that our fathers were of England′; the masters of Ireland and the lords of Hindostan are of England too‵; but our fathers were Englishmen, aggrieved, persecuted and banished.

We do not say that his error lies in being a good member of society′; this though only a circumstance at present, is a very fortu-

nate one`: the error lies in his having discarded the authority of God, as his legislator`; or rather, in his never having admitted the influence of that authority over his mind, heart or practice.

He does not satisfy himself with barely moving on to a higher point in the scale of human attainment, and then sitting down with the sentiment that it is enough; he never counts it enough: the practical attitude of the believer is that of one who is ever looking forward: the practical movement of the believer is that of one who is ever pressing forward.

It is not by an utterance of rash and sweeping totality to refuse him the possession of what is kind in sympathy, or what is dignified in principle; this were in the face of all observation: it is to charge him direct with his utter disloyalty to God: it is to convict him of treason against the majesty of heaven: it is to press home upon him the impiety of not caring about God

NOTE. In double compact sentences of this form, comprising two or more members in the first part, it is not unusual to find the second part distributed among them; that is, to find each of these members followed by a second part of its own: *e. g.*

It was not their rank which gave the apostles such marvellous success in spreading Christianity in every part of the Roman empire′, for they sprang from the lowest order of the people`; it was not their wealth′, for they were poor`; it was not their learning′, for they were unlettered men`; but it was the miraculous powers with which they were endowed`; and the wisdom of God, and the power of God unto salvation, which attended them.

It is not that we wish our sister church were swept away, for we honestly think, that the overthrow of that establishment would be a severe blow to the Christianity of our land; it is not that we envy that great hierarchy the splendor of her endowments, for better a dinner of herbs, when surrounded by the love of parishioners, than a preferment of stalled dignity and strife therewith; it is not either that we look upon her ministers as having at all disgraced themselves by their rapacity, for look to the encroachments upon them, and you will see that they have carried their privileges with the most exemplary forbearance and moderation; but from these very encroachments do we infer how lawless a human being will become, when emancipated from the bond of his own interest.

I am not the panegyrist of England′; I am not dazzled by her riches nor awed by her power′; the sceptre, the mitre, and the coronet, stars, garters and blue ribands, seem to me poor things for great men to contend for`; nor is my admiration awakened by her armies mustered for the battles of Europe, her navies overshadowing the ocean, nor her empire grasping the farthest east`; it is these, and the price of guilt and blood by which they are maintained, which are the cause why no friend of liberty can salute her with undivided affections`; but it is the refuge of free principles,

though often persecuted‵; the school of religious liberty, the more precious for the struggles to which it has been called‵; the tombs of those who have reflected honor on all who speak the English tongue‵: it is the birthplace of our fathers‵; the home of the pilgrims‵: it is these which I love and venerate in England.

3. With the third and fourth part omitted.

We must not impute the delay to indifference′, for delay may be designed to promote our happiness.

The present life is not wholly prosaic, precise, tame and finite′; to the gifted eye, it abounds in the poetic.

Not all the chapters of human history are thus important′; the annals of our race have been filled up with incidents which convey no instruction.

We dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend themselves; for they measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise.

It is not true that the poet paints a life which does not exist; he only extracts and concentrates, as it were, life's ethereal essence, arrests and condenses its volatile fragrance, brings together its scattered beauties, and prolongs its more refined, but evanescent joys.

No matter in what language his doom may have been pronounced; no matter what complexion, incompatible with freedom, an Indian or African sun may have burnt upon him; no matter in what disastrous battles his liberty may have been cloven down; no matter with what solemnities he may have been devoted upon the altar of slavery; the moment he touches the sacred soil of Britain, the altar and the god sink together in the dust; his soul walks abroad in her own majesty; his body swells beyond the measure of his chains, that burst from around him; and he stands redeemed, regenerated and disenthralled by the universal spirit of emancipation.

It is not that Christ is set forth a propitiation for their sins; it is not that they stagger not at the promise of God, because of unbelief; it is not that the love of him is shed abroad in their hearts by the Holy Ghost; it is not that they carry along with them any consciousness whatever of a growing conformity to the image of the Saviour; it is not that their calling and election are made sure to them, by the successful diligence with which they are cultivating the various accomplishments of the Christian character; there is not one of these ingredients, will we venture to say, which enters into the satisfaction that many feel with their own prospects, and into the complacency they have in their own attainments, and into their opinion that God is looking to them with indulgence and friendship.

Nay, look not big, nor stamp, nor stare, nor fret;
I will be master of what is mine own.

It is not now as it hath been of yore;
Turn wheresoe'er I may,
By night or day,
The things which I have seen, I now can see no more.

Thou art no child of fancy; thou
The very look dost wear,
That gave enchantment to a brow,
Wreathed with luxuriant hair.

Grudge not, ye rich, (since luxury must have
His dainties, and the world's more numerous half
Lives by contriving delicates for you,)
Grudge not the cost; ye little know the cares,
The vigilance, the labor, and the skill
That day and night are exercised, and hang
Upon the ticklish balance of suspense,
That ye may garnish your profuse regales
With summer fruits brought forth by wintry suns.

4. With the second, third and fourth omitted.

You would not select the public firebrand′; you would not seek your seconds in the tavern, or in the brothel′; you would not inquire out the man who was oppressed with debts, contracted by licentiousness, debauchery, and every species of profligacy. [Who, sir, were Cæsar's seconds in his undertakings ?]

[And what is our country ?] It is not the East with her hills and valleys, with her countless sails, and the rocky ramparts of her shores′; it is not the North with her thousand villages, and her harvest home, with her frontiers of the lake and the ocean′; it is not the West with her forest-sea, with her beautiful Ohio, and her majestic Missouri′; nor yet is it the South, opulent in the mimic snow of the cotton, in the rich plantation of the rustling cane, and in the golden robes of the rice-fields.

They did not know, that every town and village in America had discussed the great questions at issue for itself, and in its town-meetings and committees of correspondence and safety, had come to the resolution that America must not be taxed by England; the English government did not understand, (we hardly understood, ourselves, till we saw it in action,) the operation of a state of society, where every man is or may be a freeholder, a voter for every elective office, a candidate for every one; where the means of a good education are universally accessible; where the artificial dis-

tinctions of society are known but in a slight degree; where glaring contrasts of condition are rarely met with; where few are raised by the extreme of wealth above their fellow men, and fewer sunk by the extreme of poverty beneath it: the English ministry had not reasoned on the natural growth of such a soil; that it could not permanently bear either a colonial or monarchical government; that the only true and native growth of such a soil was a perfect independence, and intelligent republicanism.

5. With the second and fourth omitted.

I am not come to destroy′, but to fulfil.

Labor not for the meat that perisheth′, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life.

It was not enough for him to stand on the defensive′; he felt that he must become the assailant, and return blow for blow.

The method of our salvation is not left to the random caprices of human thought, and human fancy′; it is a method devised and made known to us by unsearchable wisdom.

He is not a Jew who is one outwardly, nor is that circumcision which is outward in the flesh′; but he is a Jew who is one inwardly‵; and circumcision is that of the heart‵: in the spirit, and not in the letter; whose praise is not of men, but of God.

We do not recognise in her the Christian who has attained to the perfect liberty of God's children, but the exact type of those souls, at all times so numerous, and especially among her sex, who, drawn powerfully to look to heaven, have not strength sufficient to disengage themselves entirely from the bondage of earth.

We pay no homage at the tomb of kings to sublime our feelings, we trace no line of illustrious ancestors to support our dignity, we recur to no usages, sanctioned by the authority of the great, to protract our rejoicing‵; no′;* we love liberty: we glory in the rights of men: we glory in independence.

His characters are not modified by the customs of particular places, unpractised by the rest of the world, by the peculiarities of studies and professions, which can operate but upon small numbers, or by the accidents of transient fashions, or temporary opinions; they are the genuine progeny of common humanity: such as the world will always supply, and observation will always find.

No wars have ravaged these lands and depopulated these villages′; no civil discords have been felt′; no disputed succession′; no religious rage′; no merciless enemy′; no affliction of Providence, which, while it scourged for the moment, cut off the sources of resuscitation′; no voracious and poisonous monsters‵; no′;† all this

---

* We do nothing like this, but, &c. } *See the Second Sentence below, and 3d Note under*
† It was not any of these, but all, &c. } *Rule.*

has been accomplished by the friendship, generosity and kindness of the English nation.

Society, in this country, has not made its progress like Chinese skill, by a greater acuteness of ingenuity in trifles′; it has not merely lashed itself to an increased speed round the old circles of thought and action\′; but it has assumed a new character\; it has raised itself from beneath governments to a participation in governments\; it has mixed moral and political objects with the daily pursuits of individual men\; and, with a freedom and strength before altogether unknown, it has applied to these objects the whole power of the human understanding.

We do not pray to instruct or advise God; not to tell him news, or inform him of our wants; nor do we pray by dint of argument to persuade God and bring him to our bent; nor that, by fair speech, we may cajole him, or move his affections toward us by pathetical orations\; not for any such purpose are we obliged to pray′; but because it becometh and behooveth us so to do; because it is a proper instrument of bettering, ennobling and perfecting our souls; because it breedeth most holy affections, and pure satisfactions, and worthy resolutions: because it fitteth us for the enjoyment of happiness, and leadeth us thither: for such ends devotion is prescribed.*

Then waited not the murderer for the night′,
But smote his brother down in the bright day.

Not for these sad issues
Was man created′, but to obey the law
Of life and hope and action.

Nor rural sights alone′, but rural sounds
Exhilarate the spirit, and restore
The tone of languid nature.

Man hath no part in all this glorious work;
The hand, that built the firmament, hath heaved
And smoothed these verdant swells, and sown these slopes
With herbage: planted their island-groves,
And hedged them round with forests.

He, who has tamed the elements, shall not live
The slave of his own passions; he, whose eye
Unwinds the eternal dances in the sky,
And in the abyss of brightness dares to span

---

* The *nors* in this sentence are equivalent to intensive particles, (*see Rule VII, Exc.* 3,) but the tendency to partial close should be resisted until the last of them is reached. The last member of the first part is equivalent to *no* simply. (*See Rule VIII*, 3.)

The sun's broad circle, rising yet more high,
In God's magnificent works his will shall scan.

Then let us not think hard
One easy prohibition, when we enjoy
Free leave so large to all things else, and choice
Unlimited of manifold delights;
But let us ever praise him, and extol
His bounty: following our delightful task
To prune these growing plants, and tend these flowers

I do not mean to wake the gloomy form
Of superstition, dressed in wisdom's garb,
To damp your tender hopes; I do not mean
To bid the jealous thunderer fire the heavens,
Or shapes infernal rend the groaning earth,
To fright you from your joys; my cheerful song
With better omens calls you to the field:
Pleased with your generous ardor in the chase,
And warm like you.

The Sovereign Maker said,
That not in humble, nor in brief delight,
Not in the fading echoes of renown,
Power's purple robes, nor pleasure's flowery lap,
The soul should find enjoyment; but from these,
Turning disdainful to an equal good,
Through all the ascent of things to enlarge her view,
Till every bound at length should disappear,
And infinite perfection close the scene.

It is not much that to the fragrant blossom,
The ragged brier should change, the bitter fir
Distil Arabian myrrh;
Nor that, upon the wintry desert's bosom,
The harvest should rise plenteous, and the swain
Bear home the abundant grain:
But come and see the bleak high hills and mountains,
Thick to their tops with roses: come and see
Leaves on the dry dead tree:
The perished plant, set out by living fountains
Grows fruitful; and beauteous branches rise,
Forever, toward the skies.

6. With the second alone omitted.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust corrupt, and where thieves break through and steal:

but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven\; where neither moth nor rust corrupt, and where thieves do not break through and steal\; for where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof, neither* yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin; but yield yourselves unto God as those that are alive from the dead, and your members, as instruments of righteousness unto God; for sin shall not have dominion over you.

Nay′; but it's really true\:
I had it from good hands, and so may you.

[*Officer.* [What may this mean? let us pass on: we stop not.
Whate'er betide.]
Rayner. Nay′, but you do\; for here there is a power
Stronger than law or judgment.

III. THE LOOSE DECLARATIVE SENTENCE.

Rule IX. The parts of a loose sentence, whether perfect or imperfect, should be successively delivered in a very slightly lower tone of voice, and terminated with partial close, except the last; which of course ends with perfect close. (*See Plate, Fig.* 11, *a, b, c.*)

The parts separately considered must be delivered like the species or variety to which they belong; and I need scarcely say, they may belong to any of the species and varieties of declarative sentences hitherto passed under review. Thus, in the first example below, we have a single compact, 2d form, in the first part, and a close in the second: in the second example, a close in the first, a fragmentary simple declarative in the second, and a complete simple declarative in the third part: in the third example, we have a simple declarative in the first part, and the first part of a double compact comprising three members, in the second. State the nature of the sentences in the parts of the succeeding examples.

The first part of this rule applies more particularly to loose sentences of no great length. When long, it will be found necessary to deliver them, except toward the last, nearly in the same tone.

For perfect and partial close, see Ch. III. Modulation.

1. *Perfect Loose.*

Examples.

I speak as to wise men\: judge ye what I say.

And now abideth faith, hope, charity\: these three\; but the greatest of these is charity.

Receive us\: we have wronged no man′, we have corrupted no man′, we have defrauded no man.

I am crucified with Christ\: nevertheless I live\: yet not I, but Christ liveth in me\; and the life which I now live in the flesh, I

* See preceding note on *nor*.

live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave himself for me.

Go ye, therefore, and teach all nations': baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost': teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you'; and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world.

Christians, familiar with the principles of justice, desire to see them adhered to in proceedings against others and themselves'; but those, who are accustomed to act according to their own will, are much surprised, when required to proceed regularly and agreeably to form and law.

Liberty was theirs as men': without it, they did not esteem themselves men': more than any other privilege or possession, it was essential to their happiness, for it was essential to their original nature'; and therefore they preferred it above wealth and ease and country'; and that they might enjoy and exercise it fully, they forsook houses and lands and kindred.

A man may be led to precisely the same conduct, on the impulse of many different principles: he may be gentle, because it is a prescription of the divine law; or, he may be gentle, because he is naturally of a timid or indolent constitution; or, he may be gentle, because he sees it to be an amiable gracefulness, with which he wishes to adorn his character; or, he may be gentle, because it is the ready way of perpetuating the friendship of those around him; or, he may be gentle, because taught to observe it, as a part of courtly and fashionable deportment; and what was implanted by education may come in time to be confirmed by habit and experience: it is only under the first of these principles, that there is any religion in gentleness.

They left all these: they left England; which, whatever it might have been called, was not to them a land of freedom: they launched forth on the pathless ocean: the wide, fathomless ocean, soiled not by the earth beneath, and bounded, all round and above, only by heaven; and it seemed to them like that better and sublimer freedom, which their country knew not, but of which they had the conception and image in their hearts; and after a toilsome and painful voyage, they came to a hard and wintry coast; unfruitful and desolate, but unguarded and boundless: its calm silence interrupted not the ascent of their prayers: it had no eyes to watch, no ears to hearken, no tongues to report of them: here again there was an answer to their soul's desire; and they were satisfied and gave thanks: they saw that they were free and the desert smiled.

Our object is not to recover the holy sepulchre from the pos-

session of heretics, but to make known the death of him who descended to it; to wrest the keys of empire from the king of terrors: the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, as the sword, the spear, the battle-axe; but spiritual, as the doctrines of the gospel exhibited in the sermons of our missionaries: the line of our march will not be marked by ensanguined fields, and the reign of desolation, but the comforts of civilization, and the blessings of Christianity: we shall not be followed in our career by the groans of dying warriors, and the shrieks of bereaved widows; but by the songs of redeemed sinners, and the shouts of enraptured angels; while our trophies will consist, not of bits of the cross, or shreds of the Virgin's robe; but in the rejected idols of Pomare, with the regenerated souls of those who once adored him.

If you would not like him to do it for you; then there is nothing in the compass of this sentence now before you, that at all obligates you to do it for him: if you would not like your neighbor to make so romantic a surrender to your interests, as to offer you to the extent of half his fortune; then there is nothing in that part of the gospel code which now engages us, that renders it imperative upon you to make the same offer to your neighbor: if you would positively recoil, in all the reluctance of ingenuous delicacy, from the selfishness of laying on a relation the burden of the expenses of all your family; then this is not the good office that you would have him do unto you; and this, therefore, is not the good office which the text prescribes you to do unto him: if you have such consideration for another's ease, and another's convenience, that you could not take the ungenerous advantage of so much of his time for your accommodation, there may be other verses in the Bible which point to a greater sacrifice, on your part, for the good of others, than you would like these others to make for yours; but, most assuredly, this is not the verse which imposes that sacrifice: if you would not that others should do these things on your account; then these things form no part of "the all things whatsoever" you would that men should do unto you; and, therefore, they form no part of "the all things whatsoever" that you are required, by this verse, to do for them.

Contrasted faults through all his manners reign\:
Though poor′, luxurious\; though submissive′, vain\;
Though grave′, yet trifling\; zealous′, yet untrue\;
And e'en in penance, planning sins anew.

But misery brought in love\: in passion's strife,
Man gave his heart to mercy, pleading long,
And sought out gentle deeds to gladden life\:

The weak, against the sons of spoil and wrong,
Banded, and watched their hamlets and grew strong.

He who felt the wrong, and had the might,
His own avenger, girt himself to slay':
Beside the path the unburied carcass lay':
The shepherd, by the fountain of the glen,
Fled, while the robber swept his flocks away,
And slew his babes.

So spake the cherub; and his grave rebuke,
Severe in youthful beauty, added grace
Invincible: abashed the devil stood,
And felt how awful goodness is, and saw
Virtue in her shape how lovely: saw and pined
His loss; but chiefly to find here observed
His lustre visibly impaired: yet seemed
Undaunted.

To him, who in the love of nature holds
Communion with her visible forms, she speaks
A various language: for his gayer hours
She has a voice of gladness, and a smile
And eloquence of beauty; and she glides
Into his darker musings, with a mild
And healing sympathy, that steals away
Their sharpness, ere he is aware.

Still Heaven deferred the hour ordained to rend,
From saintly rottenness the sacred stole;
And cowl and worshipped shrine could still defend
The wretch with felon stains upon his soul;
And crimes were set to sale; and hard his dole,
Who could not bribe a passage to the skies;
And vice, beneath the mitre's kind control,
Sinned gayly on, and grew to giant size:
Shielded by priestly power, and watched by priestly eyes.

Look now abroad: another race has filled
These populous borders: wide the wood recedes,
And towns shoot up, and fertile realms are tilled:
The land is full of harvests, and green meads:
Streams numberless, that many a fountain feeds,
Shine, disembowered, and give to sun and breeze
Their virgin waters: the full region leads
New colonies forth, that toward the western seas,
Spread, like a rapid flame, among autumnal trees.

The more thou dam'st it up, the more it burns:
The current that with gentle murmur glides,
Thou knowest, being stopped, impatiently doth rage;
But, when his fair course is not hindered,
He makes sweet music with the enamelled stones:
Giving a gentle kiss to every sedge
He overtaketh in his pilgrimage;
And so by many winding nooks he strays,
With willing sport, to the wild ocean.

Peace to the just man's memory: let it grow
Greener with years, and blossom through the flight
Of ages; let the mimic canvas show
His calm, benevolent features; let the light
Stream on his deeds of love, that shunned the sight
Of all but heaven; and, in the book of fame,
The glorious record of his virtues write,
And hold it up to men and bid them claim
A palm like his, and catch from him the hallowed flame.

At midnight in his guarded tent,
The Turk was dreaming of the hour
When Greece, her knee in suppliance bent,
Should tremble at his power:
In dreams, through camp and court, he bore
The trophies of a conqueror:
In dreams his song of triumph heard:
Then wore his monarch's signet ring:
Then pressed that monarch's throne, a king:
As wild his thoughts and gay of wing,
As Eden's garden bird.

In all the modern languages, she was
Exceedingly well versed, and had devoted
To their attainment, far more time than has,
By the best teachers, lately been allotted;
For she had taken lessons, twice a week,
For a full month in each; and she could speak
French and Italian, equally as well
As Chinese, Portuguese, or German; and
What is still more surprising, she could spell
Most of our longest English words, off hand:
Was quite familiar in low Dutch and Spanish,
And thought of studying modern Greek and Danish.

2. *Imperfect Loose.*

Examples.

History, as it has been written, is the genealogy of princes': the field-book of conquerors.

Christianity came prepared for a gradual work': to perform its labor as sunshine and the moisture perform theirs': to bring its ideas to perfection among men, as the seed is brought forth to the harvest.

And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith, virtue'; and to virtue, knowledge'; and to knowledge, temperance'; and to temperance, patience'; and to patience, godliness'; and to godliness, brotherly kindness'; and to brotherly kindness, charity.

Knowing this': that the law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless and disobedient'; for the ungodly and for sinners'; for unholy and profane'; for murderers of fathers, and murderers of mothers'; for manslayers'; for whoremongers'; for them that defile themselves with mankind'; for man-stealers'; for liars'; for perjured persons'; and if there be any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine.

Time would fail us to recount the measures by which the way was prepared for the Revolution: the stamp-act; its repeal, with the declaration of right to tax America; the landing of troops in Boston, beneath the battery of fourteen vessels of war, lying broadside to the town, with springs on their cables, their guns loaded, and matches smoking; the repeated insults; and, finally, the massacre of the fifth of March, resulting from this military occupation, and the Boston Port Bill, by which the final catastrophe was hurried on.

We celebrate the return of a day on which our separate national existence was declared: the day when the momentous experiment was commenced, by which the world and posterity and we ourselves were to be taught, how far a nation of men can be trusted with self-government; how far life, liberty and property are safe, and the progress of social improvement secure, under the influence of laws made by those who are to obey the laws: the day when, for the first time in the world, a numerous people was ushered into the family of nations, organized on the principle of the political equality of all the citizens.

Let the young man, who is to gain his living by his labor and skill, remember that he is a citizen of a free State; that on him and his contemporaries it depends whether he will be happy and prosperous himself in his social condition, and whether a precious inheritance of social blessings shall descend, unimpaired, to those

who come after him: that there is no important difference in the situation of individuals, but that which they themselves cause, or permit to exist: that if something of the inequality, in the goods of fortune, which is inseparable from human things, exists in this country, it ought to be viewed only as another incitement to that industry by which, nine times out of ten, wealth is acquired; and still more to that cultivation of the mind, which, next to the moral character, makes the great difference between man and man.

Give us the benevolence of the man, who can ply his faithful task in the face of every discouragement; who can labor in scenes, where there is no brilliancy whatever to reward him; whose kindness is that of sturdy and abiding principle, which can weather all the murmurs of ingratitude, and all the provocations of dishonesty; who can find his way through poverty's putrid lanes, and depravity's most nauseous and disgusting receptacles; who can maintain the uniform and placid temper within the secrecy of his own home, and amid the irksome annoyances of his own family; who can endure hardships, as a good soldier of Jesus Christ; whose humanity acts with as much vigor amid the reproach, and the calumny, and the contradictions of sinners, as when soothed and softened by the poetic accompaniment of weeping orphans, and interesting cottages; and, above all, who labors to convert sinners, to subdue their resistance to the gospel, and to spiritualize them into a meetness for the inheritance of the saints.

We know, or think we know, that God is; and that all other existence is suspended upon his will; and that, were it not for his upholding arm, the whole of nature would go into dissolution; and that, while he sits in high authority over all worlds, there is not one individual member of his vast family, that is overlooked by him; and, more particularly, that he looks with the eye of a wise and watchful judge, into every heart, and every conscience; and that he claims a right and a property in the services of all his creatures; and that he is more absolutely the owner and the master of them all, than is man of the machine that he hath made, and to whose touch all its movements are subordinate; and that he is a God of august and inviolable sacredness, in whose presence evil cannot dwell, and between the sanctity of whose nature and sin, there is a wide and implacable enmity; and that he does not sit in lofty and remote indifference to the characters of his children, but takes deep and perpetual and most vigilant concern in them all: loving their righteousness, hating their iniquity, treasuring their thoughts, and their purposes, and their doings in the book of his remembrance; and that, with a view to the manifestation of them, on that day, when time shall be no more, and each of his accountable offspring shall have their condition awarded to them through

eternity : when the mystery of God shall be finished, and the glory of his attributes shall be made to shine forth at the close and the consummation of all things.

In rustic solitude 'tis sweet
The earliest flowers of spring to greet':
The violet from its tomb':
The strawberry, creeping at your feet':
The sorrell's simple bloom.
Their flame
Kindled within his breast the love of fame,
And politics and country'; the pure glow
Of patriot ardor'; and the consciousness
That talents such as his would well bestow
A lustre on the city.

The spirit of that day
Through the idle mesh of power shall break,
Like billows o'er the Asian monarch's chain,
Till men are filled with him, and feel how vain,
Instead of the pure heart and innocent hands,
Are all the proud and pompous modes to gain
The smile of heaven: till a new age expands
Its white and holy wings above the peaceful lands.

Those ages have no memory, but they left
A record in the desert: columns strown
On the waste sands, and statues fallen and cleft,
Heaped like a host in battle overthrown:
Vast mines, where the mountain's ribs of stone
Were hewn into a city: streets that spread
In the dark earth, where never breath has blown
Of heaven's sweet air, nor foot of man dares tread
The long and perilous ways: the cities of the dead.

I would trace
His master-strokes, and draw from his design:
I would express him simple, grave, sincere:
In doctrine incorrupt; in language plain,
And plain in manner; decent, solemn, chaste,
And natural in gesture; much impressed
Himself, as conscious of his awful charge,
And anxious mainly that the flock he feeds
May feel it too; affectionate in look,
And tender in address, as well becomes
A messenger of grace to guilty man.

Oh, leave me, still, the rapid flight
That makes the changing seasons gay:
The grateful speed that brings the night:
The swift and glad return of day:
The months that touch, with added grace,
This little prattler at my knee;
In whose arch eye and speaking face,
New meaning every hour I see:
The years, that o'er each sister land,
Shall lift the country of my birth,
And nurse her strength, till she shall stand
The pride and pattern of the earth;
Till younger commonwealths, for aid,
Shall cling about her ample robe;
And from her frown shall shrink afraid,
The crowned oppressors of the globe.

Note 1. Loose sentences, both perfect and imperfect, are employed as indirect interrogatives without being punctuated as such: *e. g.*

If the means were in themselves bad, you would not say that the end justified them; or if the means were good, you would not say that they justified all the results which might flow from their use.—No.

You [surely] know the history of this man's enterprises: how his doings and observations were among the veriest outcasts of humanity: how he descended into prison-houses, and there made himself familiar with all that could revolt or terrify in the exhibition of our fallen nature: how for this purpose he made the tour of Europe.

Note 2. Compact sentences with the first part, only, expressed on account of similarity of construction, are sometimes confounded with perfect and imperfect loose: *e. g.*

You would not select the public firebrand′; you would not seek your seconds in the tavern, or the brothel′; you would not inquire out the man who was oppressed with debts, contracted by licentiousness, debauchery, every species of profligacy‵. [Who, sir, I ask, were Cæsar's seconds in his undertakings?]

It is easy to awaken generous sentiments in privacy′: to despise death, when there is no danger′: to glow with benevolence, when there is nothing to be given‵. [While such ideas are formed, they are felt.]

'Tis pitiful
To court a grin, when you should woo a soul;
To break a jest, when pity should inspire
Pathetic exhortation; and to address
The skittish fancy with facetious tales,
When sent with God's commission to the heart.

The first of these sentences, though apparently a perfect loose, is, as it has been already shown, (*see Rule VIII.* 4,) a double compact, with the first part, only, consisting of several members, expressed: the second is a single compact, with the first part expressed, with a continuation understood something like this: "But to awaken them in public, to despise death when facing it, to show benevolence when called upon to give, is more difficult." *Indeed—but*, are the correlative words. The third is also a single compact, having the second part understood; and having for its correlative words, *therefore—because*, thus: "Therefore it is pitiful, &c., because a violation of every principle of duty and benevolence."

Miscellaneous Examples of Declarative Sentences.

To an American visiting Europe, the long voyage he has to make is an excellent preparative. From the moment you lose sight of the land you have left, all is vacancy until you step on the opposite shore, and are launched at once into the bustle and novelties of another world.*

We one day descried some shapeless object drifting at a distance. At sea, every thing that breaks the monotony of the surrounding expanse, attracts attention. It proved to be the mast of a ship that must have been completely wrecked; for there were the remains of handkerchiefs, by which some of the crew had fastened themselves to this spar, to prevent their being washed off by the waves.

Such was the state of Eden, when the serpent entered its bowers. The prisoner in a more engaging form, winding himself into the open and unpractised heart of the unfortunate Blennerhasset, found but little difficulty in changing the native character of that heart and the objects of its affections. By degrees, he infuses into it the poison of his own ambition: he breathes into it the fire of his own courage; a daring and desperate thirst for glory; an ardor panting for all the storm and bustle and hurricane of life.

The succession and contrast of the seasons give scope to that care and foresight, diligence and industry, which are essential to the dignity and enjoyment of human beings, whose happiness is connected with the exertions of their faculties. With our present constitution and the state in which impressions on the senses enter so much into our pleasures and pains, and the vivacity of our sensation is affected by comparison, the uniformity and continuance of perpetual spring would greatly impair its pleasing effect on our feelings.

Our life is compared to a falling leaf. When we are disposed to count on protracted years, to defer any serious thoughts of futurity, and to extend our plans through a long succession of seasons; the spectacle of the "fading, many-colored woods," and the naked trees, affords a salutary admonition of our frailty. It should teach us to fill the short year of life, or that portion of it which

---

* Though sentences under this head are given in their connection, they are intended in all cases to be read and described separately and independently.

may be allotted to us, with useful employments, and harmless pleasures; to practice that industry, activity and order, which the course of the natural world is constantly preaching.

Let not the passions blight the intellect in the spring of its advancement, nor indolence nor vice canker the promise of the heart in blossom. Then shall the summer of life be adorned with moral beauty, the autumn yield a harvest of wisdom and virtue, and the winter of age be cheered with pleasing reflections on the past, and bright hopes of the future.

Looking upon the declaration of independence as the one prominent event which is to represent the American system, I deem it right in itself and seasonable to assert, that, while all other political revolutions, reforms, and improvements have been in various ways of the nature of palliatives and alleviations of systems essentially and irremediably vicious, this alone is the great discovery in political science.

Such has been the case with Mr. Roscoe. Born in a place apparently ungenial to the growth of literary talent; in the very market-place of trade; without fortune, family connections, or patronage; self-prompted, self-sustained, and almost self-taught; he has conquered every obstacle; achieved his way to eminence; and, having become one of the ornaments of the nation, has turned the whole force of his talents and influence to advance and embellish his native town.

Their practice of the law was not in the narrow litigation of the courts, but in the great forum of contending empires: it was not nice legal fictions they were employed to balance, but sober realities of indescribable weight; the life and death of their country was the all-important issue.

The time is well adapted to the deed. It is now eight years since the corner-stone was laid, on the day that completed the half century from the battle. Let us this year urge the work to the close, with the completion of the half century since the termination of the war. If we celebrated the grand commencement of hostilities, in the foundation, let us bring forth the top-stone, in the happy commemoration of the return of peace. I believe, sir, as I have already said, that the work is in proper hands. I mean no fulsome compliment; I speak what history avouches: that the mechanics, as a class, were prime agents, in all the measures of the Revolution.

If there is any cause, in which it is right and proper to employ the social principle, the promotion of temperance is that cause; for intemperance, in its origin, is peculiarly a social vice. Although, in its progress, men may creep away, out of shame, to indulge the depraved appetite in secret; yet no man, in a state of civilization,

is born, I imagine, with a taste so unnatural that he seeks an intoxicating liquor, in the outset, for his ordinary drink.

The maxims of temperance are not new; they are as old as Christianity: as old as any of the inculcations of personal and social duty. Every other instrument of moral censure had been tried, in the case of intemperance, as in that of other prevailing errors, vices and crimes. The law had done something, the press had done something, the stated ministrations of religion had done something, but all together had done little; and intemperance had reached a most alarming degree of prevalence. At length the principle of association was applied; societies were formed; meetings were held; public addresses made; information collected and communicated; pledges mutually given; the minds of men excited and their hearts warmed, by comparison of opinions: by concert and sympathy; and within the space of twenty years, of which not more than ten have been devoted to strenuous effort, a most signal and unexampled reform has been achieved.

When public bodies are to be addressed on momentous occasions, when great interests are at stake, and strong passions excited, nothing is valuable in speech, farther than it is connected with high intellectual and moral endowments. Clearness, force and earnestness are the qualities which produce conviction. True eloquence indeed does not consist in speech; it cannot be brought from far. Labor and learning may toil for it, but they toil for it in vain: words and phrases may be marshalled in every way, but they cannot compass it: it must exist in the man; in the subject; and in the occasion. Affected passion, intense expression, the pomp of declamation,—all may aspire after it; they cannot reach it: it comes, if it come at all, like the outbreaking of a fountain from the earth or the bursting forth of volcanic fires, with spontaneous, original, native force.

The hour of retribution is at length arrived. He who had no mercy upon others, is now reduced to a condition which may excite the pity of his most implacable enemy: he who has made so many miserable, is now condemned to drink, to the very dregs, the bitter cup of degradation and sorrow.

I speak not now of the public employment of informers, with a promise of secrecy and extravagant reward; I speak not of the fate of those horrid wretches who have been so often transferred from the table to the dock, and from the dock to the pillory; I speak of what your own eyes have seen, day after day, during the course of this commission, from the box where you are now sitting.

As it is not a vain and false, but an exalted and religious imagination, which leads us to raise our thoughts from the orb which, amidst this universe of worlds, the Creator has given us to inhabit,

and to send them, with something of the feeling which nature prompts and teaches to be proper among children of the same Eternal Parent, to the contemplation of the myriads of fellow-beings, with which his goodness has peopled infinite space; so neither is it false or vain to consider ourselves as interested or connected with our whole race through all time.

They solicit them in one manner, and they execute them in another. They set out with a great appearance of activity, humility and moderation; and they quickly fall into sloth, pride and avarice.

Grateful for the indulgence with which they were favored, and thankful for the patience and politeness with which they were honored; they should certainly be the last to condemn that, in which they themselves were the greatest transgressors.

To carry on with effect an expensive war, and yet be frugal of the public money; to oblige those to serve, whom it may be delicate to offend; to conduct, at the same time, a complicated variety of operations; to concert measures at home, answerable to the state of things abroad; and to gain every valuable end, in spite of opposition from the envious and disaffected;—this is more difficult than is generally thought.

As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father; and I lay down my life for the sheep. Other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also must I bring; and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd. Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life that I might take it again. No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father.

It is no uncommon circumstance in controversy, for the parties to engage in all the fury of disputation, without precisely knowing, themselves, the particulars about which they differ. Hence that fruitless parade of argument, and those opposite pretences to demonstration, with which most debates, on every subject, have been infested. Would the contending parties first be sure of their own meaning, and then communicate their sense to others in plain terms and simplicity of heart, the face of controversy would soon be changed; and real knowledge, instead of imaginary conquest, would be the noble reward of literary toil.

If thou art a child, and hast ever added a sorrow to the soul or a furrow to the silvered brow of an affectionate parent; if thou art a husband, and hast ever caused the fond bosom that ventured its whole happiness in thy arms, to doubt one moment of thy kindness or thy truth; if thou art a friend, and hast ever wronged in thought, or word or deed, the spirit that generously confided in thee;

if thou art a lover, and hast ever given one unmerited pang to that true heart that now lies cold and still beneath thy feet; then be sure that every unkind look, every ungracious word, every ungentle action, will come thronging back upon thy memory, and knocking dolefully at thy soul: then be sure that thou wilt lie down sorrowing and repenting on the grave, and utter the unheard groan, and pour the unavailing tear; more deep, more bitter, because unavailing.

But the pious man is, like Scipio, never less alone than when alone: his solitude and retirement are not only tolerable, but commonly the most grateful part of his life: he can ever with much pleasure, and more advantage, converse with himself: digesting and marshalling his thoughts, his affections, his purposes, into good order: searching and discussing his heart: reflecting on his past ways: enforcing his former good resolutions, and framing new ones: inquiring after edifying truths: stretching his meditations toward the best and the sublimest objects: raising his hopes, and warming his affections towards spiritual and heavenly things: asking himself pertinent questions, and resolving incidental doubts concerning his practice: in fine, conversing with his best Friend in devotion: with admiration and love contemplating the divine perfections displayed in the works of nature, of providence, of grace: praising God for his excellent benefits and mercies: confessing his defects and offences: deprecating wrath and imploring pardon, with grace and ability to amend: praying for the supply of all his wants.

The prophecy will obtain its fulfilment, but not till the fulfilment of the verses which go before it: not till the influence of the gospel has found its way to the human bosom, and plucked out of it the elementary principles of war: not till the law of love shall spread its melting and all-subduing efficacy among the children of one common nature: not till ambition be dethroned from its mastery over the affections of the inner man: not till the guilty splendors of war shall cease to captivate its admirers, and spread the blaze of a deceitful heroism over the wholesale butchery of the species: not till national pride be humbled, and man shall learn that if it be individually the duty of each of us in honor to prefer one another, then let these individuals combine as they may, and form societies as numerous and extensive as they may, and each of these be swelled out to the dimensions of an empire, still, that mutual condescension and forbearance remain the unalterable Christian duties of these empires to each other: not till man learn to revere his brother as man, whatever portion of the globe he occupies, and all the jealousies and preferences of a contracted patriotism be given to the wind: not till war shall cease to be prose-

cuted as a trade, and the charm of all that interest which is linked with its continuance, shall cease to beguile men in the peaceful walks of merchandise, into a barbarous longing after war: not, in one word, till pride, and jealousy, and interest, and all that is opposite to the law of God, and the charity of the gospel, shall be forever eradicated from the character of those who possess an effectual control over the public and political movements of the species: not till all this be brought about; (and there is not another agent in the whole compass of nature that can bring it about but the gospel of Christ, carried home by the all-subduing power of the Spirit to the consciences of men:)—then,* and not till then, will peace come to take up its perennial abode with us, and its blessed advent on earth be hailed by one shout of joyful acclamation throughout all its families: then, and not till then, will the sacred principle of good-will to men circulate as free as the air of heaven among all countries; and the sun, looking out from the firmament, will behold one fine aspect of harmony throughout the wide extent of a regenerated world.

We have been discoursing of infancy, childhood, boyhood, and youth; of pleasures lying upon the unfolding intellect plenteously as morning dew-drops of knowledge inhaled insensibly like fragrance; of dispositions stealing into the spirit like music from unknown quarters; of images uncalled for, and rising up like exhalations; of hopes plucked, like beautiful wildflowers from the ruined tombs that border the highways of antiquity, to make a garland for a living forehead: in a word, we have been treating of nature as a teacher of truth through joy and through gladness, and as a creatress of the faculties by a process of smoothness and delight. We have made no mention of fear, shame, sorrow, nor of ungovernable and vexing thoughts; because, although these have been, and have done mighty service, they are overlooked in that stage of life, when youth is passing into manhood: overlooked, or forgotten.

Unnatural must be that son, and hard his heart, who, after having received from parental love and care, his life, protection, and sustenance, the nurture of the body, and the culture of the soul, could coldly turn away from the hearth of his father and mother, when old age was gathering around them, and their powers were in decay, and their path beset with danger and infirmity, and leave

---

* The following is manifestly understood before this word: "but when it shall be brought about." Strictly speaking, "brought about" was intended by the writer to be followed by "will peace, &c.;" but the parenthesis presented itself, and subsequently, under the influence of his emotions, he forgot the previous structure, and broke in with, "then, and not till then." These noble negligences are characteristic of all great minds. They will be found alike in Demosthenes, Cicero, Paul, Webster, and Chalmers, the author of the sentence under consideration.

them unnoticed and unhonored, to descend the painful declivity of life into a sepulchre of sorrow.

The effect of this devotion of elegant minds to rural occupations, has been wonderful on the face of the country.

A ball of wood could not be thus softened by blows.

I cut it open.

He slept.

Once more unto the breach, my friends, once more,
Or close the wall up with our English dead.

Since plays are but a kind of public feasts,
Where tickets only make the welcome guests;
Methinks, instead of grace, we should prepare
Your taste in prologue, with your bill of fare.

Were you but half so humble to confess,
As you are wise to know, your happiness;
Our author would not grieve to see you sit
Ruling, with such unquestioned power, his wit.

Swans sing before they die: 'Twere no bad thing,
Should certain persons die before they sing.

I had a thing to say, but let it go.
Would he were fatter, but I fear him not.

Protected by that hand, whose law
The threatening storms obey,
Intrepid virtue smiles secure,
As in the blaze of day.

You are meek and humble mouthed;
You sign your place and calling, in full seeming
With meekness and humility; but your heart
Is crammed with arrogance, spleen and pride.

Were I crowned the most imperial monarch,
Thereof most worthy; were I the fairest youth,
That ever made eye swerve; had force and knowledge
More than was ever man's; I would not prize them
Without her love.

I were, indeed, indifferent to fame,
Grudging two lines to immortalize my name.

While malice, Pope, denies thy page
Its own celestial fire;
While critics and while bards in rage,
Admiring, won't admire;

While wayward pens thy works assail,
And envious tongues decry;
These times, though many a friend bewail,
These times bewail not I.

Beauty is but a vain, a fleeting good:
A shining gloss that fadeth suddenly:
A flower that dies when almost in the bud:
A brittle glass that breaketh presently:
A fleeting good, a glass, a gloss, a flower,
Lost, faded, broken, dead, within the hour.

As goods, when lost, we know are seldom found,
As fading gloss no rubbing can excite,
As flowers when dead are trampled on the ground,
As broken glass no cement can unite,
So beauty, blemished once, is ever lost,
In spite of physic, painting, pains and cost.

Where yon old trees bend o'er a place of graves,
And solemn shade a chapel's sad remains;
Where yon scathed poplar through the window waves,
And, twining round, the hoary arch sustains;
There oft, at dawn, as one forgot behind,
Who longs to follow, yet unknowing where,
Some hoary shepherd, o'er his staff reclined,
Pores on the graves, and sighs a broken prayer.

To wake the soul by tender strokes of art;
To raise the genius, and to mend the heart;
To make mankind in conscious virtue bold,
Live o'er the scene, and be what they behold;—
For this the tragic muse first trod the stage:
Commanding tears to stream through every age.

There various news I heard of love and strife:
Of peace and war, health, sickness, death and life:
Of loss and gain: of famine, and of store:
Of storms at sea, and travels on the shore:
Of prodigies and portents in the air:
Of fires and plagues, and stars with blazing hair:
Of turns of fortune; changes in the state;
The falls of favorites; projects of the great:
Of old mismanagements; taxations new:
All neither wholly false, nor wholly true.

By the fair and brave
Who, blushing, unite,
Like the sun and wave
When they meet at night;
By the tear that shows
When passion is nigh,
As the rain-drop flows
From the heat of the sky;
By the first love beat
Of the youthful heart;
By the bliss to meet,
And the pain to part;
By all that thou hast
To mortals given,
Which could it but last,
This earth were heaven;
We call thee hither, entrancing power.

The low of herds
Blends with the rustling of the heavy grain
Over the dark-brown furrows.

Did sweeter sounds adorn my flowing tongue,
Than ever man pronounced, or angel sung;
Had I all knowledge, human and divine,
That thought can reach, or science can define;
And had I power to give that knowledge birth,
In all the speeches of the babbling earth;
Did Shadrach's zeal my glowing breast inspire
To weary tortures, and rejoice in fire;
Or had I faith like that which Israel saw,
When Moses gave them miracles and law;
Yet, gracious Charity, indulgent guest,
Were not thy power exerted in my breast,
That scorn of life would be but wild despair:
A cymbal's sound were better than my voice:
My faith were form: my eloquence were noise.

There is not in the wide world a valley so sweet,
As that vale in whose bosom the bright waters meet:
Oh! the last rays of feeling and life must depart,
Ere the bloom of that valley shall fade from my heart.
Yet it was not that nature had shed o'er the scene
Her purest of crystal and brightest of green;
'Twas not the soft magic of streamlet and hill;

Oh! no ;* it was something more exquisite still:
'Twas, that friends, the beloved of my bosom, were near,
Who made each scene of enchantment more dear;
And who felt how the blessed charms of nature improve,
When we see them reflected from looks that we love.

Thou art not noble,
For all the accommodations that thou bearest,
Are nursed by baseness: thou art by no means valiant,
For thou dost fear the soft and tender fork
Of a poor worm. The best of rest is sleep;
And that thou oft provokest, yet grossly fearest
Thy death, which is no more. Thou art not thyself,
For thou existest on many a thousand grains,
That issue out of dust: happy thou art not,
For what thou hast not, still thou strivest to get;
And what thou hast, forgettest: thou art not certain,
For thy complexion shifts to strange effects,
After the moon. If thou art rich, thou'rt poor;
For, like an ass whose back with ingots bows,
Thou bearest thy heavy riches but a journey,
And death unloads thee. Friend thou hast none,
For thine own bowels, which do call thee sire,
The mere effusion of thy proper loins,
Do curse the gout, serpigo, and the rheum,
For ending thee no sooner: thou hast nor youth nor age,
But, as it were, an after-dinner sleep,
Dreaming on both; for all thy blessed youth
Becomes as aged, and doth beg the alms
Of palsied eld; and when thou art old and rich,
Thou hast neither heat, affection, limb, nor beauty,
To make thy riches pleasant.

Love and awe
Mingled in the regard of Helon's eye,
As he beheld the stranger. He was not
In costly raiment clad, nor on his brow
The symbol of a princely lineage wore;
No followers at his back, nor in his hand
Buckler, or sword, or spear; yet in his mien.
Command sat throned serene; and, if he smiled,
A kingly condescension graced his lips,
The lion would have crouched to, in his lair.

---

* Observe that *no* is the equivalent of the line preceding.

While the trees are leafless,
While the fields are bare,
Buttercups and daisies
Spring up here and there.
Ere the snow-drop peepeth,
Ere the crocus bold,
Ere the early primrose
Opes its paly gold,
Somewhere on a sunny bank,
Buttercups are bright:
Somewhere 'mong the frozen grass
Peeps the daisy white:
Little hardy flowers,
Like to children poor
Playing in their sturdy health
By their mother's door:
Purple with the north wind,
Yet alert and bold:
Fearing not and caring not,
Though they be a-cold.

The Nautilus ever loves to glide
Upon the crest of the radiant tide.

Tree nor shrub
Dares that drear atmosphere; no polar pine
Uprears a veteran front; yet there ye stand,
Leaning your cheeks against the thick-ribbed ice,
And looking up with brilliant eyes to Him
Who bids you bloom unblanched amid the waste
Of Desolation. Man, who, panting, toils
O'er slippery steeps, or, trembling, treads the verge
Of yawning gulfs, o'er which the headlong plunge
Is to eternity, looks shuddering up,
And marks ye in your placid loveliness,
Fearless, yet frail, and, clasping his chill hands,
Blesses your pencilled beauty. 'Mid the pomp
Of mountain summits rushing on the sky,
And chaining the rapt soul in breathless awe
He bows to bind you drooping to his breast,
Inhales your spirit from the frost-winged gale,
And freer dreams of heaven.

CLASS II. COMPOUND INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

Having under the preceding head of compound declarative sentences, adduced very numerous examples of close, compact and loose, I presume that, by this time, the student is sufficiently acquainted with their peculiarities, to recognise them, whether they appear as declaratives, interrogatives or exclamations. I shall not, therefore, quote a greater number of examples than may be necessary to enable the student to obtain a clear conception of the rule of their delivery, and to apply it with facility.

I. DEFINITE INTERROGATIVES.

1. *Close.*

Rule X. The close definite interrogative is delivered either with the upward slide from the beginning to the end, (*see Plate, Fig.* 3,) or with the upward slide at the beginning, passing into a level tone of voice in the middle, and terminating with the upward slide at the end: (*see Plate, Fig.* 15:) when it has a series, i. e. two more members of similar construction; or being still more complex, when either of these members contains a series; they are successively delivered in the same manner as the first, but in a slightly more elevated tone of voice. (*See Plate, Fig.* 12: *see also Ch. III. Modulation, Slides.*)

Of the two methods of delivery stated in the first half of the rule, the first should be adopted in every case in which it is practicable; and it is practicable more frequently than is generally supposed: when, however, the sentence is a very long one, and consequently the space to be traversed by the slide is too great for the compass of the voice, the second must be, necessarily, preferred.

Examples.

Is not this he that sat and begged?

Do the rulers know indeed, that this is the very Christ?

Is not this Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know?

Could not this man, who opened the eyes of the blind, have caused that even this man should not have died?

Have they not in this place every motive, assistance and encouragement to engage them in a virtuous and moral life, and to animate them in the attainment of useful learning?

Is it not remarkable that the same temper of weather, which raises this general warmth in animals, should cover the trees with leaves, and the fields with grass, for their security and concealment, and produce such infinite swarms of insects for the support and sustenance of their respective broods?

Does atheism or universal skepticism dilate the heart with the liberal and generous sentiments, and that love of human kind which would render a man revered and blessed, as the patron of depressed merit, the friend of the widow and the orphan, the refuge and support of the poor and unhappy?

Is it possible in the present state of the public sentiment of the world, with the present rapid diffusion of knowledge, with the present reduction of antiquated error to the test of reason, that such a quarter of the world will be permitted to derive nothing but barbarism from intercourse with the countries which stand at the head of civilization?

Are the miseries of man, and is the fatal necessity of death in contemplation?

Has he not himself, have not all the martyrs after him poured forth their blood in the conflict?

Hast thou not known, hast thou not heard that the everlasting God, the Lord, the Creator of the ends of the earth fainteth not, neither is weary?

Does not the farmer cultivating his lands, does not the mariner navigating his vessel on the ocean, do not professional men in their various pursuits, contribute as really as the statesman in his cabinet to the prosperity of the country?

Are all the feelings of ancestry, posterity and fellow-citizenship; all the charm, veneration and love bound up in the name of country; the delight, the enthusiasm, with which we seek out, after the lapse of generations and ages, the traces of our fathers' bravery and wisdom;—are these all a legal fiction?

Is the gift of articulate speech, which enables man to impart his condition to man, the organized sense which enables him to comprehend what is imparted, is that sympathy which subjects our opinions and feelings, and through them our conduct to the influence of others, and their conduct to our influence, is that chain of cause and effect which makes our characters receive impressions from the generations before us, and puts it in our power by a good or bad precedent to distil a poison or a balm into the characters of posterity,—are these, indeed, all by-laws of a corporation?

Will you believe that the pure system of Christian faith, which appeared eighteen hundred years ago, in one of the obscurest regions of the Roman empire, at the moment of the highest cultivation and of the lowest moral degeneracy; which superseded at once all the curious fabrics of pagan philosophy; which spread almost instantaneously through the civilized world in opposition to the prejudices, the pride, and the persecution of the times; which has already had the most beneficial influence on society, and been the source of almost all the melioration of the human character; and which is now the chief support of the harmony, the domestic happiness, the morals, and the intellectual improvements of the best part of the world; will you believe, I say, that this system originated in the unaided reflections of twelve Jewish fishermen on the sea of Galilee, with the son of a carpenter at their head?

Does prodigal autumn to our age deny
The plenty that once swelled beneath his sober eye?
Will he quench the ray
Infused by his own forming smile at first,
And leave a work so far all blighted and accurst?
Will a man play tricks, will he indulge
A silly, fond conceit of his fair form
And just proportion, fashionable mien,
And pretty face, in presence of his God?
Can we want obedience then
To him, or possibly his love desert,
Who formed us from the dust and placed us here,
Full to the utmost measure of what bliss
Human desires can seek or apprehend?
Canst thou with impious obloquy condemn
The just decree of God, pronounced and sworn,
That to his only Son, by right endued
With regal sceptre, every soul in heaven
Shall bend the knee, and in that honor due
Confess him rightful king?
Will then the merciful One, who stamped our race
With his own image, and who gave them sway
O'er earth, and the glad dwellers on her face,
Now that our flourishing nations far away
Are spread, where'er the moist earth drinks the day,
Forget the ancient care that taught and nursed
His latest offspring?

2. *Compact.*

Single compacts only are employed as interrogatives: at least, I have not met with any double compact interrogatives in the course of my reading. I have found them interwoven with other interrogative sentences, but in this form, they are referred to the head of "Mixed sentences."

The single compact sentence in most of its varieties, (in all, I believe, except those formed on the comparatives, *more*, *better*, *than*, &c.,) is wholly interrogative only when the parts appear in the reversed order, thus: "Is it then a time to remove foundations when the earth itself is shaken?" Restore the natural order of the parts of this sentence, and it ceases to be wholly interrogative: the question being limited to the second part, thus: "When the earth itself is shaken, is it then a time to remove foundations?" In this form the sentence is a variety of the semi-interrogative; and consequently it does not belong here.

Under the head of declarative compacts, I have taken pains to show that the correlative words are sometimes both expressed, sometimes only one, and sometimes neither. I shall take it for granted that this is now understood; and therefore shall adduce examples under the rule indiscriminately.

Rule XI. The compact definite interrogative, when its parts consist of single members, is delivered precisely like the close; (*see preceding Rule*;) but when they contain two or more members, the series in the first part is delivered like the series in the close: and

the series in the second part, like the series of an imperfect loose. (*See Loose.*)

Examples.

Am I therefore become your enemy, because I tell you the truth?

Had you rather Cæsar were living, and die all slaves, than that Cæsar were dead, to live all freemen?

Would you renounce being useful to the present generation, because you feel the envenomed shaft of envy?

Shall we therefore consider these statutes, I have enumerated, as harmless, because they are too wicked for execution?

Do ye so well understand the matter, are your ideas of it so complete, that it is not susceptible of more than this or that?

Is it likely you will succeed in this wish, while you neglect to afford them an example of what you wish them to practice?

Is this then a time to forget the protection of heaven, when the hearts of men are failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth?

Could he possibly have committed this crime, which, all will admit, is at variance with the character hitherto imputed to him, and with the tenor of his life, if he had been sane?

Are not the just, the brave, and the good, necessarily exposed to the disagreeable emotions of dislike and aversion, when they respectively meet with instances of fraud, of cowardice or of villany?

Do you not imagine that Themistocles also, and those that fell at Marathon and at Platea, and the very tombs of our ancestors, will raise a groan, if this man, who, avowedly siding with barbarians, opposed the Greeks, shall be crowned?

Could the children of Israel have been imposed on to receive an Ark, and a Tabernacle, then forged, and a complete set of service and liturgy, as descending from Moses by the direction of God, unless that ark and that service had come to them from their ancestors, as authorized by God?

Is it then possible that we can be indifferent, that we can delay preparation for another state, that we can hesitate to embrace the proffers of grace, when death is an event which may occur at any moment: when it may occur now while I am speaking from the sacred desk?

Then do we not recommend ourselves, when employed either in qualifying ourselves for doing good or in doing it: when we have the common advantage for our constant pursuit: when we seek for pleasure in making ourselves of use, and feel happiness in the degree in which we communicate it?

Should we not think it very unreasonable, if he should, in this case, persist in discrediting the testimony even of a single man, whose veracity he had no reason to suspect; and much more, if he should persist in opposition to the concurrent and continually increasing testimony of numbers?

Shall we deny the occurrence of a given event in a place or times remote, because we did not witness its occurrence: because it was extraordinary: because we cannot account for it on ordinary principles: because they who testified to its occurrence, did not happen to be an Aristotle, a Plato, or a Socrates?

Can the obscurity in which providence hath been pleased to wrap up some of its designs, raise doubts about the justice of the Creator, if the principles of the gospel be admitted: if we be persuaded that the tyrant, whose prosperity astonished us, fulfil the counsel of God: if ecclesiastical history assures us, that Herods and Pilates themselves contributed to the establishment of that Christianity which they meant to destroy: especially, if we admit a state of future reward and punishment?

In their far blue arch,
Sparkle the crowd of stars less brightly
When day is done?
Will he seek to dazzle me with tropes
As with the diamond on his lily hand,
And play his brilliant parts before my eyes,
When I am hungry for the bread of life?

So jest with heaven,
Make such inconstant children of ourselves,
As now again to snatch our palm from palm,
Unswear faith sworn, and on the marriage-bed
Of smiling peace to march a bloody host,
And make a riot on the gentle brow
Of true sincerity?

NOTE. The following examples, if they had a declarative instead of an interrogative construction, would be single compacts of the third form; and of that variety of the third form which, besides having the correlative words understood, has its two parts connected by *and* or *and yet*, or *and then*, expressed. If, as interrogatives, they had the regular construction, they would be classed with semi-interrogatives. The regular form of the first example below, would be the following: "If you are a scholar, shall the land of the Muses ask your help in vain?" This is semi-interrogative; as may be seen by referring to the appropriate head. With the first part, however, as well as the second, constructed interrogatively, to call it a semi-interrogative, would be to misname it. On this account, I have thought it best to introduce it, together with others of a more complex character, in this place. The delivery does not vary materially from the rule; though a delivery approaching that of the perfect loose sentence is often heard, and is not inadmissible. Still, I prefer that which makes the second part begin after the pause with a continuation of the tone with which the first ends, and from thence advance up the slide.

Examples.

Are you a scholar, and shall the land of the Muses ask your help in vain?

Are you a Christian, and do you cheerfully contribute your property to Christianize the heathen world?

Did I grow up side by side with your father, and shall his son pass me like a stranger in these old streets of Padua?

With the eye of the enthusiast do you often gaze at the triumphs of the arts, and will you do nothing to rescue their choicest relics from worse than vandal barbarism?

Are you a mother, rejoicing in all the charities of domestic life; are you a daughter, rich and safe in conscious innocence and parental love; and shall thousands more among the purest and loveliest of your sex, glut the shambles of Smyrna, and be doomed to a capacity inconceivably worse than death?

Can we minister to the intellectual and spiritual wants of Syria, of Greece, of Burmah, of Ceylon, and of the remotest isles of the Pacific; have we enough and to spare for these remote nations and tribes with whom we have no nearer kindred than that Adam is our common parent and Christ our common Saviour; and shall we shut our hands on the call for the soul's food, which is addressed to us by these our brethren, our schoolmates, whose fathers stood side by side with ours, in the great crisis of the country's fortune?

Could thirst of vengeance and desire of fame
Excite the female breast with martial flame;
And shall not love's diviner power inspire
More hardy virtue and more generous fire?

3. *Loose.*

Loose interrogative sentences, both definite and indefinite, are liable to be mistaken for close, in consequence of having the interrogation point placed by printers as often at the end of the parts, as at the end of the sentence alone. (*See Plate Fig.* 12, *a. b. c.*) The examples which follow are pointed in both ways; but the student will observe that when the interrogation is placed after each of the parts, it is not followed by a capital letter, as too often and incorrectly in books. This practice is uniform throughout this work.

RULE XII. The parts relatively considered, should be delivered successively with the upward slide; each part beginning at a slightly more elevated tone of voice: (*see Plate, Fig.* 12:) separately and independently, according as they are simple or compound, close or compact, in conformity with the rules hereinbefore given for their delivery.

1. *Perfect Loose.*

Examples.

Is the tale now told: is the contrast now complete: are our destinies all fulfilled: are we declining or even stationary?

Could he expect the concurrence of every individual in that house; and was he so weak or wicked, as to contrive plans of government of such a texture, that the intervention of circumstances, obvious and unavoidable, would occasion their total failure?

Was it to be wondered at, that a people, so circumstanced, should search for the cause and source of all their calamities; or was it to be wondered at that they should find them in the arbitrary interpretations of their Constitution, and in the prodigal and corrupt administration of their revenues?

Is this the genuine fruit of the pious care of our ancestors, for the security and propagation of religion and good manners to the latest posterity? is this at last the reward of their munificence? or does this conduct correspond with the views, or with the just expectations and demands of your friends and your country?

Had not the Shepherd made them to lie down in green pastures; had he not led them beside the still waters; restored he not their souls; did he not lead them for his name's sake in the paths of righteousness; and was he not with them still, though at length they walked the valley where death had cast his never-departing shadow?

Ought not a title-deed like this to become the acquisition of the nation? ought it not to be laid up in the archives of the people? ought not the price at which it is bought to be a provision for the ease and comfort of the old age of him who drew it? ought not he who at the age of thirty, declared the independence of his country, at the age of eighty to be received by his country in the enjoyment of his own?

Had not a paltry unconstitutional tax, neither in amount nor in principal to be named with the taxes of France, just put the continent of America in a flame; and was it possible that the young officers of the French army should come back to their native land from the war of political emancipation waged on this continent, and sit down contented, under the old abuses at home?

Was it the winter's beating upon the houseless heads of women and children, was it hard labor and spare meals, was it disease, was it the tomahawk, was it the deep malady of a blighted hope, a ruined enterprise and a broken heart aching in its last moments at the recollection of the loved and left beyond the sea, was it some, or all of these united, that hurried this forsaken company to their melancholy fate; and is it possible that neither of these causes, that not all combined, were able to blast this bud of hope?

Is the spot less precious now that eight more seasons have wept their dews over the dear and sacred blood, that has remained for eight more years uncommemorated beneath the sod? are the valor, the self-devotion of the heroes of that day, of

Warren, and Prescott, and Putnam, and Stark, and their gallant associates less deserving of celebration? is this mighty and eventful scene in the opening drama of the Revolution less worthy of celebration, now that eight years more, in the prosperous enjoyment of our liberties, contrasted as they have been with the disastrous struggles in other countries, have given us fresh cause for gratitude to our fathers?

Do they (atheism or universal skepticism) tend to inspire that magnanimity and elevation of mind, that superiority of selfish gratifications, that contempt of danger and of death, when the cause of virtue, of liberty, or their country require it, which distinguish characters of patriots and heroes; is their influence more favorable on the humbler and gentler virtues of private and domestic life; do they soften the heart, and render it more delicately sensible of the thousand nameless duties and endearments of a husband, a father, a friend; do they produce that habitual serenity and cheerfulness of temper, that gayety of heart, which makes a man beloved as a companion; or do they dilate the heart with the liberal and generous sentiments, and that love of human kind, which would render him revered and blessed as the patron of depressed merit, the friend of the widowed and the orphan, the refuge and support of the poor and the unhappy?

Would not a strain of greater loftiness be heard to ascend from those regions where the all-working God had left the traces of his immensity, than from the tame and the humbler scenery of an ordinary landscape; would you not look for a gladder acclamation from the fertile field, than from an arid waste where no character of grandeur made up for the barrenness that was around you; would not the goodly tree, compassed about with the glories of its summer foliage, lift up an anthem of louder gratitude, than the lowly shrub that grew beneath it; would not the flower, from whose leaves every hue of loveliness was reflected, send forth a sweeter rapture than the russet-weed, which never drew the eye of any admiring passenger; and would it not be there that you looked for the deepest tones of devotion, where you saw the towering eminences of nature, or the garniture of her more rich and beauteous adornments?

Can the deep statesman, skilled in great design,
Protect but for a day precarious breath?
Or the tuned follower of the sacred nine,
Soothe with his melody, insatiate death?

Is the sword well suited to the band;
Does 'broidered coat agree with sable gown;

Can Mechlin laces shade a churchman's hand;
Or learning's votaries ape the beaux of town?

Has Nature in her calm majestic march
Faltered with age at last; does the bright sun
Grow dim in heaven; or, in their far blue arch,
Sparkle the crowd of stars, when day is done,
Less brightly?

Has silence pressed her seal upon his lips?
Does adamantine faith invest his heart?
Will he not bend beneath a tyrant's frown?
Will he not melt before ambition's fire?
Will he not soften in a friend's embrace?
Or flow dissolving in a woman's tears?

Is he not thine own,
Thyself in miniature, thy flesh, thy bone;
And hop'st thou not
That since thy strength must with thy years elope,
And then wilt need some comfort to assuage
Health's last farewell, a staff of thine old age,
That then, in recompense of all thy cares,
Thy child shall show respect to thy gray hairs,
Befriend thee, of all other friends bereft,
And give thy life its only cordial left?

2. *Imperfect Loose.*

Examples.

May we doubt how guilty that attachment to pleasure is, which lays waste our understanding: which entails on us ignorance or error: which renders us even more useless than the beings whom instinct alone directs?

Are we so humble, so low, so debased, that we dare not express our sympathy for suffering Greece: that we dare not articulate our detestation of the brutal excesses of which she has been the bleeding victim?

Do not the scriptures clearly show that they who persecute are generally in the wrong, and they who suffer persecution in the right: that the majority has always been on the side of falsehood, and the minority only on the side of truth?

Is any thing more evident than that serious applications cannot be long sustained; that we must sink under their weight; that they soon stupefy or distract us; and that they cannot be carried on but by allowing us intervals of relaxation and mirth?

Do we never meet with charity which melts at suffering: with the honesty which disdains, and is probably superior to falsehood: with the active beneficence which gives to others its time and its labor: with the modesty which shrinks from notice, and gives all its sweetness to retirement: with the gentleness which breathes peace to all, and throws a beautiful lustre over the walks of domestic society?

Are we so mean, so base, so despicable that we may not attempt to express our horror, utter our indignation, at the most brutal and atrocious war that ever stained earth or shocked high Heaven: at the ferocious deeds of a savage and infuriated soldiery, stimulated and urged by the clergy of a fanatical and inimicable religion, and rioting in all the excesses of blood and butchery, at the mere details of which the heart sickens and recoils?

Might not sensibility shed forth its tears, friendship perform its services, liberality impart of its treasures, patriotism earn the gratitude of its country, honor maintain itself entire and untainted, and all the softenings of what is amiable, and all the glories of what is chivalrous and manly, gather into one bright effulgence of moral accomplishment on the person of him, who never, for a single day of his life, subordinates one habit, or one affection, to the will of the Almighty; who is just as careless and unconcerned about God, as if the native tendencies of his constitution had compounded him into a monster of deformity; and who just as effectually realizes this attribute of rebellion against his Maker, as the most loathsome and profligate of the species that walks in the counsel of his own heart and after the light of his own eyes?

Have you never read in your own character, or in the observed character of others, that the claims of the Divinity may be entirely forgotten by the very man to whom society around him yield, and rightly yield, the homage of an unsullied and honorable reputation; that this man may have all his foundations in the world; that every security on which he rests, and every enjoyment upon which his heart is set, lieth on this side of death; that a sense of the coming day in which God is to enter into judgment with him, is, to every purpose of practical ascendency, as good as expunged altogether from his bosom; that he is far in desire, and far in enjoyment, and far in habitual contemplation, away from that God, who is not far from any one of us; that his extending credit, and his brightening prosperity, and his magnificent retreat from business, with all the splendor of its accommodations, are the futurities at which he terminates; and that he goes not in thought beyond them to that eternity, which, in the flight of a few years, will absorb all, and annihilate all?

Hast thou incurred
His anger, who can waste thee with a word;
Who poises and proportions sea and land,
Weighing them in the hollow of his hand;
And in whose awful sight all nations seem
As grasshoppers, as dust, a drop, a dream?

Can I forget what charms did once adorn
My garden, stored with peas, and mint, and thyme,
And rose, and lily, for the Sabbath morn:
The Sabbath bells, and their delightful chime:
The gambols and wild freaks at shearing-time:
My hen's rich nest through long grass scarce espied:
The cowslip-gathering in June's dewy prime:
The swans, that when I sought the water-side,
From far to meet me came, spreading their snowy pride?

Hast thou not learned, what thou art often told
A truth still sacred, and believed of old,
That no success attends on spears and swords
Unblest, and that the battle is the Lord's:
That courage is his creature, and dismay,
The frost that at his bidding speeds away,
Ghastly in feature, and his stammering tongue
With doleful humor, and sad presage hung,
To quell the valor of the stoutest heart,
And teach the combatant the woman's part:
That he bids thousands fly when none pursue,
Saves as he will by many or by few,
And claims forever, as his royal right,
The event and sure decision of the fight?

But is it fit, or can it bear the shock
Of rational discussion, that a man.
Compounded and made up like other men
Of elements tumultuous, in whom lust
And folly in as ample measure meet,
As in the bosoms of the slaves he rules,
Should be a despot absolute, and boast
Himself the only freeman of his land:
Should, when he pleases, and on whom he will,
Wage war, with any or with no pretence
Of provocation given, or wrong sustained,
And force the beggarly last doit by means,
That his own humor dictates, from the clutch

Of poverty, that thus he may procure
His thousands, weary of penurious life,
A splendid opportunity to die?

Miscellaneous Examples of Definite Interrogatives.

Can gray hairs make folly venerable? and is not their period to be reserved for retirement and meditation?

Does he suppose me less capable of gratitude for his patriotism, or sympathy for his sufferings, than if his eyes had first opened upon the light in Massachusetts, instead of South Carolina?

Has the gentleman discovered in former controversies with the gentleman from Missouri that he is overmatched by that senator; and does he hope for an easy victory over a more feeble adversary?

Is it then, for a sovereign state to fold her arms and stand still in submissive apathy, when the loud clamors of the people, whom Providence has committed to her charge, are ascending to heaven for justice?

Can all the illusions of ambition realized, can all the wealth of universal commerce, can all the achievements of successful heroism, or all the establishments of this world's wisdom, secure to empire the permanency of its possessions?

Have any alarms been occasioned by the emancipation of our Catholic brethren; has the bigoted malignity of any individual been crushed; or has the stability of the government, or that of the country been weakened; or is one million of subjects stronger than four millions?

Would it have been quite amiable in me, sir, to interrupt the excellent good feeling? must I not have been absolutely malicious, if I could have thrust myself forward to destroy sensations thus pleasing? was it not much better and kindlier, both to sleep upon them myself, and to allow others, also, the pleasure of sleeping upon them?

Has not Philip, contrary to all treaties, insulted you in Thrace: does he not at this instant, straiten and invade your confederates, whom you have solemnly sworn to protect: is he not an implacable enemy, a faithless ally, the usurper of provinces to which he has no title nor pretence, a stranger, a barbarian, a tyrant?

Do you think, as honest men, anxious for the public tranquillity, conscious that there are wounds not yet completely cicatrized, that you ought to speak this language, at this time, to men who are too much disposed to think that in this very emancipation they have been saved from their own parliament by the humanity of their sovereign?

Can a man, who by divine meditation, is admitted, as it were, into the conversation of this ineffable, incomprehensible Majesty,

think days, or years, or ages, too long for the continuance of so ravishing an honor; shall the trifling amusements, the palling pleasures, the silly business of the world, roll away our hours too swiftly from us; and shall the space of time seem sluggish to a mind exercised in studies so high, so important, and so glorious?

Must I wound his ear with the news of your revolt: must he hear from me, that neither the soldiers raised by himself, nor the veterans who fought under him, are willing to own his authority: must he be told that neither dismissions from the service, nor money lavishly granted, can appease the fury of ungrateful men: must I inform him that here centurions are murdered; that, in this camp, the tribunes are driven from their posts; that here the ambassadors of Rome are detained as prisoners; that the intrenchments present a scene of slaughter; that rivers are discolored with our blood; and that a Roman general leads a precarious life, at the mercy of men inflamed with an epidemic madness?

Do not you, and did not they, feel, that this life cannot be man's only abiding-place? that this spirit cannot pass, upon the hasty and uncertain waves of time, to an eternal nothing? that the restless, irrepressible, and unsatisfied leapings of the heart and the affections, after that which is higher and beyond all that surrounds us, demand that we should credit something which belongs not to the passing hour? that all the economy of nature, the beauty of the earth, the brilliancy of the stars, the glory of the lights of the day and the night, the forms of human strength and loveliness, cannot be taken from us and pass forever from our sight and our enjoyment? that there must be a continued, a prolonged existence, where the eye shall see, the ear hear, beauty fade not, the affections of the heart be not blasted, and the glorious panoply of nature be spread out forever?

Is the world to gaze in admiration on this fine spectacle of virtue; and are we to be told that the Being, who gave such faculties to one of his children, and provides the theatre for their exercise, that the Being, who called this moral scene into existence, and gave it all its beauties, that he is to be forgotten, and neglected as of no consequence?

Are you Christians; and, by upholding duelists, will you deluge the land with blood, and fill it with widows and orphans?

Will you bestow your suffrage, when you know that by withholding it, you may arrest this deadly evil?

And have not prison gloom,
And taunting foes, and threatened doom
Obscured thy courage yet?

Hear ye the sounds that the winds on their pinions
Exultingly roll from the shore to the sea,
With a voice that resounds through her boundless dominions?

Has earth a clod
Its maker meant not should be trod
By man, the image of his God,
Erect and free,
Unscourged by superstition's rod,
To bow the knee?

Is not the lovely woman
I met in the adjacent hall, who, with
An air and port and eye which would have better
Beseemed this palace in its brightest days,
Though in a garb adapted to its present
Abandonment, returned my salutation,—
Is not the same your spouse?

Art thou that traitor angel, art thou he
Who first broke peace in heaven, and faith, till then
Unbroken, and in proud rebellious arms
Drew after him the third part of heaven's sons,
Conjured against the Highest; for which both thou
And they, outcast from God, are here condemned
To waste eternal days in wo and pain?

Is it a time to wrangle, when the props
And pillars of our planet seem to fail,
And Nature with a dim and sickly eye
To wait the close of all?

Canst thou, the tear just trembling on thy lids,
And while the dreadful risk foreseen forbids,
Free too, and under no constraining force,
Unless the sway of custom warp thy course,
Lay such a stake upon the losing side
Merely to gratify so blind a guide?

Shall yon exulting peak,
Whose glittering top is like a distant star,
Lie low beneath the boiling of the deep,
No more to have the morning sun break forth,
And scatter back the mists in floating folds
From its tremendous brow: no more to have
Day's broad orb drop behind its head at even;
Leaving it with a crown of many hues:
No more to be the beacon of the world

For angels to alight on, as the spot
Nearest the stars?

[Oh earth!] dost thou too sorrow for the past
Like man thy offspring; do I hear thee mourn
Thy childhood's unreturning hours, thy springs
Gone with their genial airs and melodies,
The gentle generations of thy flowers,
And thy majestic groves of olden time,
Perished with all their dwellers; dost thou wail
For that fair age of which the poets tell,
Ere the rude winds grew keen with frost, or fire
Fell with the rains, or spouted from the hills,
To blast thy greenness, while the virgin night
Was guiltless and salubrious as the day;
Or, haply, dost thou grieve for those that die:
For living things that trod awhile thy face,
The loved of thee and heaven,—and now they sleep,
Mixed with the shapeless dust on which thy herds
Trample and graze?

2. INDEFINITE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Close.*

RULE XIII. This interrogative should be delivered either with an uninterrupted downward slide, (*see Plate, Fig.* 4,) or with the downward slide at the beginning, passing into a level tone of voice through the middle, and terminating with the downward slide at the end: (*see Plate, Fig.* 16:) when it has two or more members similarly constructed at the beginning, or either of these members has sub-members of similar construction, these members are successively delivered in the same manner, but in a slightly lower tone of voice. (*See Chap. III. Modulation, Slides.*)

Of the two methods spoken of in the beginning of the rule, the first is to be preferred if practicable; but when the sentence is too long for a continuous downward slide, the second must of necessity be adopted: even then the level should rather be comparative than absolute, and the voice perceptibly fall: just perceptibly, and no more.

Examples.

What citizen of our republic is not grateful in view of the contrast which our history presents?

Who ever sought honor, glory, praise or fame of any kind with the same ardor that we fly those most cruel of afflictions, ignominy, contumely, and scorn?

How can it enter into the thoughts of man, that the soul, which

is capable of such immense perfections, and of receiving new improvements to all eternity, shall fall away into nothing almost as soon as it is created?

Where is the man who has not his wrong tendencies to lament?

Whence is it that veteran troops face an enemy with almost as little concern as they perform their exercise?

Which of those faculties or affections, which heaven can be supposed to gratify, have you cultivated and improved?

When was it that Rome attracted most strongly the admiration of mankind, and impressed the deepest sentiment of fear on the hearts of her enemies?

Who can say for how many centuries, safe in their undiscovered fastnesses, they had decked their war-chiefs with the feathers of the eagle's tail and listened to the counsels of their beloved old men?

Why did they not, in the next breath, by way of crowning the climax of their vanity, bid the magnificent fire-ball to descend from its exalted and appropriate region, and perform its splendid tour along the surface of the earth?

What rank or condition of youth is there, that has not daily and hourly opportunities of laying in supplies of knowledge and virtue, that will in every station of life be equally serviceable and ornamental to themselves and beneficial to mankind?

What time can suffice for the contemplation and worship of that glorious, immortal and eternal Being, among the works of whose stupendous creation those numberless luminaries which we may here behold spangling all the sky, may possibly appear but as a few atoms, opposed to the whole earth which we inhabit?

What eye has been permitted to see, what ear to hear, what heart to conceive, those things which God has in preparation for them that love him?

Who that has a memory to look back over the past, who that has a mind to comprehend all the present, who that has an imagination to embody the dim visions of the future, will despair?

Who does not feel, what reflecting American does not acknowledge, the incalculable advantages derived to this land out of the deep foundations of civil, intellectual and moral truth, from which we have drawn in England?

Who that has a heart to love his family, his state, the nation, the living or the unborn world, and who that has a soul that ascends in thought to the throne of God, the mansions of angels, and the habitations of the just made perfect, will despair of the literature of his country?

Who can tell how much of his good or ill success in life, how much of the favor or disregard with which he himself has been

treated, may have depended upon that skill or deficiency in grammar, of which he must have afforded certain and constant evidence?

But what to them the sculptor's art,
His funeral columns, wreaths and urns?

And what is faith, love, virtue, unessayed,
Alone, without exterior help sustained?

Why stand we gazing on the sparkling brine
With wonder, smit by its transparency,
And all enraptured with its purity?

Where shall the lover rest,
Whom the fates sever
From his true maiden's breast,
Parted forever?

And who that walks, where men of ancient days
Have wrought with godlike arm the deeds of praise,
Feels not the spirit of the place control,
Exalt and agitate his laboring soul?

Why
Should we, in the world's riper years, neglect
God's ancient sanctuaries, and adore
Only among the crowd, and under roofs
That our frail hands have raised?

How comes it that the wondrous essence,
Which gave such vigor to those strong-nerved limbs,
Has leapt of its enclosure, and compelled
This noble workmanship of nature thus
To sink into a cold, inactive clod?

Why wouldst thou, but for some felonious end,
In thy dark lantern thus close up the stars
That Nature hung in heaven, and filled their lamps
With everlasting oil, to give due light
To the misled and lonely traveller?

Who that there
Had seen those listening warrior-men,
With their swords grasped, their eyes of flame
Turned on their chief, could doubt the shame,
The indignant shame with which they thrill
To hear those shouts and yet stand still?

And who was she, in virgin prime,
And May of womanhood,
Whose roses here, unplucked by time,
In shadowy tints have stood,

While many a winter's withering blast
Hath o'er the dark cold chamber past
In which her once resplendent form
Slumbered to dust beneath the storm ?

2. *Compact.*

Rule XIV. When both parts of a compact indefinite interrogative consist of a single member each, they are together delivered precisely like the close; (*see preceding Rule;*) but when either of them contains two or more members, the series in the first, is delivered like the series of the close, and the series in the second, like the series of a loose. (*See Loose Sentence below.*)

Examples.

Who would ever have mentioned it, had not Cœlius impeached a certain person ?

What can carry less the appearance of a design to fight, than a man entangled with a cloak, shut up in a chariot, and almost fettered by a wife ?

What could have been his motive for pursuing the conduct he did on that occasion, when his obligations to act differently were numerous and solemn ?

What is so calculated, under the blessing of divine grace, to impress them with the importance of prayer, as the being called at stated intervals to take part in our devout supplications to God ?

Why should we suspend our resistance, why should we submit to an authority like this, if we have the right and superior force on our side ?

What are we to look for, when you shall be no longer hackneyed in the ways of men; when interest shall have completed the obduration of your heart; and when experience shall have improved you in all the arts of guile ?

How can we but despair of ever witnessing on earth a pure and a holy generation, when even parents will utter their polluting levities in the hearing of their own children; and vice and humor and gayety, are all indiscriminately blended into our conversation; and a loud laugh from the initiated and the uninitiated in profligacy, is ever ready to flatter and to regale the man who can thus prostitute his powers of entertainment ?

Why recur to any presumption, for the purpose of bringing the question to a settlement, when, upon this very topic, we are favored with an authoritative message from God: when an actual embassy has come from him, and that on the express errand of

reconciliation: when the records of this embassy have been collected into a volume within the reach of all who will stretch forth their hand to it: when the obvious expedient of consulting the record is before us?

Who would not cherish dreams so sweet,
Though grief and pain should come to-morrow?

What should hinder me to sell my skin,
Dear as I could, if once my heart were in?

Why,
Even for a moment, has our verse deplored
Their wrongs, since they fulfilled their destiny?

Who could guess,
If evermore should meet those mutual eyes,
Since upon night so sweet, such awful morn should rise?

What better can we do, than to the place
Repairing where he judged us, prostrate fall
Before him reverent, and there confess
Humbly our faults, and pardon beg with tears
Watering the ground, and with our sighs
Frequenting, sent from hearts contrite, in sign
Of sorrow unfeigned and humiliation?

So senseless who could be
As long and perseveringly to mourn
For any object of his love, removed
From this unstable world, if he could fix
A satisfying view upon that state
Of pure, imperishable blessedness,
Which reason promises, and Holy Writ
Ensures to all believers?

What profits all that earth,
Or heaven's blue vault, is suffered to put forth
Of impulse or allurement, for the soul
To quit the beaten track of life, and soar
Far as she finds a yielding element
In past or future, far as she can go
Through time or space; if neither in the one
Nor in the other region, nor in aught
That fancy dreaming o'er the map of things,
Hath placed beyond these penetrable bounds,
Words of assurance can be heard: if nowhere
A habitation, for consummate good,

Nor for progressive virtue, by the search
Can be attained; a better sanctuary
From doubt and sorrow, than the senseless grave?

NOTE. Occasionally in sustained prose and poetry, but more frequently in dialogue and conversation, nothing of the first part of the compact is expressed, except the interrogative pronoun: *e. g.*

What, if he should not come?

What, if instead of the few and trifling evils we now endure, we should experience disaster upon disaster until we lay prostrate in a scene of universal desolation?

What, when we fled amain, pursued and struck
With heaven's afflicting thunder, and besought
The deep to shelter us?

What, if the breath that kindled those grim fires,
Awaked, should blow them into sevenfold rage,
And plunge us in the flames?

What, though through all creation there were heard
No happy voices?

3. *Loose.*

RULE XV. The parts of a loose sentence considered relatively, should be successively delivered with the downward slide, beginning at a slightly lower tone of voice; (*see Plate, Fig.* 13;) but separately and independently considered, according as they are simple or compound, close or compact, in conformity to rules already given.

1. *Perfect Loose.*

Examples.

Of what use is salt, if it hath lost its savor; or of what use is the sword-blade, if it doth not cut?

But what interest could he have in abusing this man's character to me; or why should I question his truth, when he assured me, that this man had never performed an act of charity in his life?

Why was the French revolution so bloody and destructive: why was our revolution of 1641 comparatively mild: why was our revolution of 1688 milder still: why was the American revolution, considered as an internal movement, the mildest of all?

What fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness? and what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with

an infidel? and what agreement hath the temple of God with idols?

Who then will sustain the expense, if not the Christian world; and what portion of the Christian world rather than the American churches; and what district of these churches, rather than that in which we are assembled; and what individuals rather than ourselves?

Where is the very possibility of entering into these thoughts and resolutions? what delight is there in expecting misery without end? what variety in finding one's self encompassed with impenetrable darkness? or what consolation in despairing forever of a comforter?

How shall I attempt to follow them through the succession of great events which a rare and kind Providence crowded into their lives: how shall I attempt to count all the links of that bright chain, which binds the perilous hour of their first efforts for freedom, with the rich enjoyment of its consummation: how shall I attempt to enumerate the posts they filled and the trusts they discharged at home and abroad?

Who is it, that will best possess and most effectually exercise these more than magic powers? who is it, that will most effectually stem the torrent of human passions, and calm the raging waves of human vice and folly? who is it, that, with the voice of a Joshua, shall control the course of nature herself in the perverted heart, and arrest the luminaries of wisdom and virtue in their rapid revolutions round this little world of man?

But how shall we pursue this conspiracy into its other ramifications: how shall we be able to neutralize that insinuating poison which distils from the lips of grave and respectable citizens: how shall we be able to dissipate that gloss which is thrown by the smile of elders and superiors over the sins of forbidden indulgence: how can we disarm the bewitching sophistry which lies in all these evident tokens of complacency on the part of advanced and reputable men: how is it possible to trace the progress of the sore evil throughout all the business and intercourse of society: how can we stem the influence of evil communications, when the friend and the patron, and the man who had cheered and signalized us by his polite invitations, turns his own family-table into a nursery of licentiousness: how can we but despair of ever witnessing on earth a pure and a holy generation, when even parents will utter their polluting levities in the hearing of their own children; and vice and humor and gayety, are all indiscriminately blended into one conversation; and a broad laugh from the initiated and the uninitiated in profligacy, is ever ready to flatter and regale the man who can thus prostitute his powers of entertainment?

Who in such a night will dare
To tempt the wilderness;
And who 'mid thunder peals can hear
Our signal of distress?

Why is the crowd so great to-day;
And why do the people shout "huzza;"
And why is yonder felon given
Alone to feed the birds of heaven?

And where shall Israel lave her bleeding feet;
And when shall Zion's songs again seem sweet;
And Judah's melody once more rejoice
The hearts that leaped before its heavenly voice?

Yet why should I mingle in fashion's full herd?
Why crouch to her leaders, or cringe to her rules?
Why bend to the proud, or applaud the absurd?
Why search for delight in the friendship of fools?

Where is that standard which Pelagio bore,
When Cava's traitor-sire first called the band
That dyed thy mountain-streams with Gothic gore:
Where are those bloody banners which of yore
Waved o'er thy sons victorious to the gale,
And drove at last the spoilers to their shore?

What can be worse
Than to dwell here, driven out from bliss, condemned
In this abhorred deep to utter wo;
Where pain of unextinguishable fire
Must exercise us without hope of end:
The vassals of his anger, when the scourge
Inexorable, and the torturing hour
Call us to penance?

Who but rather turns
To heaven's broad fire his unconstrained view,
Than to the glimmering of a waxen flame:
Who that, from Alpine heights, his laboring eye
Shoots round the wide horizon, to survey
Nilus or Ganges rolling his bright wave
Through mountains, plains, through empires black with shade,
And continents of sand, will turn his gaze
To mark the windings of a scanty rill
That murmurs at his feet?

2. *Imperfect Loose.*

Examples.

When saw we thee a hungered and fed thee; or thirsty and gave thee drink?

By whom is this profusion praised, but by wretches who consider him as subservient to their purposes; sirens that entice him to shipwreck; and cyclops that are gaping to devour him?

What weightier recommendation to our assent can any doctrine have than that, as it tends to improve us in virtue, so the more virtuous we are, the more firmly we assent to it; or, the better judges we are of truth, the fuller assurance we have of its truth?

To whom do we owe it, that in this favored land the gospel of the grace of God has best displayed its power to bless humanity, by uniting the anticipations of a better world with the highest interests and pursuits of this: by carrying its merciful influence into the very business and bosoms of men: by making the ignorant wise, and the miserable happy: by breaking the fetters of the slave, and teaching the babe and suckling those simple and sublime truths, which give to life its dignity and virtue, and fill immortality with hope?

To whom but to the Father of light, in whom there is no darkness at all, can we be indebted, that now, persons of the slenderest capacities may view those elevated and beneficial truths in the strongest point of light, which the finest spirits of the Gentile world could not before fully ascertain: that our meanest mechanics, with a moderate share of application, may have juster and fuller notions of God's attributes, of eternal happiness, of every duty respecting their Maker, mankind and themselves, than the most distinguished scholars among the heathen could attain to, after a life laid out in painful researches?

To whom do we owe it, that the pure and powerful light of the gospel is now shed abroad over these countries, and rapidly gaining upon the darkness of the western world; that the importance of religion to the temporal welfare and to the permanence of wise institutions, is here beginning to be felt in its just measure; that the influence of a divine revelation is not here, as in almost every other section of christendom, wrested to purposes of worldly ambition; that the holy Bible is not sealed from the eyes of those for whom it was intended; and that the best charities and noblest powers of the soul are not degraded by the terrors of a dark and artful superstition?

What could tend more to perpetuate the memory of an event, than to deliver a whole people by public, glorious miracles, from

intolerable slavery; to publish a very extraordinary system of laws immediately from heaven; to put this law in writing together with the covenant for obeying it; to make the tenure of the estates depend on the original division of the land, to men who saw the miracles, and first took possession, and on the proximity of relation by descent to them; to appoint a return of lands every fiftieth year, which should give occasion to canvass those descents; to order a Sabbath every seventh year for the land, the loss of which should be supplied by the preceding year's increase; and to select a whole tribe, consisting of many thousands, to be the guardians, and, in some degree, the judges and executors of this law?

How shall I attempt to enumerate the posts they filled and the trusts they discharged at home and abroad, both in the councils of their native states and of the confederation, both before and after the adoption of the federal constitution; the codes of law, and the systems of government they aided in organizing; the foreign embassies they sustained; the alliances with foreign states they contracted when America was weak; the loans and subsidies they procured from foreign powers, when America was poor; the treaties of peace and commerce, which they negotiated; their participation in the federal government; (Mr. Adams as the first Vice-President, Mr. Jefferson as the first Secretary of State;) their mutual possession of the confidence of the only man, to whom his country accorded a higher place; and their successive administrations in chief of the interests of this great Republic?

> How acquire
> The inward principle that gives effect
> To outward argument: the passive will,
> Meek to submit: the active energy,
> Strong and unbounded to embrace, and firm
> To keep and cherish?
>
> Why should we thus, with an untoward mind,
> And in the weakness of humanity,
> From natural wisdom turn our hearts away;
> To natural comfort shut our eyes and ears;
> And, feeding on disquiet, thus disturb
> The calm of nature with our restless thoughts?
>
> Who shall be named, in the resplendent line
> Of sages, martyrs, confessors, the man
> Whom the best might of conscience, truth and hope,
> For one day's little compass, has preserved
> From painful and discreditable shocks
> Of contradiction: from some vague desire

Culpably cherished, or corrupt relapse
To some unsanctioned fear?

Why in age
Do we revert so fondly to the walks
Of childhood, but that there the soul discerns
The dear memorial footsteps, unimpaired,
Of her own native vigor: thence can hear
Reverberations, and a choral song
Commingling with the incense that ascends,
Undaunted, toward the imperishable heavens,
From her own lonely altar?

How, think you, would they tolerate this scheme
Of fine propensities, that tends, if urged
Far as it might be urged, to sow afresh
The weeds of Roman fantasy, in vain
Uprooted; to reconsecrate our wells
To good Saint Fillan, and to fair Saint Anne;
And, from long banishment, recall Saint Giles
To watch again with tutelary care
O'er stately Edinborough, throned on crags?

Miscellaneous Examples of Indefinite Interrogatives.

What are we to do, if the government and the whole community is of the same description?

What safety have any of us in our persons, what security for our rights, if the law shall be set aside?

By what means is tyranny, by what means are the excesses of arbitrary government most likely to be produced?

Where, then, were these guardians of the constitution, these vigilant sentinels of our rights and liberties, when this law was passed?

On what ground, then, dare you speak lightly of the law, or move that, in a criminal trial, judges should advance one step beyond what it permits them to go?

Where, then, is the justification of the attempt to produce a war of commercial regulations with Great Britain: passing over greater objections to the policy observed towards us by other nations?

In what school did the worthies of our land, the Washingtons, Henrys, Hancocks, Franklins, Rutledges of America, learn those principles of civil liberty, which were so nobly asserted by their wisdom and valor?

How is it that tyranny has thus triumphed: that the hopes with which we greeted the French Revolution, have been crushed: that

a usurper plucked up the last roots of the tree of liberty, and planted despotism in its place?

By what title do you, Naso, sit in that chair, and preside in this judgment: by what right, Attius, do you accuse, or I defend: whence all the solemnity and pomp of judges, and clerks, and officers, of which this house is full?

Why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam in thine own eye; or how wilt thou say to thy brother, Let me pull out the mote out of thine eye, and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Why should not divine faithfulness, supposing the truth of this absurd reasoning, transcend our poor understandings as much as divine goodness and justice; and why may not God, consistently with this attribute, crush every hope which his word has raised?

What are we to think of those gentlemen, who, not only with proper and decent, but with laudable motives, so long, so perseveringly, so pertinaciously opposed that voice of the people, which had repeatedly, and for many years declared itself against them, through the organ of their representatives?

What place would be drearer than the future mansions of Christ, to one who should want sympathy with their inhabitants: who could not understand their language: who would feel himself a foreigner there: who would be taught, by the joys which he could not partake, his own loneliness and desolation?

Now what must we expect, when Christians of all capacities and dispositions, the ignorant, prejudiced and self-conceited, imagine it their duty to prescribe opinions to christendom, and to open or shut the door of the church according to the decision which their neighbors may form on some of the most perplexing points of theology?

What, then, must be my feelings, what ought to be the feelings of a man cherishing such sentiments, when he sees an act contemplated, which lays ruin at the root of all these hopes: when he sees a principle of action about to be usurped, before the operation of which, the bands of this constitution are no more than flax before the fire, or stubble before the whirlwind?

Where were the ten thousand brisk boys of Shaftesbury, the members of ignoramus juries, the wearers of Polish medals, when the time of retribution came: when laws were strained, and juries packed, to destroy the leaders of the Whigs: when charters were invaded: when Jeffries and Kirke were making Somersetshire, what Lauderdale and Graham had made Scotland?

Why has every State acknowledged the contrary; why were deputies from all the States sent to the Convention; why have complaints of national and individual distresses been echoed and re-echoed throughout the continent; why has our general govern-

ment been so shamefully disgraced, and our constitution violated; wherefore have our laws been made to authorize a change; and wherefore are we now assembled here?

Why should I mention the impressment of our seamen: depredation on every branch of our commerce; including the direct export trade, and made under laws which professedly undertake to regulate our trade with other nations: negotiation resorted to, time after time, till it is become hopeless: the restrictive system persisted in to avoid war, and in the vain expectation of returning justice?

What member of this house can say, with certainty, that he has, on all occasions, construed the constitution correctly; and who among us would be satisfied to stake all his hopes and prospects on the issue of an investigation, which, disregarding all respect for the purity of the motive, should seek only to discover an inadvertent error, resulting from a defect of judgment in the attainment of objects identified with the best interests of the nation?

What mystic spell is that which so blinds us to the suffering of our brethren, which deafens to our ear the voice of bleeding humanity, when it is aggravated by the shriek of dying thousands: which makes the very magnitude of the slaughter throw a softening disguise over its cruelties and its horrors: which causes us to eye with indifference the field that is crowded with the most revolting abominations, and arrests that sigh, which each individual would singly have drawn from us, by the report of the many who have fallen and breathed their last in agony along with him?

From what source does the gentleman derive the principle that a right, inherent in the nature of man, which he inhales with his first breath, which grows with his growth and strengthens with his strength, which has the fiat of God for its sanction, and is incorporated in the code of all the nations of the earth, becomes extinct with regard to those who, from motives of policy or humanity, may forbear to exercise it for any number of years: that a common law is thereby entailed on the American people to the latest generations, by which they are required to bend beneath the tomahawk and scalping-knife of the savage, and submit to every cruelty and enormity without the privilege of retaliating on the enemy the wrongs and injuries we have suffered by his wanton transgressions of the rules of civilized warfare?

Who would be doomed to gaze upon
A sky without a cloud or sun?

Why fly to folly, why to phrensy fly
For rescue from the blessings we possess?

Where, where for shelter shall the guilty fly,
When consternation turns the good man pale?
Why in this thorny wilderness so long,
Since there's no promised land's ambrosial bower?
Wherefore dost thou urge the name of hands,
To bid Æneas tell the tale twice o'er
How Troy was burnt, and he made miserable?
Wherefore rejoice: what conquest brings he home:
What tributaries follow him to Rome,
To grace in captive bonds his chariot-wheels?
What hero like the man who stands himself:
Who dares to meet his naked heart alone:
Who hears intrepid the full charge it brings;
Resolved to silence future murmurs there?

Who
Shall shake these solid mountains, this firm earth
And bid those clouds and waters take a shape
Distinct from that which we and all our sires
Have seen them wear on their eternal way?
What need we any spur but our own cause
To prick us to redress; what other bond,
Than secret Romans that have spoke the word,
And will not palter; and what other oath,
Than honesty to honesty engaged
That this shall be, or we will fall for it?

Who proclaims to me
That there were crimes made venial by the occasion;
That passion was our nature; that the goods
Of Heaven waited on the goods of fortune:
Who showed me his humanity secured
By his nerves only: who deprived me of
All power to vindicate myself and race
In open day?
Why did Wolsey, near the steps of fate,
On weak foundations raise the enormous weight?
Why but to sink beneath misfortune's blow
With louder ruins to the gulfs below?
What gave great Villiers to the assassin's knife,
And fixed disease on Harley's closing life;
What murdered Wentworth; and what exiled Hyde,
By kings protected and to kings allied?

3 INDIRECT INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

RULE XVI. The indirect interrogative, if of a close or compact construction, is delivered with the upper emphatic sweep to the emphatic word and the lower from it: if of a perfect or imperfect loose construction, each part is delivered in the same manner. (*See Plate, Fig.* 14 : *a. b. See also Ch. III. Mod. Slides.*)

In a series of indirect, the last, and sometimes all but the first, are delivered like a declarative: ending with partial and perfect close. (*See ibid. c.*)

1. *Examples of the first kind.*

He went to Europe after you saw him on that occasion ?
He admitted the validity of the deed, when you produced it ?

Ros. Patience once more, whiles our compact is urged.
You say, if I bring in your Rosalind
You will bestow her on Orlando here ? [*To the Duke.*]
Duke S. That would I, had I kingdoms to give with her.
Ros. And you say you will have her, when I bring her ? [*To Orlando.*]
Orl. That would I, were I of all kingdoms, king.
Ros. You say you'll marry me, if I be willing ? [*To Phebe.*]
Phe. That would I, should I die the hour after.
Ros. But if you do refuse to marry me
You'll give yourself to this most faithful shepherd here ?
Phe. So is the bargain.
Ros. You say, that you'll have Phebe, if she will ? [*To Silvius.*]
Sil. Though to have her and death were both one thing.

Hard state of things, that one may believe one's fears; but cannot rely upon one's hopes ?

2. *Examples of the second kind.*

[And there came a leper and worshipped him: saying,] Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean ? [And Jesus put forth his hand and touched him: saying, I will: be thou clean.*]

[And the younger said unto his father,] Father, give me the portion of goods that falleth to me ? [And he divided unto them his living.*]

3. *Examples of the third kind.*

[So when they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me more than these? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord :] thou knowest that I love thee ? [He saith unto

---

* To read the parts of these sentences, not included in brackets, as many do, with the perfect close, is to give them an air of impertinence, or impudence: an air entirely remote from he humble assurance and supplication which they are designed to express.

him, Feed my lambs. He saith unto him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord:] thou knowest that I love thee? [He saith unto him, Feed my sheep. He saith unto him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me; and he said unto him] Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee? [Jesus saith unto him, Feed my sheep.*]

[And she said, Truth, Lord:] yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their master's table?

4. THE DOUBLE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE.

RULE XVII. As a whole, this sentence should be delivered with the upward slide to the disjunctive *or*, and with the downward slide from it: as the parts may be either simple or compound, and if compound, close, compact or loose or semi-interrogative, their delivery, independently considered, must be modified accordingly. (*See Plate, Fig.* 5. *See also Ch. III. Mod. Slides.*)

Examples.

To be, or not to be?

Was it fancy or was it fact?

Art thou he that should come, or do we look for another?

Are the stars that gem the vault of the heavens above us, mere decorations of the night, or suns and centres of planetary systems?

Is talent or genius confined to the rich and powerful; or is it conferred indiscriminately by a benevolent Deity on poor and rich, and weak and powerful?

Do you question me as an honest man should do for my simple, true judgment? or would you have me speak after my custom, as being a professed tyrant of the sex?

Is there nothing that whispers to that right honorable gentleman, that the crisis is too big, that the times are too gigantic, to be ruled by the little hackneyed and every-day means of ordinary corruption; or are we to believe, that he has within himself a conscious feeling, that disqualifies him from rebuking the ill-timed selfishness of his new allies?

Did those great Italian masters begin and proceed in their art without choice of method, and always draw with the same ease and freedom; or did they observe some method: beginning with simple and elementary parts, an eye, a nose, a finger, which they drew with great pains and care; often drawing the same thing in

---

* See Note on preceding page.

order to draw it correctly; and so proceeding with patience and industry, till, after considerable length of time, they arrived at the masterly manner you speak of?

Is it the cold and languid speaker, whose words fall in such sluggish and drowsy motion from his lips, that they can promote nothing but the slumbers of his auditory, and minister opiates to the body, rather than stimulants to the mind; is it the unlettered fanatic without method, without reason, with incoherent raving, and vociferous ignorance, calculated to fit his hearers, not for the kingdom of heaven, but for a hospital of lunatics; is it even the learned, ingenious and pious minister of Christ, who, by neglect or contempt of the oratorical art, has contracted a whining, monotonous sing-song of delivery to exercise the patience of his flock, at the expense of other Christian graces? or is it the genuine orator of heaven, with a heart sincere, upright and fervent: a mind stored with that universal knowledge, required as the foundation of the art: with a genius for the invention, a skill for the disposition, and a voice for the elocution of every argument to convince and every sentiment to persuade?

Will you believe that the pure system of Christian faith which appeared eighteen hundred years ago, in one of the obscurest regions of the Roman empire, at the moment of the highest mental cultivation and of the lowest moral degeneracy; which superseded at once all the curious fabrics of pagan philosophy; which spread almost instantaneously through the civilized world in opposition to the prejudices, the pride, and the persecution of the times; which has already had the most beneficial influence on society, and been the source of almost all the melioration of the human character; and which is now the chief support of the harmony, the domestic happiness, the moral and the intellectual improvement of the best part of the world;—will you believe, I say, that this system originated in the unaided reflections of twelve Jewish fishermen on the sea of Galilee, with the son of a carpenter at their head? or will you admit a supposition which solves all the wonders of this case: which accounts at once for the perfection of the system, and the miracle of its propagation: that Jesus was, what he professed to be, the prophet of God; and that his apostles were, as they declared, empowered to perform the miracles which subdued the incredulity of the world?

Was it a wailing bird of the gloom,
Which shrieks on the house of wo all night;
Or a shivering fiend that flew to a tomb?

Are thy wild children like thyself arrayed,
Strong in immortal and unchecked delight

Which cannot fade ;
Or, to mankind allied :
Toiling with wo, and passion's fiery sting,
Like thine own home, where storms or peace preside,
As the winds bring ?

Does beauty ever deign to dwell, where health,
And active use are strangers ; is her charm
Confessed in aught, whose most peculiar ends
Are lame and fruitless ; or did nature mean
This pleasing call the herald of a lie,
To hide the shame of discord and disease,
And catch with fair hypocrisy the heart
Of idle faith ?

Wilt thou fly
With laughing Autumn to the Atlantic isles,
And range with him the Hesperian fields, and see
Where'er his fingers touch the fruitful grain,
The branches shoot with gold ; where'er his step
Marks the glad soil, the tender clusters grow
With purple ripeness, and invest each hill
As with the blushes of the evening sky ;
Or wilt thou rather stoop thy vagrant plume,
Where, gliding through his daughter's honored shades,
The smooth Peneus from his glassy flood
Reflects purpureal Tempe's pleasant scene ?

5. THE SEMI-INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE.

RULE XVIII. As the declarative or declarative exclamatory part of this sentence may form together with the interrogative either a close, compact or loose sentence, it must, of course, terminate with the bend or partial close: the interrogative part must be delivered like the species to which it belongs.

The only exception to the first part of the rule, of which I am at present aware, is a variety of the single compact without correlative words, and having its first part imperative ; beginning, for example, with the word "suppose." In this case the compact delivery is exchanged for the loose ; that is, the declarative or declarative exclamatory part ends with partial close, instead of the bend, its appropriate termination. (*See Rule VII. Exception* 5.)

Examples.

Some have sneeringly asked, Are the Americans too poor to pay a few pounds on stamped paper ?

But the gentleman inquires, why he was made the object of such a reply : why he was singled out ?

And first I ask, what is that country: what is this golden prize for which we are to contend?

Then Peter said unto him, Lord, speakest thou this parable unto us, or unto all?

Friends of learning! would you do homage at the shrine of literature: would you visit her clearest founts?

And some of the Pharisees, who were with him, heard these words, and said unto him, Are we blind also?

Then the chief captain took him by the hand, and went with him aside privately, and asked him, What is that thou hast to tell me?

I am sensible you will be ready to say, What is all this to the purpose?

Knowing this first: that there shall come in the last days, scoffers, walking after their own lusts, and saying, where is the promise of his coming?

He that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen, how can he love God whom he hath not seen?

He that planted the ear, shall he not hear? he that formed the eye, shall he not see? he that chastiseth the heathen, shall he not correct? he that teacheth man knowledge, shall he not know?

Thou therefore that teachest another, teachest thou not thyself? thou that preachest, a man should not steal, dost thou steal? thou that sayest a man should not commit adultery, dost thou commit adultery? thou that abhorrest idols, dost thou commit sacrilege? thou that makest thy boast of the law, through breaking the law, dishonorest thou God?

Though his wealth was that of the Lydian king in the plenitude of his prosperity and glory, yet was he happy?

But because the North joins hands with the South, shall the iniquity go unpunished or unrebuked: has God's throne fallen before Mammon's?

Sir, when these sentiments shall become prevalent, What, think you, will become of that system: how long will it last after the payment of duties shall come to be considered a badge of servitude?

When the African was first brought to these shores, would he have violated a solemn obligation by slipping his chain, and flying back to his native home: would he not have been bound to seize the precious opportunity of escape?

If the visit were often repeated, if the disappointment you received from this cause were frequent or perpetual, if you saw a systematic design of thwarting you by these galling and numerous interruptions, would you not cordially hate the visiter, and give the most substantial evidence of your hatred, too, by shunning or shutting him out?

If the word spoken by angels, was steadfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense of reward, how shall we escape if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed by those that heard him: God also bearing them witness both with signs and wonders, and divers miracles and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will?

If the widows and orphans, which this wasting evil has created, and is yearly multiplying, might all stand before you, could you witness their tears: listen to their details of anguish? should they point to the murderers of their fathers, their husbands and their children, and lift up their voice and implore your aid to arrest an evil which has made them desolate, could you disregard their cry? had you beheld a dying father conveyed bleeding and agonizing to his distracted family, had you heard their piercing shrieks, and witnessed their frantic agony, would you reward the savage man who had plunged them in distress? had the duelist destroyed your neighbor, had your own father been killed by the man who solicits your suffrage, had your son been brought to your door, pale in death, and weltering in blood, laid low by his hand, would you think the crime a small one?

And while they are dropping round us like the leaves of autumn and scarce a week passes that does not call away some member of the veteran ranks, already so sadly thinned, shall we make no effort to hand down the traditions of their day to our children; to pass the torch of liberty which we received in all the splendor of its first enkindling, bright and flaming to those who stand next us in the line; so that when we shall come to be gathered to the dust where our fathers are laid, we may say to our sons and grandsons, If we did not amass, we have not squandered your inheritance of glory?

You were pleased with the lonely visitants, that brought beauty on their wings and melody in their throats; but could you insure the continuance of this agreeable entertainment?

They could not behold the workings of the heart, the quivering lips, the trickling tears, the loud yet tremulous joys of the millions whom the vote of this night would forever save from the cruelty of corrupted power; but was not the true enjoyment of their benevolence increased by the blessing being conferred unseen?

It is easy for us to maintain her doctrine, at this late day, when there is but one party on the subject, an immense people; but what tribute shall we bestow, what sacred pean shall we raise over the tombs of those who dared, in the face of unrivalled power, and within reach of majesty, to blow the blast of freedom throughout a subject continent?

We read how many days they could support the fatigues of a march; how early they rose; how late they watched; how many hours they spent in the field, in the cabinet, in the court, in the study; how many secretaries they kept employed; in short, how hard they worked; but who ever heard of its being said of a man in commendation that he could sleep fifteen hours out of the twenty-four; that he could eat six meals a day; and that he never got tired of his easy-chair?

Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness: looking for and hastening unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire, shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?

Seeing then that the soul has many different faculties, or in other words, many different ways of acting; that it can be intensely pleased, or made happy by all these different faculties, or ways of acting; that it may be endowed with several latent faculties, which it is not at present in a condition to exert; that we cannot believe the soul is endowed with any faculty which is of no use to it; that whenever any one of these faculties is transcendently pleased, the soul is in a state of happiness; and in the last place, considering that the happiness of another world is to be the happiness of the whole man; who can question but that there is an infinite variety in these pleasures we are speaking of; and that the fulness of joy will be made up of all those pleasures which the nature of the soul is capable of receiving?

Kindly separated by nature and a wide ocean from the exterminating havoc of one quarter of the globe; too high-minded to endure the degradations of the others; possessing a chosen country, with room enough for our descendants to the thousandth and thousandth generation; entertaining a due sense of our equal rights to the use of our own faculties, to the acquisitions of our own industry, to honor and confidence from our fellow-citizens, resulting, not from birth, but our own actions, and their sense of them; enlightened by a benign religion, professed, indeed, and practised in various forms, yet all of them inculcating honesty, truth, temperance, gratitude, and the love of man; acknowledging and adoring an overruling Providence, which, by all its dispensations, proves that it delights in the happiness of man here, and in his greater happiness hereafter;—with all these blessings, what more is necessary to make us a happy and prosperous people?

Brutes in our end and expectations, how can we be otherwise in our pursuits?

Convince them of this, and will they not shudder at the thought of subverting their political constitution: of suffering it to degenerate into aristocracy or monarchy?

Let the understanding remain uninformed till half the age of man is past, and what improvement is the best then likely to make; and how irksome would it seem to be put upon any?

We find a Solomon discovering his error, acknowledging that he had erred, and bearing testimony to religion and virtue as alone productive of true happiness, indeed; but where are we to look for another among the votaries of sensuality, thus affected: thus changed?

Suppose that out of compliment to the mockers of missionary zeal, we relinquished its highest, and, indeed, its identifying object; suppose we confined our efforts exclusively to civilization, and consented to send the plow and the loom instead of the cross; and admitting that upon this reduced scale of operation, we were as successful as could be desired, till we had even raised the man of the woods into the man of the city, and elevated the savage into the sage; what, I ask, have we effected, viewing man, as with the New Testament in our hands, we must view him, in the whole range of his existence?

Suppose you have a very valuable horse, gentle under the treatment of others, but ungovernable when you attempt to use him; would you not endeavor, by all means, to conciliate his affections, and to treat him in a way most likely to render him tractable? or, if you have a dog, highly prized for his fidelity, watchfulness and care of your flocks; who is fond of your shepherds and playful with them, and yet snarls whenever you come in his way; would you attempt to cure his faults by angry looks or words, or by any other marks of resentment?

It was his deliberate conviction, that there was not a virtuous man throughout the union, who would now think it criminal to smuggle into the country every article consumed in it; and why?

England is at peace with France and Spain; but does she suppress the names of Trafalgar and the Nile: does she overthrow the towers of Blenheim castle, eternal monuments of the disasters of France: does she tear down from the rafters of her chapels, where they have for ages waved in triumph, consecrated to the God of battles, the banners of Cressy and Agincourt? No; she is wiser: wiser did I say?

The baptism of John: was it from heaven, or of men?

Then said Jesus unto them, I also will ask you one thing: Is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good, or to do evil? to save life or to destroy it?

But to add reason to precedent, and to view this art in its use as well as its dignity: will it not be allowed of some importance, when it is considered, that eloquence is one of the most considerable auxiliaries of truth?

And when they were come, they say unto him, Master, we know that thou art true, and carest for no man; for thou regardest not the person of men, but teachest the way of God in truth: Is it lawful to give tribute unto Cæsar, or not? shall we give, or shall we not give?

We therefore confirm whatever, upon a single but unquestionable evidence, has been produced from this house; and shall we think of ratifying the acts of Cæsar, yet abolish his laws: those laws which he himself, in our sight, repeated, pronounced, enacted: laws which he valued himself upon passing: laws in which he thought the system of our government was comprehended: laws which concern our provinces and our trials?

The imaginations of those whom I have the honor to address, will be able to heighten this contrast, by a hundred traits on either side, for which I have not time; but even as I have presented it, will it be deemed extravagant, if I say, that there is a greater difference between the educated child of civilized life and the New Zealand savage, than between the New Zealand savage and the ourang-outang?

He took that number merely to avoid a contradiction that might divert the current of debate into an improper channel; for he was credibly informed the army did not amount to one half the number he had stated; but taking it at three thousand, on what principle could ministers even justify confining the operations of this active and spirited general by so scanty a force?

He did not mean absolutely to say, that so many were actually in the service; perhaps not a tenth part of them could be produced; but the account of them was to be seen on the table; and what language could properly describe the fraudulent conduct of ministers in imposing so grievous a burden on the people without necessity?

He would take, however, if they pleased, the other alternative: he would suppose every man, charged in the estimate, really employed; and that it was necessary to keep eighty thousand on the defensive, that three thousand might be brought into the field: need there any thing else be urged to prove the ruinous tendency of the American war?

O! say: what mystic spell is that, which deafens to our ear the voice of bleeding humanity, when it is aggravated by the shriek of dying thousands: which makes the very magnitude of the slaughter throw a softening disguise over its cruelties and horrors: which causes the eye to survey with indifference, the field that is crowded with the most revolting abominations, and arrests that sigh, which each individual would singly have drawn

from us, by the reports of the many who have fallen, and breathed their last agony along with him ?

Ungrateful sinners ! whence this scorn
Of God's long suffering grace ?

They leave their crimes for history to scan
And ask, with busy scorn, Was this the man ?

Tree ! why hast thou doffed thy mantle of green
For the gorgeous garb of an Indian queen ?

Once upon a raw and gusty day,
The troubled Tiber chafing with its shores,
Cæsar savs to me, Darest thou, Cassius, now
Leap in with me into this angry flood,
And swim to yonder point ?

But if the wanderer his mistake discern,
Judge his own ways, and sigh for a return,
Bewildered once, must he bewail his loss
Forever and forever ?

If human kindness meets return,
And owns the grateful tie ;
If tender thoughts within us burn
To feel a friend is nigh ;
Oh ! shall not warmer accents tell
The gratitude we owe
To Him, who died our fears to quell :
Our more than orphan's wo ?

While o'er our guilty land, O Lord !
We view the terrors of the sword ;
O ! whither shall the helpless fly :
To whom, but thee, direct their cry ?

When Heaven's aerial bow
Spans with bright arch the glittering hills below,
Why to yon mountain turns the musing eye,
Whose sun-bright summit mingles with the sky :
Why do those cliffs of shadowy tint appear
More sweet than all the varied landscape near ?

When summoned from the world and thee
I lay my head beneath the willow tree,
Wilt thou, sweet mourner, at my stone appear
And soothe my parted spirit lingering near :
Oh ! wilt thou come at evening hour to shed
The tears of memory o'er my narrow bed ;

With aching temples on thy hand reclined,
Muse on the last farewell, I leave behind ;
Breathe a deep sigh to winds that murmur low
And think on all my love and all my wo ?

When slowly from the plains and nether woods,
With all their winding streams and hamlets brown,
Updrawn, the morning vapor lifts its veil,
And through its fleecy folds, with softened rays,
Like a still infant smiling in his tears,
Looks through the early sun ; when from afar
The gleaming lake betrays its wide expanse,
And lightly curling on the dewy air,
The cottage smoke doth wind its path to heaven ;
When heaven's soft breath plays on the woodman's brow,
And every hare-bell and wild tangled flower
Smells sweetly from its cage of checkered dew ;
Ay, and when huntsmen wind the merry horn,
And from its covert starts the fearful prey ;
Who, warmed with youth's blood in his swelling veins,
Would, like a lifeless clod, outstretched lie :
Shut up from all the fair creation offers ?

Hard lot of man, to toil for the reward
Of virtue, and yet lose ; wherefore hard ?

'Tis she ; but why that bleeding bosom gored :
Why dimly gleams the visionary sword ?

Still in thought as free as ever,
What are England's rights, I ask,
Me from my delights to sever :
Me to torture : me to task ?

The Nymph must lose her female friend,
If more admired than she ;
But where will fierce contention end
If flowers can disagree ?

Ye call these red-browed brethren
The insects of an hour,
Crushed like the noteless worm amidst
The regions of their power ;
Ye drive them from their father's lands ;
Ye break of faith the seal ;
But can ye from the court of heaven
Exclude their last appeal ?

Ye see their unresisting tribes,
With toilsome step and slow,
On through the trackless desert pass,
A caravan of wo;
Think ye the Eternal's ear is deaf;
His sleepless eye is dim:
Think ye the soul's blood may not cry
From that far land to him?

So shalt thou rest; and what if thou shalt fall
Unheeded by the living; and no friend
Take note of thy departure?

He clothes the lily; feeds the dove;
The meanest insect feels his care;
And shall not man confess his love:
Man, his offspring, and his heir?

The earth grew silent when thy voice departed;
The home too lonely whence thy step had fled:
What then was left for her the faithful-hearted?

Gold many hunted; sweat and bled for gold;
Waked all the night, and labored all the day;
And what was this allurement, dost thou ask?
And say: without our hopes, without our fears,
Without the home that plighted love endears,
Without the smile from partial beauty won,
Oh! what were man?

I ask you once again:
How comes it that the wondrous essence
Which gave such vigor to those strong-nerved limbs
Has leaped from its enclosure, and compelled
This noble workmanship of nature thus
To sink into a cold, inactive clod?

Unto the men, who see not as we see,
Futurity was thought in ancient times,
To be laid open; and they prophesied;
And know we not that from the blind have flowed
The highest, holiest raptures of the lyre,
And wisdom married to immortal verse?

High matter thou enjoinest, O prince of men!
Sad task and hard; for how shall I relate
To human sense the invisible exploits
Of warring spirits: how, without remorse,

The ruin of so many, glorious once,
And perfect while they stood: how last unfold
The secrets of another world, perhaps
Not lawful to reveal?

Miscellaneous Examples of Compound Interrogative Sentences.

For what purpose did the infinite Creator give existence to this majestic monument of his almighty power: for what purpose did he create the earth and the heavens, with all their unnumbered hosts?

Was it not evidently that he might communicate happiness; and does not this design appear conspicuous on the open face of nature?

What is the plain and unequivocal indication of all those marks of infinite wisdom, and skilful contrivance in the general dispositions and in all parts of surrounding nature?

Is it not, that the Creator of all things is infinitely good?

Is there not a display of infinite goodness in the regular and harmonious disposition of the heavenly orbs?

Instead of this beautiful order, why was there not the most horrible confusion? instead of benignant harmony of the spheres, why was there not a perpetual jar, and the most disastrous concussion?

Is there not a display of infinite goodness in the grandeur and beauty of the creation, so favorably adapted to elevate, to inspire with admiration and fill with the purest pleasure, the devout and contemplative mind?

Why was not the whole creation so formed as only to excite amazement, terror and despair?

Is there not a display of infinite goodness in the beautiful scenery of our globe, so agreeably diversified with continents and seas, islands and lakes, mountains and plains, hills and valleys, adapted to various beneficial purposes, and abounding with productions, in endless variety, for the convenience, the support and happiness of its diversified inhabitants?

Why was not the whole earth like the burning sands of Lybia, or the rugged and frozen mountains of Zembla: why was it not one wide and dreary waste, producing only briers and thorns and poisonous and bitter fruits?

Is there not a display of infinite goodness in the grateful vicissitudes of the seasons: each bearing upon its bosom its peculiar delights: the spring arrayed in the most beautiful verdure and decorated with flowers; the summer abounding with the most delightful prospects, and teeming with luxuriance; autumn loaded with golden harvests, and the richest variety of fruits; and even

winter, supplying in social enjoyments, and in the noble pleasures of study and contemplation, what it lacks in external charms?

Why was not the whole year one continued scene of dull uniformity, or so irregular in its changes, as utterly to baffle all the calculations, and arrangements and pursuits of life; or why was not every sight a spectacle of horror: every sound a shriek of distress: every sweet a most pungent bitter: every gale a blast of pestilence?

Is it not because the Creator and Preserver of the world is a being of infinite goodness?

Is it wise or prudent, then, sir, in preparing to breast the storm, if it must come, to talk to this nation of its incompetency to repel European aggression; to lower its spirit; to weaken its moral energy; and to qualify it for easy conquest and base submission?

If there be any reality in the dangers which are supposed to encompass us, should we not animate the people and adjure them to believe, as I do, that our resources are ample; and that we can bring into the field a million of freemen ready to exhaust their last drop of blood, and to spend their last cent in defence of the country, its liberty, and its institutions?

Those who murdered Banquo: what did they win by it?* Substantial good? permanent power? or disappointment rather, and sore mortification: dust and ashes: the common fate of vaulting ambition, overleaping itself? Did not even-handed justice, ere long, commend the poisoned chalice to their own lips? did they not soon find that for another they had "filed their mind;" that their ambition, though apparently for the moment successful, had but put a barren sceptre in their grasp; aye, sir,

> A barren sceptre in their gripe,
> Thence to be wrenched by an unlineal hand:
> No son of theirs succeeding?

If we wished to find an example of a community as favored as any on earth with a salubrious climate; a soil possessed of precisely that degree of fertility which is most likely to create a thrifty husbandry; advantages for all the great branches of industry, commerce, agriculture, the fisheries, manufactures, and the mechanic arts; free institutions of government; establishments for education, charity, and moral improvement; a sound public sentiment; a widely diffused love of order; a glorious tradition of ancestral renown; a pervading moral sense; and an hereditary respect for religion: if we wished to find a land where a man could desire to live, to educate and establish his children, to grow old and die;

---

* Here and in a few other instances I have connected sentences in their nature distinct, and to be treated as independent. In every case of this kind, the interrogation point is followed by a capital letter.

where could we look, where could we wander, beyond the limits of our own ancient and venerable state?

Is it any proof of greatness, to be able, at the age of seventy-three, to take the lead in a successful and bloodless revolution: to change the dynasty: to organize, exercise and abdicate a military command of three and a half millions of men: to take up, to perform and lay down the most momentous, delicate and perilous duties, without passion, without hurry, and without selfishness? is it great, to disregard the bribes of titles, office, money: to live, to labor and suffer for great public ends alone: to adhere to principles under all circumstances: to stand before Europe and America conspicuous, for sixty years, in the most responsible stations, the acknowledged admiration of all good men?

Is this the time, it may be asked, to complain of obstacles to the extinction of war, when peace has been given to the nations, and we are assembled to celebrate its triumphs?

Upon him, even upon him, graceful and engaging as he may be by the lustre of his many accomplishments, the saying of the Bible does not fail of being realized: that the heart of man is deceitful above all things and desperately wicked: who can know it?

The disciples of John could not have such a clear view of the ground of acceptance before God, as an enlightened disciple of the Apostles, yet the want of this clear view did not prevent them from being right subjects for John's preparatory instructions; and what were those instructions? Soldiers were called on to give up their violence, and publicans their exactions, and rich men the confinement of their own wealth to their own gratification; and will any man hesitate for a moment to decide whether those who followed them, were in the likeliest state for receiving light and improvement from the subsequent teachings of the Saviour?

The reforming publicans and harlots of John, were in a state of greater readiness to receive this truth, than either the Pharisees, or those publicans and harlots, who, unmindful of John, still persisted in their iniquities; and who will be in greater readiness to receive this truth in the present day? Will it be the obstinate and determinate doers of all that is sinful, and that too in the face of a call, that they should do works meet for repentance? or will it be those, who, under the influence of this call, do, what the disciples of John did before them: turn them from the evil of their manifest iniquities, and so give proof of their earnestness in the way of salvation?

If it was in behalf of a careless world that the costly apparatus of redemption was reared; if it was in the full front and audacity of their most determined rebellion, that God laid the plan of reconciliation; if it was for the sake of men sunk in the very depths of ungodliness that he constructed his overtures of peace, and sent

forth his Son with them amongst our loathsome and polluted dwelling-places; if to get at his strayed children, he had thus to find his way through all those elements of impiety and ungodliness which are most abhorrent to the sanctity of his nature; think you, my brethren, think you, that the God, who made such an advancing movement towards the men whose faces were utterly away from him, is a God who will turn his own face away from the man who is moving toward him and earnestly seeking after him, if haply he may find him?

When one hears of negroes, who, upon the death of their masters, or upon changing their service, hang themselves upon the next tree, as it frequently happens in our American plantations, says Mr. Addison, who can forbear admiring their fidelity, though it expresses itself in so dreadful a manner; what might not that savage greatness of soul, which appears in these wretches on many occasions, be raised to, were it properly directed; and what color of excuse can there be for the contempt with which we treat this part of our species: that we should not put them upon the common footing of humanity: that we should only set an insignificant fine upon the man who murders them: nay, that we should as much as in us lies, cut them off from the prospect of happiness in another world, as well as in this, and deny them that which we look upon as the proper means of attaining it?

Is there all day long, a felt solemnity on your spirits, because of God, which follows you whithersoever you go, and causes you to walk with him in the world; are you familiarized to the habit of submitting your will to his will; have you ever for an hour together, looked upon yourselves in the light of being the servants of another and have accordingly run and labored as at the bidding of another? or, utter strangers to this, do you walk in the counsels of your own hearts?

And as they departed, Jesus began to say unto the multitudes concerning John, What went ye out into the wilderness to see? A reed shaken by the wind? But what went ye out to see? A man clothed in soft raiment? They that wear soft raiment, are in kings' houses; but what went ye out to see? A prophet?

Where is the wise, where is the scribe, where is the disputer of this world?

Thou wilt say then unto me, Why doth he yet find fault; for who hath resisted his will? Nay but, O man, who art thou that repliest against God? Shall the thing formed, say unto him that formed it, why hast thou made me thus? hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honor and another unto dishonor? What, if God, willing to show his wrath and make his power known, endured with much long-suffering the

vessels of wrath fitted for destruction; and that he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy which he had afore prepared unto glory; even us, whom he hath called, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles?

At which time would Mr. Southey pronounce the constitution more secure? In 1639, when Laud presented this report to Charles; or now, when thousands of meetings openly collect millions of dissenters: when designs against the tithes are openly avowed: when books attacking not only the establishment, but the first principles of Christianity, are openly sold in the streets?

Where were these guardians of the constitution, these vigilant sentinels of our rights and liberties, when this law was passed? Were they asleep upon their post? Where was the gentleman from New York, who has on this debate, made such a noble stand in favor of the constitution: where was the Ajax Telamon of his party; or, to use his own more correct expression, the faction to which he belongs: where was the hero with his sevenfold shield, not of bull's hide, but of brass, prepared to prevent or to punish this Trojan rape, which he now sees meditated upon the constitution of his country by a wicked faction: where was Hercules, that he did not crush this den of robbers that broke into the sanctuary of the constitution? Was he forgetful of his duty; were his nerves unstrung; or was he the very leader of the band that broke down these constitutional ramparts?

Had a stranger at this time gone into the province of Oude, ignorant of what had happened since the death of Sujah Dowla; (that man, who, with a savage heart, had still great lines of character, and who, with all his ferocity in war, had still, with a cultivating hand, preserved to his country the riches which it derived from benignant skies, and a prolific soil;) if this stranger, ignorant of all that had happened in the short interval, and observing the wide and general devastation, and all the horrors of the scene; of plains unclothed and brown; of vegetables burnt up and extinguished; of villages depopulated and in ruin; of temples unroofed and perishing; of reservoirs broken down and dry: he would naturally inquire, What war has thus laid waste the fertile fields of this once beautiful and opulent country? what evil dissensions have happened, thus to tear asunder and separate the happy societies that once possessed those villages? what disputed succession, what religious rage, has with unholy violence, demolished those temples, and disturbed fervent but unobtrusive piety in the exercise of its duties? what merciless enemy has thus spread the horrors of fire and sword? what severe visitation of Providence has dried up the fountain, and taken from the face of the earth every vestige of verdure? or rather, what monsters have stalked over the country, tainting and poisoning,

with pestiferous breath, what the voracious appetite could not devour?

Know you not
The fire, that mounts the liquor till run o'er,
In seeming to augment it, wastes it?

A living power
Is virtue; or no better than a name
Fleeting as health or beauty, and unsound?
Can I forget, canst thou forget,
When playing with thy golden hair,
How quick thy fluttering heart did move?

What shall the man deserve of human kind,
Whose happy skill and industry combined
Shall prove, what argument could never yet,
The Bible an imposture and a cheat?

Can you question that the soul
Inherits an allegiance, not by choice
To be cast off upon an oath proposed
By each new upstart notion?

But where is now the goodly audit ale:
The purseproud tenant never known to fail:
The farm which never yet was left on hand:
The marsh reclaimed to most improving land:
The impatient hope of the expiring lease,
The doubling rental?

Could thine art
Make them indeed immortal, and impart
The purity of heaven to earthly joys;
Expel the venom and not blunt the dart,
The dull satiety which all destroys;
And root from out the soul the deadly weed that cloys?

For who could sink and settle to that point
Of selfishness, so senseless who could be,
So long and perseveringly to mourn
For any object of his love, removed
From this unstable world, if he could fix
A satisfying view upon the state
Of pure, imperishable blessedness,
Which reason promises, and Holy Writ
Ensures to all believers?

Who would not wish to be from wealth exempt,
Since riches point to misery and contempt?

But why so short is love's delightful hour:
Why fades the dew on beauty's sweetest flower:
Why can no hymned charm of music heal
The sleepless woes impassioned spirits feel?

You are excused,
But will you be more justified?
You come to take your stand here, and behold
The Lady Anne pass from her coronation.

If in that frame no deathless spirit dwell,
If that faint murmur be the last farewell,
If faith unite the faithful but to part,
Why is their memory sacred to the heart:
Why does the brother of my childhood seem
Restored awhile in every pleasing dream:
Why do I joy the lovely spot to view,
Where artless friendship blessed when life was new?

Oh God! when thou
Dost scare the world with tempests, set on fire
The heavens with falling thunderbolts, or fill,
With all the waters of the firmament,
The swift dark whirlwind that uproots the woods,
And drowns the villages; when, at his call,
Uprises the great deep and throws himself
Upon the continent, and overwhelms
Its cities; who forgets not at the sight
Of these tremendous tokens of thy power,
His pride, and lays his strifes and follies by?

'Tis strange the miser should his cares employ,
To gain those riches he can ne'er enjoy;
Is it less strange the prodigal should waste
His wealth to purchase what he ne'er can taste?

Breezes of the South!
Who tossed the golden and the flame-like flowers,
And pass the prairie-hawk, that, poised on high,
Flaps his broad wings, yet moves not, ye have played
Among the palms of Mexico, and vines
Of Texas, and have crisped the limpid brooks
That from the fountains of Sonora glide
Into the calm Pacific; have ye fanned
A nobler or a lovelier scene than this?

Ye are not sad to see the gathered grain,
Nor when their mellow fruit the orchards cast,
Nor when the mellow woods shake down the ripened mast;

Ye sigh not when the sun, his course fulfilled,
His glorious course, rejoicing earth and sky,
In the soft evening, when the winds are stilled,
Sinks where his islands of refreshment lie,
And leaves the smile of his departure spread
O'er the warm colored heaven, and ruddy mountain head;
Why weep ye then for him, who having won
The bounds of man's appointed years, at last,
Life's blessings all enjoyed, life's labors done,
Serenely to his final rest has passed,
While the soft memory of his virtues, yet
Lingers like twilight hues, when the bright sun is set?

Whence is man;
Why formed at all; and wherefore as he is:
Where must he find his maker: with what rites
Adore him? Will he hear, accept and bless;
Or does he sit regardless of his works?
Has man within him an immortal seed;
Or does the tomb take all? If he survive
His ashes, where? and in what weal or wo?

Thou smilest? These comparisons seem high
To those who scan all things with dazzled eye,
Linked with the unknown name of one whose doom
Has naught to do with glory or with Rome,
With Chili, Hellas, or with Araby—*
Thou smilest? [Smile: 'tis better thus than sigh.]

A nobleman sleeps here to night: see that
All is in order in the damask chamber;
Keep up the stove; I will myself to the cellar;
And Madame Idenstein
Shall furnish forth the bed-apparel; for
To say the truth, they are marvellous scant of this
Within the palace precincts, since his highness
Left it some dozen years ago; and then
His excellency will sup doubtless?

Shall thy good uncle and thy brother Lucius,
And thou, and I, sit round about some fountain,
Looking all downwards, to behold our cheeks
How they are stained, like meadows yet not dry,
With miry slime left on them by a flood;
And in the fountain shall we gaze so long,

---

* This sentence thus abruptly broken off, is a single compact declarative with the first part only expressed. The correlative words are, *indeed—but*.

Till the fresh taste be taken from that clearness
And make a brine-pit with our bitter tears;
Or shall we cut away our hands like thine;
Or shall we bite our tongues, and in dumb shows
Pass the remainder of our hateful days?

CLASS III. COMPOUND EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

Compound exclamatory sentences, like simple, being nothing more than declarative and interrogative sentences, employed as exclamations, I shall lay down one general rule for the delivery of them all; and I shall adduce no greater number of examples than may be necessary to show usage and afford practice.

It should be observed that the exclamation point, like the interrogation, is not always put at the end of the sentence *only*, but frequently at the end of the parts; and in loose sentences very frequently. It should be observed further, that the whole of a sentence is not always exclamatory, even where it is not fragmentary, nor semi-exclamatory. The first part, and often an imperfect portion of the first part, is pointed, and should be treated as exclamatory, while the remainder is simply declarative or interrogative; and not seldom an exclamation point is found at the end of a sentence, when only the last part, and perhaps a few words of the last part, have an exclamatory character. I may add that occasionally a sentence is pointed as an exclamation, when it is difficult to perceive why: the degree of emotion expressed, being scarcely sufficient to justify it. Frequent examples of such sentences will be found in the following pages. I adduce them, however, as I found them.—Of the occasional aberrations noticed above, I have thought it unnecessary to give illustrations: confining myself to entire sentences, pointed and treated as exclamatory.

GENERAL RULE XIX. Exclamatory compound sentences are delivered like the corresponding declarative and interrogative compound sentences from which they are derived, with an additional expression of emotion.

I. DECLARATIVE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

1. CLOSE DECLARATIVE.

Examples.

The death of Socrates, peaceably philosophizing with his friends′, is the most pleasant that could be desired!

Impart to them, in addition to their hereditary valor′, that confidence of success which springs from thy presence!

Meek champions of truth′! no stain of private interest or of innocent blood is on the spotless garment of your renown!

The winds which sweep along the fields, once blooming with groves sacred to the Muses′, and over the ruins of temples erected for the arts and sciences′, bear on their wings the sighs of expiring widows!

Do not, I implore you, chieftains, countrymen, do not, I implore you, renew the foul barbarities, your insatiate avarice has inflicted on this wretched, unoffending race!

I curse the bond of blood by which you are united! May fell division, infamy and rout, defeat your projects, and rebuke your hopes! On you and on your children be the peril of the innocent blood which shall be shed this day!

I remember to have seen, not long since, a charge to the grand jury, by a very eminent English judge, in which the practice of boxing is commended, and the fear is expressed that popular education has been pushed too far!

I do not go too far in saying, that there have been cases of re-captured Africans, brought within the jurisdiction of the United States, who, for aught they gained by their liberation, might as well have remained in the hands of the slave-trader!

May our land be a land of liberty, the seat of virtue, the asylum of the oppressed, a name and a praise in the whole earth, until the last shock of time shall bury the empires of the world in one common undistinguished ruin!

In the structure of their characters, in the course of their action, in the striking coincidences which marked their high career, in the lives and in the deaths of the illustrious men, whose virtues and services we have met to commemorate, and in that voice of admiration and gratitude which has since burst, with one accord, from the twelve millions of freemen who people these States, there is a moral sublimity which overwhelms the mind, and hushes all its powers into silent amazement!

Bring with thee
The headlong atheist, who laughs at heaven,
And impiously ascribes events to chance,
To help to solve this wonderful enigma!

The scared owl, on pinions gray,
Breaks from the rustling boughs,
And down the lone vale sails away
To more profound repose!

The very angels quit
Their mansions, unsusceptible of change,
Amid your pleasant bowers to sit,
And through your sweet vicissitudes to range!

A single step, that freed me from the skirts
Of the blind vapor, opened to my view
Glory beyond all glory ever seen
By waking sense, or by the dreaming soul!

Thy life I would gladly sustain,
Till summer comes up from the south, and with crowds
Of thy brethren, a march thou shouldst sound through the clouds,
And back to the forests again!

Fragmentary Close.

[We have not such another man to die—] Washington and Hamilton in five years!

Absurd and futile attempt! [As well might you quench the stars.]

[He launches forth upon the unknown deep, to discover a new world, under the patronage of Ferdinand and Isabella.] The patronage of Ferdinand and Isabella! [Let us dwell for a moment on the auspices under which our country was brought to light.] The patronage of Ferdinand and Isabella!

The. [Reads.] [*A tedious brief scene of young Pyramus,*
And his love Thisbe: very tragical mirth.]
Merry and tragical'! tedious and brief'!
That is, hot ice, and wondrous strange snow.

Shylock. My own flesh and blood to rebel!

Par. [Good, very good: it is so then. Good, very good: let it be concealed awhile.]

Ber. Undone, and forfeited to cares forever!

That a king's children should be so conveyed,
So slackly guarded, and the search so slow
That could not trace them'!*

Ah! that deceit should steal such gentle shapes,
And with a visor hide deep vice'!

2. COMPACT DECLARATIVE.

1. *Simple Compact.*

Examples.

If you see my limbs convulsed', my teeth clenched', my hair bristling', and the cold dews trembling on my brow', then seize me'! rouse me'! snatch me from my bed!

Oh God'! if thou art still the widow's husband, and the father of the fatherless', if in the fulness of thy goodness there be mercies in store for miserable mortals', pity, O pity this afflicted mother, and grant that her hapless orphans may find a friend, a benefactor, a father in thee!

When oblivion shall have swept away thrones, kingdoms and principalities; when every vestige of human greatness, and gran-

---

* This and the following example are fragmentary varieties of common occurrence. The conclusion of the sentence is understood: *e. g.* "That a king's children," &c., &c., is unaccountable; or, is an extraordinary circumstance. Breaking off, as it does, at imperfect sense, the sentence necessarily terminates with the bend.

deur and glory shall have mingled into dust, and the last period of time have become extinct; eternity itself shall catch the glowing theme, and dwell with increasing rapture on his name!

When I shall be found, sir, in my place here in the senate, or elsewhere, to sneer at public merit, because it happened to spring up beyond my own State and neighborhood; when I refuse, for any such cause, or for any cause, the homage due to American talent, to elevated patriotism, to sincere devotion to liberty and the country; or if I see an uncommon endowment of heaven; if I see extraordinary capacity and virtue in any son of the South; and if moved by local prejudice, or gangrened by State jealousy, I get up here to abate the tithe of a hair from his just character and just fame, may my tongue cleave to the roof of my mouth!

Illustrious as are your merits, yet far, Oh! very far, distant be the day when any inscription shall bear your name, or any tongue pronounce its eulogy!

Happy, happy were it for us, did nature constantly appear to us as it really is, animated and enlivened by its glorious Author!

O, Hamilton! great would be the relief of my mind, were I permitted to exchange the arduous duty of attempting to portray the varied excellence of thy character, for the privilege of venting the deep and unavailing sorrow which swells my bosom, at the remembrance of the gentleness of thy nature, thy splendid talents and placid virtues!

You have vanquished him in the field; strive now to rival him in the arts of peace!

In his hurried march, time has but looked at their imagined immortality; and all its varieties, from the palace to the tomb, have, with their ruins, erased the very impression of his footsteps!

Talk to them of Naples, of Spain or of South America; they stand forth zealots for the doctrine of divine right; which has now come back to us, like a thief from transportation, under the alias of legitimacy!

We charge him (Charles I.) with having broken his coronation oath; and we are told that he kept his marriage vow! We accuse him of having given up his people to the merciless inflictions of the most hot-headed and hard-hearted of prelates; and the defence is, that he took his little son on his knee and kissed him! We censure him for having violated the articles of the petition of right, after having, for good and valuable considerations, promised to observe them; and we are informed that he was accustomed to hear prayers at six o'clock in the morning!

Recounting the dark catalogue of abuses which they had suffered, and appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of their intentions; in the name and by the authority of the people,

the only fountain of legitimate power, they shook off forever their allegiance to the British crown, and pronounced the united colonies an independent Nation!

Flung into life in the midst of a revolution that quickened every energy of a people who acknowledge no superior, he commenced his course, a stranger by birth, and a scholar by charity!

When thy surges no longer shall roll′,
And that firmament's length is drawn back like a scroll′,
Then, then shall the spirit, that sighs by thee now,
Be more mighty, more lasting, more chainless than thou!

Though boundless snows the withered heath deform′,
And the dim sun scarce wanders through the storm′;
Yet shall the smile of social love repay,
With mental light, the melancholy day!

Though glory spread thy name from pole to pole,
Though thou art merciful and brave and just;
Philip, reflect, thou art posting to the goal,
Where mortals mix in undistinguished dust!

O would the scandal vanish with my life,
Then happy were to me ensuing death!

O impotent estate of human life,
Where hope and fear maintain eternal strife:
Where fleeting joy does lasting doubt inspire,
And most we question what we most admire!

Oh! if servility with supple knees,
Whose trade it is to smile, to crouch, to please;
If smooth dissimulation, skilled to grace
A devil's purpose with an angel's face;
If smiling peeresses, and simpering peers,
Encompassing his throne a few short years;
If the gilt carriage and the pampered steed,
That wants no driving, and disdains the lead;
If guards, mechanically formed in ranks,
Playing, at beat of drum, their martial pranks,
Should'ring and standing as if struck to stone,
While condescending majesty looks on;
If monarchy consist in such base things,
Sighing, I say again, I pity kings!

O, had the gods done so, I had not now
Worthily termed them merciless to us!

Fragmentary Single Compact Sentences.

Examples.

Bootless speed′,
When cowardice pursues and valor flies!

Might I be
As speechless, deaf and dead as he′!

Gods′! if he do not die
But for one moment, one, till I eclipse
Conception with the scorn of those calm lips′!

[*Cat.* Yet who has stirred? Aurelius, you paint the air
With passion's pencil.]
Aur. Were my will a sword′!

[*Cass.* Will you dine with me to-morrow?]
Casca. Ay, if I be alive, and your min′ hold, and your dinner be worth the eating′!

Would it might please your grace
On our entreaties to amend your fault′!

Were I a thunderbolt′!

2. *Double Compact.*

Examples.

I know not what course others may take′, but, as for me, give me liberty or give me death!

They are not fighting′; do not disturb them′; they are merely pausing! This man is not expiring with agony′; that man is not dead′; he is only pausing! They are not angry with one another′; they have now no cause for quarrel′; but their country thinks there should be a pause!*

He is not content to triumph over the Gauls, the Egyptians and Pharnaces′; he must triumph over his own countrymen!

He is not content to cause the statue of Scipio and Petrius to be carried before him′; he must be graced by that of Cato: he is not content with the simple effigy of Cato′; he must exhibit that of his suicide! He is not satisfied to insult the Romans with triumphing over the death of liberty′; they must gaze upon the representation of her expiring agonies, and mark the writhings of her last fatal struggle!

---

* This paragraph is, correctly speaking, a compound declarative perfect loose with double compact parts. But the capital letters show that the parts are here treated as independent sentences.

They did not know that the angel of the Lord would go forth with them, and smite the invaders of their sanctuary; they did not know that generation after generation, would, on this day, rise up and call them blessed; that their names would be handed down, from father to son, the penman's theme, and the poet's inspiration; challenging, through countless years, the jubilant praises of an emancipated people, and the plaudits of an admiring world; no; they knew only, that the arm, which should protect, was oppressing them, and they shook it off: that the chalice presented to their lips was a poisonous one, and they dashed it away!

The wonder is not that two men have died on the same day, but that two such men, after having performed so many, and such splendid services in the cause of liberty, after the multitude of other coincidences which seem to have linked their destinies together, after having lived so long together, the objects of their country's joint veneration, after having been spared to witness the great triumph of their toils at home, and looked together from Pisgah's top on the sublime effect of that grand impulse which they had given to the same glorious cause throughout the world, should on this fiftieth anniversary of the day on which they had ushered that cause into the light, be both caught up to heaven, together, in the midst of their raptures!

Nay, sneak not off thus cowardly; poor souls
Ye are as destitute of information
As is the lifeless subject of my thoughts!

I have no mother, for she died,
When I was very young;
But her memory still around my heart,
Like morning mists, has hung!

Oh mother, mother! do not jest
On such a theme as this!
Though I was but a little child,
Bitterly I cried,
And clung to thee in agony,
When my poor father died!

But triumph not, ye peace-enamored few′;
Fire, nature, genius, never dwelt with you′;
For you no fancy consecrates the scene,
Where rapture uttered vows, and wept between′;
'Tis yours, unmoved to sever and to meet:
No pledge is sacred, and nc home is sweet!

3. *Loose Sentences.*

1. *Perfect Loose.*

If any′, speak‵; for him have I offended!

Time flies‵: words are unavailing‵: the chieftains declare for instant battle!

Too late have I come to the knowledge of thee‵: too late have I begun to love thee!

Men have been frightened into intellectual dwarfs‵; and the beasts of the field and the forests have not attained more than half their ordinary growth!

It seems, gentlemen, this is an age of reason‵: the time and the person are at last arrived, that are to dissipate the errors that have overspread the past generations of ignorance!

Not one shall survive to be enslaved; for ere the tri-colored flag shall wave over our prostrate republic, the bones of four millions of Americans shall whiten the shores of their country!

And may the disciples of Washington then see, as we now see, the flag of the Union floating on the top of the Capitol; and then, as now, may the sun in his course visit no land more free, more happy, more lovely, than this our own country!

In caves and forests will I hide myself; with tigers and with savage beasts will I commune; and when, at length, we meet again before the blessed tribunal of that Deity whose mild doctrines, and whose mercies, ye have this day renounced, then shall ye feel the agony and grief of soul, which now tear the bosom of your weak accuser!

The substantial clothing of our industrious classes, is now the growth of the American soil, and the texture of the American loom; the music of the water-wheel is heard on the banks of our thousand rural streams; and enterprise and skill, with wealth, refinement and prosperity in their train, have studded the seashore with populous cities, are making their great progress of improvement through the interior, and sowing towns and villages, as it were, broadcast through the country!

May the fires of their genius and courage animate and sustain us in our contest, and bring it to a like glorious result: may it be carried on with singleness to the objects, that alone summoned us to it as a great and imperious duty, irksome, yet necessary: may there be a willing, a joyful immolation of all selfish passions on the altar of a common country: may the hearts of our combatants be bold, and, under a propitious heaven, their swords flash victory: may a speedy peace bless us, and the passions of war go off; leaving in their place a stronger love of country and of each other!

The pilgrim who reaches this valley of tears,
Would fain hurry by‘; and, with trembling and fears,
He is launched on the wreck-covered river!

Strike till the last armed foe expires‘:
Strike for your altars and your fires‘:
Strike for the green graves of your sires‘;
God and your native land!

All search was vain, and years had passed‘: that child was ne’er forgot,
When once a daring hunter climbed unto a lofty spot‘:
From thence, upon a rugged crag the chamois never reached,
He saw an infant’s fleshless bones the elements had bleached!

There then she had found a grave:
Within that chest had she concealed herself,
Fluttering with joy, the happiest of the happy,
When a spring lock that lay in ambush there,
Fastened her down forever!

Last noon beheld them full of lusty life:
Last eve, in beauty’s circle proudly gay:
The midnight brought the signal-sound of strife:
The morn, the marshalling in arms: the day,
Battle’s magnificently stern array!

From pavement rough, or frozen ground,
The engine’s rattling wheels resound;
And soon before his eyes,
The lurid flames, with horrid glare,
Mingled with murky vapors, rise
In wreathy folds upon the air,
And veil the frowning skies!

2. *Imperfect Loose.*

Examples.

To sum up all in one word, it is our country‘: our dear native land!

This, be it remembered, has been the fruit of intellectual exertion‘: the triumph of mind!

It is the best classic the world has ever seen‘: the noblest that has ever honored and dignified the language of mortals!

He aspired to be the highest‘: above the people‘: above the authorities‘: above the laws‘: above his country!

It was the spirit of liberty which still abides on the earth, and has its home in the bosom of the brave‘: which but yesterday in beautiful France, restored the violated charter‘: which even now burns brightly on the towers of Belgium, and has rescued Poland from the tyrant's grasp‘: making their sons, aye, and their daughters too, the wonder and the admiration of the world‘; the pride and glory of the human race!

It is this, which consecrating the humble circle of the hearth, will at times extend itself to the circumference of the horizon: which nerves the arm of the patriot to save his country: which lights the lamp of the philosopher to amend man: which will yet invigorate the martyr to merit immortality: which, when the world's agony is passed, and the glory of another is dawning, will prompt the prophet, even in his chariot of fire, and in his vision of heaven, to bequeath to mankind the mantle of his memory!

Adieu the silent look: the streaming eye:
The murmured plaint: the deep heart-rending sigh;

In that lone land of deep despair,
No Sabbath's heavenly light shall rise;
No God regard your bitter prayer;
Nor Saviour call you to the skies!

And in the waveless mirror of his mind,
He views fleet years of pleasure left behind,
Since Anna's empire o'er his heart began:
Since first he called her his before the holy man!

II. INTERROGATIVE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

1. DEFINITE INTERROGATIVE.

1. *Close Definite.*

Examples.

[What!] did he apprehend dangerous consequences from the deliberations of the grave elders of the kirk!

Was it a wonder then that I seized my prejudices, and with a blush burned them on the altar of my country!

Would you really burn the gospel and erase the statutes for the dreadful equivalent of the crucifix and the guillotine!

Shall it be said, that we will not sacrifice one prejudice on the altar of the Union for its preservation, when they offered up thousands to rear it!

Is there nothing that whispers to that right honorable gentleman, that the crisis is too big, that the times are too gigantic to be ruled by the little hackneyed and every-day means of ordinary corruption!

[How!] Will you suffer your glory to be thus sullied in the face of the whole world, and have it said, that a nation, who first dedicated a temple in their city to Clemency, had not found any in yours!

Shall an inferior magistrate, a governor who holds his power of the Roman people, in a Roman province, within sight of Italy, bind, scourge, torture with fire and red-hot plates of iron, and at last put to the infamous death of the cross, a Roman citizen!

[What!] Is the legislature, is the rule and government in this country reduced to this state, that it shall find no protection in the administration of the law of the country against persons associating and affiliating for the purpose which they declare here!

[Gracious God!] Shall the horrors which surround the informer, the ferocity of his countenance and the terrors of his voice, cast such a wide and appalling influence that none dare approach and save the victim which he marks for ignominy and death!

Is it possible that any man can seriously believe the paralyzing five millions of such a people as I have been describing, can be a benefit to the empire! Is there any man who deserves the name, not of a statesman, but a rational being, who can think it politic to rob such a multitude of all the energies of an honorable ambition!

Shall neither the cries of innocence expiring in agony, nor the tears of pitying spectators, nor the majesty of the Roman commonwealth, nor the fear of the justice of his country, restrain the licentious and wanton cruelty of a monster, who, in confidence of his riches, strikes at the root of liberty, and sets mankind at defiance!

Dost thou not see my baby at my breast,
That sucks the nurse asleep!
Is it heaven's will
To try the dust it kindles for a day
With infinite agony!
See ye not yonder how the locusts swarm,
To drink the fountains of your honor up
And leave your hills a desert!

Fragmentary Definite Close.

Examples.

[What!] The gentleman from Massachusetts, who assisted by his vote to raise the army to twenty-five thousand, alarmed at the danger of our liberties from this very army!

[What!] The opposition who in 1798 and 1799, could raise a useless army to fight an enemy three thousand miles distant from us, alarmed at the existence of one raised for the attack of the adjoining provinces of the enemy!

[What!] To resign again
That freedom for whose sake our souls have now
Engraved themselves in blood!

2. *Compact Definite.*

The examples under this head, are single compact only. I have not been able to find a double compact. I am inclined to believe that the structure of the double compact in its pure state is incompatible with interrogative use.*

Examples.

[Gracious God!] Is a tyranny of this kind to be borne with, where law is said to exist!

Would it not be advisable rather to attend to this declared object of the war now, than wait until after the Canadian scheme is effected!

[What!] Might Rome then have been taken, if these men who were at our gates had not wanted courage for the attempt! Rome taken, whilst I was consul!

[What! my lords,] Not cultivate barren land, not encourage the manufactories of your country, not relieve the poor of your flock, if the church is to be at any expense thereby!

Will you sink from manhood, and its nobleness and high estimation, will you tarnish the lustre of a character already established, will you hazard your fortune, will you close up the avenues of the future, which now invites you smilingly to enter, and reap and enjoy, when at best you can gain nothing but revenge, and may miss even that!

3. LOOSE DEFINITE.

1. *Perfect Loose.*

Examples.

Was it not enough that sorrow robed the happy home in mourning: was it not enough that disappointment preyed on its loveliest

---

* Since writing the text I have met with two, which I here subjoin. The first will be found again under the head of perfect loose, and the second under the miscellaneous head.

"Am I to find them, not in the pursuit of useful science, not in the encouragement of arts and agriculture, not in the relief of an impoverished tenantry, not in the proud march of an unsuccessful, but not less sacred patriotism, not in the bright page of warlike immortality, dashing its iron crown from guilty greatness, or feeding freedom's laurel with the blood of the despot; but am I to find them amid drunken panders and corrupted slaves, debauching the innocence of village-life, and even amid the stews of the tavern, collecting or creating the materials of the brothel!"

"What! Must I not only reveal this guilt, must I not only expose this perfidy, must I not only brand the infidelity of a wife and a mother; but must I, amidst the agonies of outraged nature, make the brother proof of the sister's prostitution!"

prospects: was it not enough that its little inmates cried in vain for bread, and heard no answer but the poor father's sigh, and drank no sustenance, but the wretched mother's tears: was this a time for passion, conscienceless, licentious passion, with its eye of lust, its heart of stone, its hand of rapine, to rush into the mournful sanctuary of misfortune, casting crime into the cup of wo, and rob the parents of their wealth, their child, and rob the child of her only charm, her innocence!

[Oh!] Does not the God, who is said to be love, shed over this attribute of his, its finest illustration, when, while he sits in the highest heaven, and pours out his fulness on the whole subordinate domain of nature, and of providence, he bows a pitying regard on the very humblest of his children, and sends his reviving spirit into every heart, and cheers by his presence every home, and provides for the wants of every family, and watches over every sick-bed, and listens to the complaint of every sufferer; and while, by his wondrous mind, the weight of universal government is borne, oh! is it not more wondrous and more excellent still, that he feels for every sorrow, and has an ear open to every prayer!

[What!] I exclaimed, as no doubt you are all ready to exclaim, Can this be possible! is it thus that I am to find the educated youth of Ireland occupied! is this the employment of the miserable aristocracy that yet lingers in this devoted country: am I to find them, not in the pursuits of useful science, not in the encouragement of arts and agriculture, not in the relief of an impoverished tenantry, not in the proud march of an unsuccessful but not less sacred patriotism, not in the bright page of warlike immortality, dashing its iron crown from guilty greatness, or feeding freedom's laurel with the blood of the despot; but am I to find them, amid drunken panders, and corrupted slaves, debauching the innocence of village-life, and even amid the stews of the tavern, collecting or creating the materials of the brothel!

> [What!] Were you snarling all before I came,
> Ready to catch each other by the throat;
> And turn you all your hatred now on me!

2. *Imperfect Loose.*

Examples.

[What!] To attribute the sacred sanctions of God and nature to the massacre of the Indian's scalping-knife: to the cannibal savage, torturing, murdering, roasting and eating, literally, my lords, eating the mangled victims of his barbarous battles!

[Shall I call you soldiers?] Soldiers! who have dared to besiege

the son of your emperor: who have made him a prisoner in his own intrenchments! [Can I call you citizens?] Citizens! who have trampled under your feet the authority of the senate: who have violated the most awful sanctions; even those which hostile states have ever held in respect, the rights of ambassadors and the laws of nations!

Look upon my boy as though I guessed it:
Guessed the trial thou wouldst have me make:
Guessed it instinctively!
[What!] I that killed the husband, and his father,
To take her in her heart's extremest hate:
With curses in her mouth: tears in her eyes:
The bleeding witness of her hatred by:
With God, her conscience, and these bars against me!

Is there not a sound,
As of some watchword, that recalls at night
All that gave light and wonder to the day,
In these soft words that breathe of loveliness,
And summon to the spirit scenes that rose
Rich on the raptured vision, as the eye
Hung like a tranced thing above the page
That Genius had made golden with its glow:
The page of noble story; of high towers
And castled halls, envistaed like the line
Of heroes and great hearts, that centuries
Had led before their hearths in dim array:
Of lake and lawn, and gray and cloudy tree,
That rocked with bannered foliage to the storm
Above the walls it shadowed, and whose leaves,
Rustling in gathered music to the winds,
Seemed voiced as with the sound of many seas!

2. INDEFINITE INTERROGATIVE.

1. *Close Indefinite.*

Examples.

Where is the man, where is the philosopher, who could so live, suffer and die, without weakness and without ostentation!

What numberless errors and frauds have crept in among the poor deluded people, under cover of the church and the pretended infallibility of the Pope!

Who would not prefer this living tomb in the hearts of his countrymen, to the proudest mausoleum that the genius of sculpture could erect!

What ought to be our emotions, as we meet on this anniversary on the spot where the first successful foundations of the great American republic were laid!

What a well-spring of gratitude to God, of love to man, of self-enjoyment, do such persons shut up with impious hands against themselves and all whom they influence!

How often do we see, in our public gazettes, a pompous display of honors to the memory of some veteran patriot, who has been suffered to linger out his latter days in unregarded penury!

How mistaken were all the amatory poets, from Anacreon downward, who preferred the bloom of the rose and the thrill of the nightingale to the saffron hide and dulcet treble of sixty-three!

How next to impossible does it seem for them to regulate their thoughts, words and deeds, and all the influences they are perpetually exerting over others, by the purifying love and self-sacrificing humility of the gospel!

Who would not exchange the misgivings and the gloom, that overhang this skeptical creed, for the inflexible faith, the ardent hope, the holy rejoicing of him who doubts not for a moment the future reign of universal peace!

Who could have suspected that, under the very roof of virtue, in the presence of a venerable and respected matron, and of that innocent family, whom she had reared up in the sunshine of her example, the most abandoned could have plotted his iniquities!

What a cheering pledge does it give of the stability of our institutions, that while abroad, the benighted multitude are prostrating themselves before the idols which their own hands have fashioned into kings, here, in this land of the free, our people are everywhere starting up, with one impulse, to follow with their acclamations the ascending spirits of the great fathers of the Republic!

How like a mountain devil in the heart
Rules the unreined ambition!

What numbers here through odd ambition strive
To seem the most transported things alive!

O what passions then,
What melting sentiments of kindly care
On the new parents seize!

Ah! what avails the lengthening mead
By nature's kindest bounty spread
Along the vale of flowers!

How shall I then attempt to sing of Him,
Who, light himself, in uncreated light
Invested deep, dwells awfully retired
From mortal eye, or angel's purer ken!

2. *Compact Indefinite.**

Examples.

How different would have been our lot this day, both as men and citizens, had the Revolution failed of success!

[O!] how many favorite schemes of enjoyment would the thought of Him and his will put to flight, if faithfully admitted to the inner chambers of the mind!

How wretched is the situation of thy creatures, when they desert Thee, the fountain of life, violate the laws of thy government, and wilfully pursue their own destruction!

What, what are the hours of a splendid wretch like this, compared with those that shed their poppies and their roses upon the pillows of our peaceful and virtuous patriots!

What a dead thing is a clock, with its ponderous embowelments of lead and brass, its pert or solemn dumbness of communication, compared with the simple altar-like structure, and silent heart-language of the old dial!

How misapprehended have been the claims of youth, if years and wrinkles can thus despoil their conquest, and depopulate the navy of its prowess, and beguile the bar of its eloquence!

What were the selfish and petty strides of an Alexander, to conquer a little section of a savage world, compared with this generous, this magnificent advance towards the emancipation of the entire world!

What pride did you not feel in that soil, when you lately welcomed the nation's guest, the venerable champion of America, to the spot where the first note of struggling freedom was uttered, which sounded across the Atlantic, and drew him from all the delights of life to enlist in our cause!

How well would it have been, had he but retraced the fountain of that document: had he recalled to mind the virtues it rewarded; the pure train of honors it associated; the line of spotless ancestry it distinguished; the high ambition its bequests inspired; the moral imitation it imperatively commanded!

How could it be otherwise, when, for ages upon ages, invention has fatigued itself with expedients for imitation; when, as I have read with horror, in the progress of my legal studies, the homicide of a mere Irishman was considered justifiable; and when, though his ignorance was the origin of all his crimes, his education was prohibited by act of parliament!

[Oh!] how happy had it been when he arrived at the bank of the river with the ill-fated fugitive, ere yet he had committed her to

---

* The single only is given, for the reason assigned under definite compact.

that boat of which, like the fabled bark of Styx, the exile was eternal, how happy at that moment, so teeming with misery and with shame, if you, my lord, had met him, and could have accosted him in the character of that good genius which had abandoned him!

What an accession of glory and magnificence does Dr. Herschel superadd to it, when, instead of supposing all those suns fixed, and the motion confined to their respective planets, he loosens those multitudinous suns themselves from their stations, sets them all into motion with their splendid retinue of planets and satellites, and imagines them, thus attended, to perform a stupendous revolution, system above system, around some grander, unknown centre, somewhere in the boundless abyss of space! and when, carrying on the process, you suppose even that centre itself not stationary, but also counterpoised by other masses in the immensity of space, with which, attended by their accumulated trains of

> Planets, suns, and adamantine spheres
> Wheeling unshaken through the void immense,

it maintains harmonious concert, surrounding, in its vast career, some other centre still more remote and stupendous, which in its turn—!

> Why do you repeat
> My words, as if you feared to trust your own!
> How would those rescued thousands bless thy name,
> Shouldst thou betray us!
> How quickly nature falls into revolt,
> When gold becomes her object!
> [Oh] how comely it is, and how reviving
> To the spirits of just men, long oppressed,
> When God into the hands of their deliverer
> Puts invincible might
> To quell the mighty of the earth!
> [But oh!] how altered was its sprightlier tone,
> When Cheerfulness, a nymph of healthiest hue,
> Her bow across her shoulder flung,
> Her buskins gemmed with morning dew,
> Blew an inspiring air, that dell and thicket rung!

3. *Loose Indefinite.*

1. *Perfect Loose.*

Examples.

What noble institutions: what a comprehensive policy: what wise equalization of every political advantage!

What prepossession, what blindness, must it be to compare the son of Sophronius with the son of Mary! what an immeasurable distance between them!

How insensible have Christians and the Christian ministry been to the inestimable value of the peace principle: how little have they realized its truth, power, beauty!

Who can deny that the existence of such a country presents a subject for human congratulation: who can deny that its gigantic advancement offers a field for the most rational conjecture!

What sweetness, what purity, in his manners! what an affecting gracefulness in his instructions! what sublimity in his maxims! what profound wisdom in his discourses! what presence of mind, what sagacity and propriety in his answers! how great the command over his passions!

Who shall say for what purpose a mysterious Providence may not have designed her: who shall say that when in its follies and its crimes, the old world may have interred all the pride of its power, and all the pomp of its civilization, human nature may not find its destined renovation in the new!

Why is it that to man have been given passions which he cannot tame, and which sink him below the brute: and why is it that a few ambitious men are permitted by the great Ruler, in the selfish pursuit of their own aggrandizement, to scatter in ruin, desolation and death, whole kingdoms!

How many darling habits would be abandoned, if the whole man were brought under the dominion of this imperious visiter; and how many affections would be torn away from the objects on which they are now fastened, if God were at all times attended to and regarded with that affection which he at all times demands of us!

How hard is it to convince Christians of these things! how hard is it to bring them to act on the broad, simple, uncompromising precepts of the gospel! how next to impossible does it seem for them to regulate their thoughts, words and deeds, and all the influences they are perpetually exerting over others, by the purifying and self-sacrificing humility of the gospel!

What, though in our history, I read of no patriarchs and prophets and divine legislators; of no pillar of cloud by day and of fire by night; not of the terrors of Sinai, or the vision of Pisgah; not of the chariot of fire and the mantle of power; nor yet of the fiery tempest of Sodom or the severed waves of Jordan! what, though in the records of his dealings with us, I read not that he stood and measured the earth; that he beheld and drove asunder the nations; that the mountains saw him and trembled; that the deep lifted up his hands on high; that the sun and moon stood still in their habitations! what, though in the history of the founders of our institu-

tions, I read not of cloven tongues like as of fire; nor of the earthquake at midnight that burst the prison-gates; nor of the trance of Peter, nor the vision of Cornelius, nor the mid-day glory that struck Paul with blindness!*

How beautiful is all this visible world:
How beautiful in its action and itself!

How still he is now! how fiery hot! how cold!
How terrible! how lifeless!

How fair its lawns and sheltering woods appear:
How sweet its streamlet murmurs in mine ear!

How ghastly the visage of death doth appear;
How frightful the thought of the shroud and the bier;
And the blood-crested worm how vile!

How friendly the hand that faith is now lending:
How benignant her look o'er the pillow while bending:
How sweet, how assuring, her smile!

What affections the violet awakes!
What loved little islands, twice seen in their lakes,
  Can the wild water-lily restore!
What landscapes I read in the primrose's looks!
And what pictures of pebbled and minnowy brooks,
  In the vetches that tangled their shore!

2. *Imperfect Loose.*

Examples.

Where, in the compass of human literature, can the fancy be so elevated by sublime description: can the heart be so warmed by simple, unaffected tenderness!

What a pity that the object of that guilty confidence had not something of humanity: that as a female, she did not feel for the character of her sex: that as a mother she did not mourn over the sorrows of a helpless family!

How peculiarly and imperiously incumbent, then, is it on us this day, in this place, and in this assembly, to speak together concerning the glory of our ancestors; to analyze that glory; and to inquire what it is to deserve, and what it is to disgrace those ancestors!

---

* Each of the three parts of this long perfect loose indefinite, it may be well to say, is a compact sentence having only the first word (*what*) of the first part expressed; (*see Compound Compact Indefinite Interrogative Sentences, Note;*) and having an imperfect loose construction in the second part. The correlative words, I need scarcely add, are *yet—though*.

But how much nobler will be our sovereign's boast in having it to say that he found law dear, and left it cheap: found it a sealed book, and left it a living letter: found it a patrimony of the rich; left it the inheritance of the poor: found it the two-edged sword of craft and oppression; left it the staff of honesty, and the shield of innocence!

What a proud testimony does it bear to the character of our nation, that it is able to make a proper estimate of services like these: that while in other countries, the senseless mob fall down in stupid admiration, before the bloody wheels of the conqueror, even the conqueror by accident, in this, our people rise, with one accord, to pay their homage to intellect and virtue!

Oh! how recreating is it to feel that occasions may rise in which the soul of man may resume her pretensions: in which she hears the voice of nature whispering to her, "I have made man erect that he may look up to heaven:" in which even I can look up with calm security to the court, and down with the most profound contempt on the reptile I mean to tread upon!

3. INDIRECT INTERROGATIVE.

Examples.

Surely, they were indignant at this treatment: surely, the air rings with reproaches upon a man who has thus made them stake their reputation upon a falsehood, and then gives them little less than the lie direct to their assertions! [No, sir; nothing of all this is heard from our cabinet.]

Surely, a people with whom we were connected by so many natural and adventitious ties, had some claim upon our humanity: surely, if our duty required that they and theirs should be sacrificed to our interests, or our passions, some regret mingled in the execution of the purpose! We postponed the decree of ruin until the last moment: we hesitated, we delayed, until longer delay was dangerous! [Alas! sir, there was nothing of this kind.]

I see no swords and bucklers on these floors!
Sure they lie,
Who say thou cam'st a secret spy!
[Heaven! are thy thunders idle? and thou earth,
That yet endurest his tread,] thou wilt not part
Beneath him, and deep hide his infamy!
[Oh!] the count
Is pleasant then; and thou wouldst fain forget
A humble villager, who only boasts
The treasure of the heart!

III. COMPELLATIVE EXCLAMATORY SENTENCES.

1. *Examples at the beginning.*

Friends, Romans, countrymen′! lend me your ears.
Men! brethren! and fathers′! hear ye my defence which I now make unto you!

Friends, countrymen, and lovers′! hear me for my cause, and be silent that you may hear.

Truth′! friendship′! my country′! sacred objects′, sentiments dear to my heart′, accept my last sacrifice.

Oh thou disconsolate widow′! robbed, so cruelly robbed, and in so short a time, both of a husband and a son′! what must be the plenitude of thy sufferings!

Friends! fellow-citizens! and countrymen! who have honored me with your presence and attention on this occasion, I thank you: I thank you from my heart.

Ye, who have hearts of pity! ye, who have experienced the anguish of dissolving friendship! who have wept and still weep over the mouldering ruins of departed kindred!—ye can enter into the reflection.

O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets and stonest them that are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

Oh Luxury′! thou curst by Heaven's decree,
How ill exchanged are things like these for thee!

My mother earth!
And thou, fresh breaking day! and you, ye mountains!
Why are ye beautiful?

Fair star of evening! splendor of the west!
Star of my country! on the horizon's brink
Thou hangest.

Most potent, grave and reverend seigniors!
My very noble and approved good masters!
That I have ta'en away this old man's daughter,
Is most true.

O day the fairest sure that ever rose!
Period and end of anxious Emma's woes!
Sire of her joy, and source of her delight!
O, winged with pleasure, take thy happy flight,
And give each future morn a tincture of thy white.

Ye well arrayed! ye lilies of our land!
Ye lilies male! who neither toil nor spin,
(As sister lilies might,) if not so wise
As Solomon, more sumptuous to the sight!
Ye delicate! whom nothing can support,
Yourselves most insupportable! for whom
The winter rose must blow, the sun put on
A brighter beam in Leo, silky-soft
Favonius breathe still softer, or be chid,
And other worlds send odors, sauce and song,
And robes, and notions, framed in foreign looms!
O ye Lorenzos of our age! who deem
One moment unamused a misery
Not made for feeble man, who call aloud
For every bauble drivelled o'er by sense,
For rattles and conceits of every cast,
For change of follies and relays of joy,
To drag your patient through the tedious length
Of a short winter's day!—say, sages! say,
Wit's oracles! say, dreamers of gay dreams!
How will you weather an eternal night,
Where such expedients fail?

2. *Examples in the middle.*

And he said, Men! brethren! and fathers'! hearken.
But Peter standing up with the eleven, lifted up his voice and said unto them, Ye men of Judea'! and all ye that dwell in Jerusalem'! be this known unto you.

I love thee, mournful, sober-suited night!
When the faint moon, yet lingering in her wane,
And veiled in clouds, with pale uncertain light
Hangs o'er the waters of the restless main.

3. *Examples at the end.*

By the end is here meant, it will be borne in mind, the end of perfect sense: marked indifferently by partial or perfect close: the end also of interrogatives and interrogative exclamations, and of their parts, if loose.

Now that you are gone, who will take your place, servant of God, and friend of man?

Is this your triumph, this your proud applause,
Children of truth, and champions of her cause?

Behold, you powers!
To whom you have intrusted human kind!
See Europe, Afric, Asia, put in balance,
And all weighed down by one light, worthless woman!

And say, Supernal powers! who deeply scan
Heaven's dark decrees, unfathomed yet by man!
When shall the world call down to cleanse her shame
That embryo spirit, yet without a name:
That friend of nature, whose avenging hands
Shall burst the Lybian's adamantine bands?

How could ye do this, ye slaves and miserable panders of tyranny?

On, ye brave,
Who rush to glory and the grave!

Then melt, ye elements! that formed in vain
This troubled pulse and visionary brain!
Fade, ye wild flowers! memorials of my doom!
And sink, ye stars! that light me to the tomb!

In all the preceding examples of compellatives at the end, except the last three, they terminate with their appropriate ending, the bend: in the last three, they yield to the overpowering force of the downward slide and the imperative mood.

IV. SEMI-EXCLAMATORY.

Examples.

So thought Palmyra\: where is she!
They will cry in the last accents of despair′, oh! for a Washington, an Adams, a Jefferson!*

Gentlemen, we are at the point of a century from the birth of Washington\; and what a century it has been!

At the end of the very next century, if she proceeds as she seems to promise′, what a wondrous spectacle may she not exhibit!

When Jesus saw that he was very sorrowful, he said′, How hardly shall they that have riches enter into the kingdom of God!

And when he came to himself, he said′, How many hired servants of my father have enough and to spare, and I perish with hunger!

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children′, how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him!

---

* *I. e.* Oh what would we not give for a Washington, &c

Praise and thanksgiving are the most delightful business of heaven'; and God grant that they may be our greatest delight, our most frequent employment, on earth!

O Jerusalem', Jerusalem', thou that killest the prophets and stonest them that are sent unto thee', how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!*

And the king was much moved, and went up to the chamber over the gate, and wept'; and as he went up, thus he said: O my son Absalom', my son', my son *Absalom'!* would to God I had died for thee, O Absalom, my son, my *son!*

When the sun rises or sets in the heavens, when autumn pours forth its fruits, or when winter returns in its awful forms, happy were it for us, did we view the Creator and Preserver of all, continually manifesting himself in his various works!

When a government forbids its citizens, under pain of death, to receive any pension or largess from the hands of foreigners, how gentle and easy is that law to those, who, for the sake of their fatherland and liberty, would of their own accord, abstain from so unworthy an act! but on the contrary, how harsh and oppressive does it appear to those who care for nothing but their selfish gains!

If for the prosperity of our worldly attempts, for avoiding dangers that threaten us with pain and damage, for defeating the adversaries of our secular quiet, we make our song of victory, how much more for the happy progress of our spiritual affairs, for escaping those dreadful hazards of utter ruin and endless torture, for vanquishing sin and hell, those irreconcilable enemies to our everlasting peace, are we obliged to utter triumphant anthems of joy and thankfulness!

Yes, beauty dwells in all our paths, but sorrow too is there:
How oft some cloud within us dims the bright, still summer air,
When we carry our sick hearts abroad amidst the joyous things,
That through the leafy places glance on many-colored wings!

Auspicious Hope! in thy sweet garden grow
Wreaths for each toil, a charm for every wo:
Won by their sweets, in nature's languid hour,
The way-worn pilgrim seeks thy summer bower:
There, as the wild bee murmurs on the wing,
What peaceful dreams, thy handmaid spirits bring!

---

* This sentence is not, strictly speaking, semi-exclamatory, but wholly: yet the compellative portion being virtually declarative, I include this and other cases of the same kind, under the semi-exclamatory head.

What viewless forms the Æolian organs play
And sweep the furrowed lines of anxious thought away!

Look then abroad through nature to the range
Of planets, suns and adamantine spheres,
Wheeling unshaken through the void immense,
And speak, O man! does this capacious scene
With half that kindling majesty dilate
Thy strong conception, as when Brutus rose
Refulgent from the stroke of Cæsar's fate
Amid the crowd of patriots, and his arm
Aloft extending, like eternal Jove
When guilt brings down the thunder, called aloud
On Tully's name, and shook his crimson steel,
And bade the father of his country, hail!
For lo! the tyrant prostrate on the dust,
And Rome again is free!

Land of our fathers! though 'tis ours to roam
A land upon whose bosom thou might'st lie,
Like infant on its mother's; though 'tis ours
To gaze upon a nobler heritage
Than thou couldst e'er unshadow to thy sons;
Though ours to linger upon fount and sky,
Wilder, and peopled with great spirits who
Walk with a deeper majesty than thine;
Yet, as our fatherland, oh who shall tell
The lone mysterious energy which calls
Upon our sinking spirits to walk forth
Amid thy wood and mount, where every hill
Is eloquent with beauty, and the tale
And song of centuries, the cloudless years
When fairies walked thy valleys, and the turf
Rung to their tiny footsteps, and quick flowers
Sprang with the lifting grass on which they trode:
When all the landscape murmured to its rills,
And Joy with Hope slept in its leafy bowers!

Miscellaneous Examples of Exclamatory Sentences.

Blush, then, ministers and warriors of imperial France, who have deluded your nation by pretensions to a disinterested regard for its liberties and rights! disgorge the riches extorted from your fellow-citizens, and the spoils amassed from confiscation and blood! restore to impoverished nations the price paid by them for the privilege of slavery, and now appropriated to the refinements of luxury and corruption! approach the tomb of Hamilton, and com-

pare the insignificance of your gorgeous palaces with the awful majesty of this tenement of clay!

If charters are not deemed sacred, how miserably precarious is every thing founded upon them!

But I forbear, and come reluctantly to the transactions of that dismal night, when in such quick succession we felt the extremes of grief, astonishment and rage: when heaven in anger, for a dreadful moment, suffered hell to take the reins: when Satan with his chosen band opened the sluices of New England's blood, and sacrilegiously polluted our land with the dead bodies of her guiltless sons!

May that magnificence of spirit, which scorns the low pursuits of malice, may that generous compassion, which often preserves from ruin even a guilty villain, forever actuate the noble bosoms of Americans!

Tell me, ye bloody butchers! ye villains high and low! ye wretches who contrived, as well as ye who executed the inhuman deed! do you not feel the goads and stings of conscious guilt pierce through your savage bosoms!

Unhappy Monk! cut off, in the gay morn of manhood, from all the joys which sweeten life: doomed to drag on a pitiful existence, without even a hope to taste the pleasures of returning health!

Ye dark, designing knaves! ye murderers! parricides! how dare you tread upon the earth, which has drank in the blood of slaughtered innocents, shed by your hands: how dare you breathe that air which wafted to the ear of heaven the groans of those who fell a sacrifice to your accursed ambition! But if the laboring earth doth not expand her jaws, if the air you breathe is not commissioned to be the minister of death, yet hear it and tremble! The eye of heaven penetrates the darkest chambers of the soul: traces the leading clue through all the labyrinths which your industrious folly has devised; and you, however you may have screened yourselves from human eyes, must be arraigned, must lift your hands, red with the blood of those whose death you have procured, at the tremendous bar of God!

May this Almighty Being graciously preside in all our councils: may he direct us to such measures as he himself shall approve, and be pleased to bless: may we ever be a people favored of God: may our land be a land of liberty, the seat of virtue, the asylum of the oppressed, a name and a praise in the whole earth, until the last shock of time shall bury the empires of the world in one common undistinguished ruin!

The voice of your father's blood cries to you from the ground, My sons, scorn to be slaves! In vain we met the frowns of tyrants; in vain we crossed the boisterous ocean, found a new world, and prepared it for the happy residence of liberty; in vain we

toiled; in vain we fought; we bled in vain; if you, our offspring, want valor to repel the assaults of her invaders!

Say, fellow-citizens! what dreadful thought now swells your heaving bosoms! You fly to arms: sharp indignation flashes from each eye: revenge gnashes her iron teeth: death grins a hideous smile, secure to drench his greedy jaws in human gore; whilst hovering furies darken all the air!

For what task more delightful than to contemplate the successful struggles of virtue: to see it, at one moment, panting under the grasp of oppression, and rising in the next with renewed strength, as if, like the giant son of earth, she had acquired vigor from the fall: to see hope and disappointment, plenty and want, defeats and victories, following each other in rapid succession, and contributing, like light and shade, to the embellishment of the piece!—What more soothing to the soft and delicate feelings of humanity, than to wander, with folded arms and slow and pensive step, amidst the graves of departed heroes, to indulge the mingled emotions of grief and admiration: at one moment giving way to private sorrow, and lamenting the loss of a friend, a relation, a brother; in the next, glowing with patriot warmth, gazing with ardor on their wounds, and invoking their spirits, while we ask Heaven to inspire us with equal fortitude!

Strange, unaccountable paradox! How much more rational would it be to argue that the natural enemy of the privileges of freemen is he who is robbed of them himself!

How many opportunities do foreign attachments afford, to tamper with domestic factions: to practise the arts of seduction: to mislead public opinion: to influence or awe the public councils!

How novel, how grand the spectacle!

Commencing his administration, what heart is not charmed with the recollection of the pure and wise principles announced by himself as the basis of his political life!

No matter how we may have graduated in the scale of nations; no matter with what wreath we may have been adorned, or what blessings we may have been denied; no matter what may have been our feuds, our follies or our misfortunes; it has at least been universally conceded, that our hearths were the home of the domestic virtues; and that love, honor and conjugal fidelity, were the dear and indisputable deities of our household!

It is without remedy: it is without antidote: it is without evasion!

Under such a visitation, how dreadful would be the destiny of the virtuous and the good, if the providence of our constitution had not given you the power, as, I trust, you will have the principle, to bruise the head of the serpent and crumble the altar of its idolatry!

But I do ask you, of what materials must the man be composed,

who could thus debase the national liberality! What! was the recompense of that lofty heroism which has almost appropriated to the British navy the monopoly of maritime renown, was that grateful offering which a weeping country pours into the lap of its patriot's widow, and into the cradle of its warrior's orphans, was that generous consolation with which a nation's gratitude cheers the last moments of her dying hero, by the portraiture of his children sustained and ennobled by the legacy of his achievements, to be thus deliberately perverted into the bribe of a base, reluctant, unnatural prostitution! Oh! I know of nothing to parallel the self-abasement of such a deed, except the audacity that requires an honorable jury to abet it!

Gracious God! is it not enough to turn mercy herself into an executioner! You convict for murder; here is the hand that murdered innocence: you convict for treason; here is the vilest disloyalty to friendship: you convict for robbery; here is one who plundered virtue of her dearest jewel, and dissolved it even in the bowl of that hospitality held out to him!

What! Must I not only reveal this guilt, must I not only expose this perfidy, must I not only brand the infidelity of a wife and a mother; but must I, amid the agonies of outraged nature, make the brother proof of the sister's prostitution!

Happy was it for Ireland that she had recovered her rights by victory, not stained by blood: not a victory bathed in the tears of a mother, a sister, or a wife: not a victory hanging over the grave of a Warren or a Montgomery, and uncertain whether to triumph in what she had gained, or to mourn over what she had lost!

Must we then realize that Hamilton is no more: must the sod, not yet cemented on the tomb of Washington, still moist with our tears, be so soon disturbed to admit the beloved companion of Washington; the partner of his dangers; the object of his confidence; the disciple who leaned upon his bosom! Insatiable Death! will not the heroes and statesmen whom mad ambition has sent from the crimsoned fields of Europe suffice to people thy dreary dominions!

And in our infant country, how small was the remnant of our revolutionary heroes which had been spared from thy fatal grasp! Could not our Warren, our Montgomery, our Mercer, our Greene, our Washington appease thy vengeance for a few short years; shall none of our early patriots be permitted to behold the perfection of their own work in the stability of our government and the maturity of our institutions; or* hast thou predetermined, dread

---

* *Or* disjunctive. This is the only instance of double interrogative exclamation with which I have met; and I have met with this too late for insertion in its proper place. It is delivered, I need scarcely say, like a double interrogative sentence.

King of Terrors! to blast the world's best hope, and, by depriving us of all the conductors of our glorious Revolution, compel us to bury our liberties in their tombs! O Hamilton! great would be the relief of my mind, were I permitted to exchange the arduous duty of attempting to portray the varied excellence of thy character, for the privilege of venting the deep and unavailing sorrow which swells my bosom at the remembrance of the gentleness of thy nature: of thy splendid talents and placid virtues!

I tremble to think that I am called to attack, from this place, a crime, the very idea of which almost freezes one with horror: a crime, too, which exists among the polite and polished orders of society; and which is accompanied with every aggravation: committed with cool deliberation, and openly in the face of day!

And was there, O my God! no other sacrifice valuable enough: would the cry of no other blood reach the place of retribution and wake justice, dozing over her awful seat!

Had it not had its advocates, had not a strange preponderance of opinion been in favor of it, never, O lamented Hamilton! hadst thou thus fallen in the midst of thy days, and before thou hadst reached the zenith of thy glory!

O that I possessed the talent of eulogy, and that I might be permitted to indulge the tenderness of friendship, in paying the last tribute to his memory! O that I were capable of placing this great man before you.*

Approach, and behold, while I lift from his sepulchre its covering! Ye admirers of his greatness! ye emulous of his talents and his fame! approach and behold him now! How pale! how silent! No martial bands admire the adroitness of his movements; no fascinated throng weep, and melt, and tremble at his eloquence! Amazing change! a shroud, a coffin, a narrow subterranean dwelling—this is all that now remains of Hamilton!

Where would be the spirit, where the courage of their slain fathers? Snatched and gone from ignoble sons! What should we answer to the children we leave behind; who will take their praise or their reproach, from the conduct of their sires, and those sires republicans; who, rejecting from the train of their succession the perishing honors of a riband or a badge, are more nobly inspired to transmit the unfading distinctions that spring from the resolute discharge of all the patriot's high duties!

Impious as well as insulting! The leopard cannot change his spots or the Ethiopian his skin, but *we*, *we*, are to put off our bodies and become unlike ourselves as the price of our safety!

When it happens that some of them are surrendered up, on ex-

---

* Each of these exclamations is the first part of a single compact, beginning with *if:* the second part beginning with *then* being understood. *If it was so that, &c., then, &c.*

amination and allowance of the proofs, it is not unusual to advert to it as an indication of British justice and generosity! The very act, which, to an abstract judgment, should be taken as stamping a seal upon the outrage by the acknowledgment it implies from themselves of the atrocity, is converted into the medium of homage and praise! Inverted patriotism: drooping, downcast honor! to derive a pleasurable sensation from the insulting confession of a crime!

They did not know that the angel of the Lord would go forth with them, and smite the invaders of their sanctuary: they did not know that generation after generation, would, on this day, rise up and call them blessed; that the sleeping quarry would leap forth to pay them voiceless homage; that their names would be handed down, from father to son, the penman's theme and the poet's inspiration; challenging, through countless years, the jubilant praises of an emancipated people, and the plaudits of an admiring world! no! they knew, only, that the arm which should protect, was oppressing them; and they shook it off: that the chalice presented to their lips was a poisoned one; and they dashed it away!

Sole survivor of an assembly of as great men as the world has witnessed, in a transaction, one of the most important that history records; what thoughts, what interesting reflections must fill his elevated and devout soul! If he dwell on the past, how touching its recollections: if he survey the present, how happy; how joyous; how full of the fruition of that hope, which his ardent patriotism indulged: if he glance at the future, how does the prospect of his country's advancement almost bewilder his weakened conception! Fortunate, distinguished patriot! interesting relic of the past!

Alas! those attic days are gone: that sparkling eye is quenched: that voice of pure and delicate affection, which ran with such brilliancy and effect through the whole compass of colloquial music, now bright with wit, now melting in tenderness, is hushed forever in the grave!

Thus lived and thus died our sainted Patriots! May their spirits still continue to hover over their countrymen, inspire their councils, and guide them in the same virtuous and noble path; and may that God, in whose hands are the issues of all things, confirm and perpetuate, to us, the inestimable boon which through their agency, he has bestowed, and make our Columbia the bright example for all the struggling sons of liberty around the globe!

Great Heaven! how frail thy creature man is made:
How by himself insensibly betrayed!

How blest the solitary's lot;
Who all-forgetting, all-forgot,
Within his humble cell,

The cavern wild with tangling roots,
Sits o'er his newly-gathered fruits,
Beside his crystal well!

Our portion is not large, indeed,
But then how little do we need!

Famine, plague, war, and an unnumbered throng
Of guilt-avenging ills, to man belong;
What black, what ceaseless cares besiege our state:
What strokes we feel from fancy and from fate!

O happy plains, remote from war's alarms,
And all the ravages of hostile arms;
And happy shepherds, who, secure from fear,
On open downs preserve your fleecy care;
Whose spacious barns groan with increasing store,
And whirling flails disjoint the creaking floor!

How I dreamt

Of things impossible;
Of joys perpetual in perpetual change;
Of stable pleasures on the tossing wave;
Eternal sunshine in the storms of life:
How richly were my noontide trances hung
With gorgeous tapestries of pictured joys;
Joy behind joy, in endless perspective!

Life! ask my life! confess! record myself
A villain for the privilege to breathe,
And carry up and down this cursed city
A discontented and repining spirit,
Burdensome to itself, a few years longer,
To lose it, may be at last, in a lewd quarrel
For some new friend, treacherous and false as thou art!
No.

Oh Heaven! that one might read the book of fate,
And see the revolution of the times
Make mountains level and the continent,
Weary of solid firmness, melt itself
Into the sea; and, other times, to see
The beachy girdle of the ocean
Too wide for Neptune's hips: how chances mock,
And changes fill the cup of alteration
With divers liquors!

Ha! again.
Said he, young Harry Percy's spur was cold:

Of hotspur, coldspur: that rebellion
Had met ill luck!

Now bind my brows with iron, and approach
The raggedest hour that time and spite dare bring,
To frown upon the enraged Northumberland;
Let heaven kiss earth; now let not nature's hand
Keep the wild flood confined; let order die;
And let this world no longer be a stage,
To feed contention in a lingering act,
But let one spirit of the first-born Cain
Reign in all bosoms; that, each heart being set
On bloody courses, the rude scene may end,
And darkness be the burier of the dead!

Oh, yet, for God's sake, go not to these wars!
[The time was, father, that you broke your word,
When you were more endeared to it than now.]

What! is my lord of Winchester installed,
And called unto a cardinal's degree!

She is beholden to thee, gentle youth!
Alas! poor lady! desolate and left!

Ha! majesty! how high thy glory towers
When the rich blood of kings is set on fire!

What! The kind Ismena
That nursed me: watched my sickness!

What! Love my foe:
Love one descended from a race of tyrants,
Whose blood yet reeks on my avenging sword!

Hippolitus!*
Am I alive or dead! Is this Elysium!
'Tis he! 'tis all Hippolitus!

Why look you so upon me?
I am but sorry, not afeared! delayed,
But nothing altered!

'Would thou hadst less deserved;
That the proportion both of thanks and payment
Might have been mine!

---

* This is not compellative, but a simple declarative exclamation; and should therefore be delivered with perfect close.

THE MIXED SENTENCE, CIRCUMSTANCE AND PARENTHESIS

I. THE MIXED SENTENCE.

RULE XX. The mixed sentence is delivered in conformity to the rules which govern the delivery of the particular sentences of which it is composed.

As the student is now supposed to be fully acquainted with every sentence in the English language, with its peculiar structure and the law of its delivery, and consequently with all the elements which, in combination, form the mixed sentence, I will not trouble him in this place with examples, but simply refer him to the Classification, where a sufficient number for illustration and practice will be found.

II. THE CIRCUMSTANCE.

RULE XXI. At the beginning and in the middle of declarative, or declarative exclamatory sentences without partial close, and of the parts of sentences ending with partial close, the circumstance always terminates with the bend; and at the end of such sentences and parts of sentences, it terminates with partial or perfect close. At the beginning, in the middle, and at the end of interrogative or interrogative exclamatory sentences, it conforms to the slide.

A particular species of circumstance, of which "said he," "cried James," "answered Cornelius," &c., though not forming a part of the question which precedes them, and usually having the interrogative or exclamatory point between them and the question, is nevertheless delivered with a continuation of the same slide. For examples of this and of other circumstances, for illustration and practice, I refer the student, as above, to the Classification.

III. THE PARENTHESIS.

RULE XXII. If the parenthesis follows a part of a sentence making imperfect sense, it terminates with the bend: if it follows partial or perfect close, that is to say, if it is placed between parts of a sentence making perfect loose, or between two sentences, it ends with the partial or perfect close.

With regard to declarative parenthetical sentences, this rule, I believe, holds universally true:* interrogatives modify it somewhat. After imperfect sense, the rising slide being nearly allied to the bend, and having but a slight tendency to break the connection, is pretty fully developed; but the falling slide, like the inferior sweep of emphasis, must return to the level of the sentence, or it will sever the connection altogether, like partial or perfect close, to which it is nearly related. After perfect sense, or partial and perfect close, the slides are unchecked.

Apart from the termination, the parenthesis should be delivered according to the nature of the sentence of which it consists.

To distinguish the parenthesis from the including sentence, it should, in general, be read with less force, or a lower tone of voice. I say in *general*, because the reverse of this is sometimes necessary; as when the parenthesis consists of a rapid and vehement question, or startling exclamation. The main thing is, to mark the parenthesis as such; and as doing this gracefully is a necessary qualification of the good reader or speaker, I subjoin copious examples for practice: including those already adduced in the Classification.

Examples.

We hold, you know, (and rightly too,) that all government is, or ought to be made and managed for the benefit of the people.

---

* Except in cases in which writers have violated propriety in composition.

And there will I nourish thee, (for yet there are five years of famine,) lest thou and thy household, and all that thou hast come to poverty.

He had not been there, (as I was informed by those who lived in his neighborhood, and who were acquainted with him,) since the year 1796.

Should liberty continue to be abused in this country, as it has been for some time past, (and though demagogues may not admit, yet sensible and observing men will not deny that it has been,) the people will seek relief in despotism or in emigration.

The power of such characters in nature, says Mr. Whately, (from whom I am happy to borrow the following observations, not only from the beauty of their expression, but from their singular coincidence in the illustration of the fact I have been endeavoring to establish,) the power of such characters is not confined to the ideas which the objects themselves immediately suggest.

No such claimant being found, (I mean none who knew the contents; for many declared that they expected just such a packet, and believed it to be their property,) Mr. Blenner very coolly resolved to apply the money to his own use.

I had often heard of my friend S—'s charming place, his excellent house, his every thing, in short, that great wealth (for he is a man of very large estate) could bestow, and taste, (for everybody talked of his and Mrs. L—'s taste,) could adorn. I pictured his groves, his lawns, and his waterfalls, with somewhat of that enthusiasm for country scenery which you seem to feel; and I thought of his daughters, (two elegant girls, whom I had just seen for a few moments in the way from New York,) as the wood-nymphs of the scene.

On the other hand, by what I had almost called an accidental circumstance, but one which ought rather to be considered as a leading incident in the great train of events connected with the establishment of constitutional freedom in this country, it came to pass, that nearly all the colonies (founded as they were on the charters granted to corporate institutions in England, which had for their object the pursuit of the branches of trade pertinent to a new plantation,) adopted a regular representative system.

That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled of the word of life; (for the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and show unto you that eternal life which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;) that which we have seen and heard, declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us.

Know ye not, brethren, (for I speak to them that know the

law,) how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth?

Is it, (permit me to ask,) because this affords no immediate profit, that you refuse to pursue it?

Could he possibly have committed this crime, (I am sure he could not,) which, as all will acknowledge, is at variance with the character he has borne, and the whole tenor of his life?

And what now, (I ask you,) is to save us from the abuse of all this power? What is to prevent our free democracy (especially when our country becomes crowded with people, as it will be by-and-by, even though our woods and prairies, and our cities are choked with men, almost stifling each other with their hot breath,) from following its natural bent, and launching us all, or those who come after us, in a wild and lawless anarchy?

She had managed this matter so well, (oh! she was the most artful of women!) that my father's heart was gone before I suspected it was in danger.

It was represented by an analogy, (oh! how inadequate!) which was borrowed from the religion of paganism.

Shall we continue (alas! that I should be constrained to ask the question!) in a course so dangerous to health, so enfeebling to mind, so destructive to character?

I wished (why should I deny it?) that it had been my case instead of my sister's.

Him I am to leave here, being first cleansed of the deep dye with which, by my art, (and what art is it I am not familiar with?) I have stained his skin to the darkest hue of the African.

Sir, to borrow the words of one of your own poets, whose academic sojourn was in the next college to that in which we are now assembled, (and in what language but that of Milton, can I hope to do justice to Bacon and Newton?) if their star should ever for a period go down, it must be to rise again with new splendor.

Then went the captain with the officers and brought them without violence; (for they feared the people, lest they should have been stoned;) and when they had brought them, they set them before the council.

Let the bishop be one that ruleth well his own house: having his children in subjection: (for if a man know not how to rule his own house, how shall he take care of the Church of God?) not a novice, lest being lifted up with pride, he fall into condemnation of the devil.

I will therefore chastise him and release him. (For of necessity, he must release one of them at the feast.) And they cried out all at once: saying, Away with this man and release unto us Barab-

bas; (who for a certain sedition made in the city, and for murder, was cast into prison.)

Brethren! be ye followers together of me, and mark them which walk so, as ye have us for an example. (For many walk, of whom I have told you often, and now tell you even weeping, that they are the enemies of the cross of Christ; whose end is destruction; whose god is their belly; and whose glory is in their shame: who mind earthly things.) For our conversation is in heaven.

God hath a special indignation against pride above all other sins; and he will cross our endeavors, not because they are evil, (what hurt could there be in laying one brick upon another; or in rearing a Babel more than any other edifice?) but because this business is proudly undertaken.

Let me earnestly impress it on every one who wishes to be saved, (and if we do not, why approach the sanctuary of God: why hear the words of this book: why lift up a prayer to the throne of heaven in the name of the great Redeemer?) if you wish to be saved, go not into such society; or if you enter it unawares, remain not in it.

CHAPTER VII.

EXERCISES ON PARAGRAPHS, OR SENTENCES IN CONTINUOUS DISCOURSE.

In the portion of this work on which we are about to enter, the student is gradually left, after the first three sections, to which I have appended copious notes, to his own resources in the analysis of sentential structure, and the application of preceding principles and rules. If, as is here supposed, he has carefully committed to memory and thoroughly digested those principles and rules, he will meet with no difficulty on the succeeding pages, which he cannot easily surmount: without such preliminary preparation he will probably stumble over the simplest passages; and his progress, if he make any progress, will be slow, embarrassed and extremely discouraging. As elsewhere, the diligent student will find here his merited reward: the indolent and heedless, his appropriate punishment.

In the notes succeeding each of the first three sections I have

indicated the manner in which exercises in reading, or rehearsals before speaking, should be conducted: barely indicated; for I have confined my attention to structure, emphasis and the rules of delivery. Of articulation, accent, and much under the head of modulation, especially key, force and rate, I have said nothing. What I have omitted will be supplied, I suppose, by the student himself, or his intelligent instructor: leaving nothing, in short, hitherto advanced, without pertinent use. For a distinct enumeration of the different topics to which attention should be given at a recitation, I refer to the beginning of Ch. VIth.

SEC. I. HAMLET'S INSTRUCTION TO THE PLAYERS.

1 Speak the speech, I pray you′, as I *pronounced* it to you`:
trippingly on the tongue`; but if you *mouth* it, as *many* of our
2 players do′, I had as lief the town-*crier* spake my lines. Nor
do not saw the air too much with your hand *thus*, but use
all *gently`;* for in the very torrent, tempest, and, (as I may
say,) *whirlwind* of your passion′, you must acquire, and beget
3 a *temperance*, that may give it *smoothness`*. O, it offends me to
the *soul*, to hear a robustious periwig-pated fellow tear a pas-
sion to tatters, to very *rags*, to split the ears of the ground-
lings`; who, for the *most* part, are capable of nothing but inex-
4 plicable dumb shows, and noise. I would have such a fellow
5 whipped for o'erdoing Termagant`: it out-herods Herod. Pray
6 you, *avoid* it. Be not too *tame* neither′, but let your own
7 discretion be your *tutor*. Suit the action to the *word′;* the
word to the *action`:* with this special *observance`:* that you *o'er-*
step not the modesty of *nature`;* for any thing so over-*done* is
from the purpose of *playing`;* whose end, both at the first, and
now, was, and is, to hold, as 'twere, the mirror up to *nature`:*
to show virtue her own *feature`;* scorn her own *image`;* and
8 the very age and *body* of the time′, his form, and *pressure*. Now
this, overdone, or come tardy off′, though it make the unskilful
laugh, cannot but make the *judicious grieve`;* the censure of
which *one*, must, in your allowance, o'erweigh a whole theatre
9 of *others*. O, there be players, that I have seen play, and heard
others praise, and that *highly*, (not to speak it *profanely*,) that,
neither having the accent of *Christians*, nor the gait of Chris-
tian, pagan, or *man*, have so strutted and bellowed, that I have
thought some of nature's *journeymen* had made men, and not
made them *well`:* they imitated humanity so *abominably*.

HAMLET'S INSTRUCTION TO THE PLAYERS, RHETORICALLY PARSED.

1st Sentence.

Question 1. What is the nature of this sentence? *Answer.* It is a compound declarative perfect loose sentence with two parts.

Q. 2. What do you mean by a compound sentence? *A.* A sentence which contains either *a single proposition*, having two or more subjects and verbs, or *two or more propositions*. having indifferently one subject and verb, or two or more subjects and verbs. (*See Classification: Compound Sent.*)

Q. 3. What, by a declarative sentence? *A.* A sentence which states or declares something in some one of the various relations of time, &c. (*See Classif. Decl. Sent.*)

Q. 4. What, by a loose sentence? *A.* A sentence which contains two or more distinct though related propositions, connected by conjunctions, adverbs or relative pronouns expressed or understood. (*See Classif. Loose Sent.*)

Q. 5. What, by a perfect loose? *A.* A sentence which has the construction of all its parts complete. (*See Classif. ibid.*)

Q. 6. You say this perfect loose sentence consists of two parts: what is the nature of the sentence in the first part? *A.* It is a compound declarative imperfect loose, with two subparts: the first ending with *you*, and the second with *tongue*.

Q. 7. What do you mean by an imperfect loose? *A.* A loose sentence which has its first part complete, but the succeeding part or parts fragmentary: requiring a portion of the first part (understood) to complete their construction. (*See Classif., as above.*)

Q. 8. What is the nature of the sub-parts? *A.* The first ending with *you*, is a declarative single compact of the second form.

Q. 9. What do you mean by a compact sentence? *A.* A sentence always consisting of two parts: each of which begins with a word which relates to another word at the beginning of the other. (*See Classif. Compact Sent.*)

Q. 10. What, by the second form? *A.* Compact sentences have these correlative words, sometimes both expressed; sometimes, only one of them; and sometimes both are understood. If both are expressed, the compact belongs to the first form: if only one, to the second: if neither is expressed, to the third. (*See Classif., as above.*)

Q. 11. What is the nature of the second sub-part? *A.* It is a simple declarative sentence: having the clause, *speak the speech*, understood before *trippingly*.

Q. 12. What is a simple sentence? *A.* A sentence having but one subject and one verb. (*See Classif. Simple Sent.*)

Q. 13. We have now analyzed one of the parts of the perfect loose sentence; what is the nature of the second? *A.* It is a mixed sentence.

Q. 14. What do you mean by a mixed sentence? *A.* A sentence consisting of two or more sentences of the same kind, or of different kinds combined. (*See Classif. Mixed Sent.*)

Q. 15. Are the sentences combined here of the same, or different species *A.* Of the same: both being single compacts of the second form: the greater comprehending, having the relative words *if—then*, and the less comprehended, the relative words *so—as*.

Q. 16. What is the proper punctuation between the principal parts of this sentence; that is, before *but*? *A.* The semicolon; because the connective *but* is expressed. (*See Punctuation, Semicolon.*)

Q. 17. What is the proper punctuation between the sub-parts of the first principal part; that is, before *trippingly*? *A.* The colon; because the connective, *namely* or *that is*, is understood.

Q. 18. In the first sub-part you have the clause, *I pray you:* what is the rhetorical name of it? *A.* A circumstance.

Q. 19. What is the nature of a circumstance? *A.* It is a part of a sentence necessary to the sense, but not the construction. (*See Classif. Circumstance.*)

Q. 20. Is it necessary to the sense in this place? *A.* Yes; for if it were not inserted, the *request* of Hamlet would be a *command*.

Q. 21. How is a circumstance always punctuated? *A.* At the beginning of perfect sense it is always followed, in the middle, preceded and followed, and at the end preceded, by a comma: at the end, it is of course followed by one of the pauses of perfect sense. (*See Classif., as above.*)

Q. 22. What is the proper punctuation of the second principal part? *A.* As it makes imperfect sense until completed, the comma only can be inserted, as in the text, between the parts of the less and greater compacts. (*See Punctuation, Comma, and Classif. Sing. Compact.*)

Q. 23. What is meant by the general delivery of a sentence? *A.* Its delivery apart from the consideration of emphasis; that is, its characteristic delivery.

Q. 24. What is the general delivery of the whole perfect loose sentence? *A.* (*See Rule IX.*)

Q. 25. What, of the first part, or imperfect loose sentence? *A.* (*See Ibid.*)

Q. 26. What, of the second part, or mixed sentence? *A.* (*See Rule XX.*)

Q. 27. What, of the circumstance in the first part? *A.* (*See Rule XXI.*)

Q. 28. Can you tell me which are the emphatic words? *A.* *Pronounced*, *mouth*, *many*, town-*crier*.

Q. 29. What is the effect of emphasis on each? *A.* On *pronounced* and town-*crier*, being in the same short division of sense with close, the lower sweep is converted into the falling slide to close: (*See Emph., Sec. II.* 2. 5:) on *mouth* and *many*, emphasis has a full develop-

ment of both sweeps: there being ample room for it between these words and the pause on either hand. (*See Emph., Sec. II.* 1.)

30. Now deliver the sentence.

2d Sentence.

Q. 1. What kind of sentence is this? *A.* Before I answer this question, I must make an observation or two on the use of *nor* and *for* in this place.

Nor is used here precisely as if preceded by another negative member of the same sentence, beginning with *neither* or *not:* as if, instead of the sentence already analyzed, the author had written as follows: "Neither speak the speech differently from the manner in which I pronounced it, nor saw the air too much with your hand thus; but," &c., or as follows: "Do not speak the speech differently from the manner I pronounced it, nor saw the air with your hand thus; but," &c.

Should we adopt the first construction, the whole sentence will be a compound declarative perfect loose, consisting of three parts: the first terminating with *thus*, and comprising a single compact with *neither—nor*, for correlative words; the second, a simple declarative; and the third a compound declarative close. Should we adopt the second construction, the whole sentence will be a double compact with the first and third part expressed: the first or negative part comprising two members, and the third, forming a perfect loose, consisting of two parts.

The word *for* is here used as the equivalent of *and*. In its proper force, it should introduce a reason for something going before; but this is not the case: it simply repeats the preceding sentiment in another form. The propriety of substituting *and*, will readily be perceived by employing it. I should add, perhaps, that if *for* was here used in its proper sense, that is, as the equivalent of *because*, the whole sentence would be a double compact with three of its parts expressed: the first, third and fourth; that is, the negative with two members, the affirmative opposed to the negative, and the reason for this affirmative.

On the whole, of the two methods of construction noticed above, I prefer the second; namely, that which makes the whole sentence a declarative double compact with the first and third part expressed.

Q. 2. What is a double compact sentence? *A.* It is a sentence consisting of two single compacts: each having the correlative words *therefore—because* or *for*, and the two together comprising four parts: the first, a negative, the second, an affirmative or negative assigning a reason for the preceding negative, the third an affirmative opposed to the first, and the fourth an affirmative or negative assigning a reason for the third. (*See Classif. Double Compact.*)

Q. 3. You have said the third proposition, in the present instance, beginning with *but*, contains a perfect loose sentence in two parts: what is the nature of the sentence in each part? *A.* The first, ending with *gently*, is a simple declarative sentence: (*see Sentence* 1*st*, 11, 12 *and Reference:*) the second is a compound declarative close.

Q. 4. Will you define a close sentence? *A.* It is one which contains a single proposition, comprising two or more subjects and verbs. (*See Classif. Compound Close.*)

Q. 5. What unusual appendage has this sentence? *A.* It includes a parenthesis; by which is meant a sentence or part of a sentence, included in another sentence or part of a sentence, and neither necessary to the sense nor construction. (*See Classif. Parenthesis.*)

Q. 6. What is the proper punctuation between the first and third part of the double compact; that is, between *thus* and *but*? *A.* The comma. (*See Classif. Double Compact.*)

Q. 7. What, between the parts of the third; that is, between *gently* and *for*? *A.* The semicolon. (*See Sentence* 1. 16.)

Q. 8. What should be the punctuation of the parenthesis? *A.* The parenthesis must always have the same pause after it, as before it. As it is inserted here after imperfect sense, the comma, if any, should be inserted before and therefore after it. I say *if any*, because strictly speaking none should be inserted; for if the parenthesis were absent, *and* and *whirlwind* could not be separated by any pause. (*See Classif. Parenthesis.*)

Q. 9. What is the general delivery of a double compact? *A.* The first part, if consisting of a single member, is delivered with the waving slide; that is, the slide formed by the sweeps of emphasis more or less fully developed: if comprising two or more members, each of these should be delivered in the same manner except the last; which may either be delivered in the same manner or with partial close. (*See Rule VIII.*) In the present instance, we have this choice; for the effect of *nor* (*see above*) is precisely the same as if the member implied by it was really expressed.

The succeeding propositions or parts of a double compact are delivered relatively like parts of a perfect loose sentence. (*See* 1*st Sentence*, 24, *and Rule IX.*)

Q. 10. What are the emphatic words? *A. Thus*, *gently*, *whirlwind*, *temperance* and *smoothness*.

Q. 11. Is emphasis on each of these words of the same kind? *A.* No: that on *whirlwind* is deferred emphasis.

Q. 12. What do you mean by deferred emphasis? *A.* In theory *torrent*, *tempest* and *whirlwind*, are equally emphatic; but in practice, the emphasis is deferred to the last, to avoid the recurrence of similar sounds. (*See Emphasis, Sec I.* 3.)

Q. 13. What is the effect of emphasis on each? *A.* If the negative part should be delivered with the waving slide, the emphasis on *thus* will have its lower sweep limited to the word: if it terminates with partial close, the emphasis will coincide with it. (*See Emph., Sec.*

I. 3. 4.) On *gently* and *smoothness*, emphasis coincides with partial and perfect close: on *temperance*, the lower sweep is confined to the word: (*See Emph., Sec. II.* 2:) on *whirlwind* a full development of the sweeps. (*See Emph., Sec. I.* 1.)

14. Deliver the sentence.

3d Sentence.

Q. 1. What kind of sentence is this? *A.* A compound declarative perfect loose with two parts. (*See* 1*st Sentence*, 1—5.)

Q. 2. What is the sentence in the first of these parts? *A.* A compound declarative close, (*see* 2*d Sentence*, 4,) preceded by the variable exclamation *O;* which is here a mere key-note to what follows. (*See Ch. VI. Simple Spontaneous Exclamations*, 2. 5.)

Q. 3. What, in the second part? *A.* Also a compound declarative close: it includes a circumstance; namely, *for the most part.* (*See Sent.* 1*st*, 18–21.)

Q. 4. What is the proper punctuation between the parts? *A.* The semicolon; for the connective *who* is expressed. (*See Sent.* 1*st*, 16.)

Q. 5. What is the proper punctuation of the parts separately considered. *A.* The comma should be inserted between its principal members. (*See Sent.* 2*d*, 4.)

Q. 6. What is the general delivery of the whole? (*See Sent.* 1*st*, 24.)

Q. 7. What of each part? (*See Rule VI.*)

Q. 8. Which are the emphatic words? *A. Soul*, *rags*, *groundlings*, *most* and *noise*. *Rags* and *noise*, deferred emphasis. (*See* 2*d Sentence*, 12.)

Q. 9. What is the effect in each case? On *soul* and *rags*, circumflex: on *most*, full development: on *groundlings* and *noise*, it coincides with partial close. (*See Sent.* 1*st*, 29, 2*d*, 13.)

10. Deliver the sentence.

4th Sentence.

Q. 1. What is the name of this sentence? *A.* It is a compound declarative perfect loose with two parts like the preceding sentence; which see.

Q. 2. What, of the parts? *A.* They are both simple declarative sentences. (*See Sent.* 2*d*, 3.)

Q. 3. What pause should separate them? *A.* A colon. (*See Classification, Loose Sentence; and Punctuation, Colon.*)

Q. 4. What is the general delivery of the whole sentence? *A.* (*See Sent.* 3*d*, 6.)

Q. 5. Are there any emphatic words? *A.* Yes: *Termagant* and *Herod;* on both of which emphasis coincides with close.

6. Deliver the sentence.

5th Sentence.

Q. 1. What is the nature of this sentence? *A.* A compound declarative close: including the circumstance, "Pray you." (*See. Sent.* 1*st*, 18–21: *see also Sent.* 3*d*, 2.)

Q. 2. What is the general delivery of a close sentence? *A.* (*See Rule VI.*)

Q. 3. What are the emphatic words? *A. Pray* and *avoid.*

Q. 4. What is the effect? *A.* The emphasis on *pray*, has the upper sweep cut off in consequence of falling on the first word in the sentence; (*see Emph., Sec. II.* 2;) and on *avoid*, it has the lower sweep converted into the falling slide. (*See Emphasis, Sec. II.* 5.)

5. Deliver it.

6th Sentence.

Q. 1. What name do you give this sentence? *A.* It is a double compact, with the 1st and 3d part expressed. (*See Sent.* 2*d*, 2.)

Q. 2. How should it be punctuated? *A.* With a comma between the parts. (*See* 2*d Sent.*, 6.)

Q. 3. What is the general delivery? *A.* (*See* 2*d Sent.*, 9, *and also Rule VIII.*)

Q. 4. What are the emphatic words? *A. Tame* and *tutor.*

Q. 5. The effect? *A.* On *tame*, full development: on *tutor*, emphasis coincides with perfect close.

6. Deliver it.

7th Sentence.

Q. 1. What? *A.* A compound declarative perfect loose in five parts: ending respectively with the words, *action*, *observance*, *nature*, *playing*, and *pressure.*

Q. 2. What is the sentence in the first part? *A.* A declarative single compact of the third form: the correlative words understood. *so—as.* (*See Class., Sing. Comp.* 3*d form.*)

Q. 3. In the second part? *A.* Simple declarative with the clause "but do it," going before, understood. (*See Sent.* 1*st*, 11, 12, *and Reference.*)

Q. 4. In third part? *A.* Simple declarative as in the preceding.

Q. 5. In fourth part? *A.* A mixed sentence, so—as this would be. (*See Sent.* 1. 14.)

Q. 6. In the fifth? *A.* Compound declarative imperfect loose. (*See* 1*st Sent.*, 6. 7.)

Q. 7. Having how many parts; and what is the nature of these parts? *A.* It comprises two parts: the first, including the circumstance "as 'twere," being a compound declarative close, and the second, either close or imperfect loose, as it may be treated. I treat it as imperfect loose.

Q. 8. What pauses should be inserted between the principal parts? *A.* A colon between the first and second, that is, between *action* and *with*, because the connective *but* is understood: (*see Punct., Colon :*) a colon between second and third, because the connective *namely* is understood: a semicolon between third and fourth, and fourth and fifth, because the connectives *for* and *whose* are expressed. (*See Punct., Semicolon, and also Classif., Loose Sent.*)

Q. 9. How should the sub-parts of the last principal part be separated? *A.* By a colon; for *and*, the connective before *to show*, is understood; and the sequent semicolons are employed between the subordinate sub-parts, because *and* is expressed.

Q. 10. What is the general delivery of the entire sentence? *A.* (*See Sent. 3d, 6.*)

Q. 11. What are the emphatic words? *A. Word, action, observance, nature, overdone, playing, nature, feature, image, body, pressure:* on *body* and *pressure*, the emphasis is deferred.

Q. 12. What is the effect in each case? *A.* On *action, observance, nature, playing, nature, feature, image* and *pressure*, the emphasis coincides with partial or perfect close: on *word* and *overdone*, it produces the circumflex: on *overstep* and *body*, it is attended by a full development of the sweeps.

13. Deliver the sentence.

8th Sentence.

Q. 1. This sentence: What? *A.* A compound declarative perfect loose with two parts, properly separated by the semicolon: the relative *which* being expressed.

Q. 2. In each part, what? *A.* In the first, a compound declarative mixed sentence: having two compacts interwoven. The greater has the correlative words *if—then*, both understood: the less, *though—yet;* the first of which is expressed. (*For the punctuation, see Compact Sentence.*) In the second, we have a simple declarative sentence, including a circumstance: *in your allowance.*

Q. 3. What are the emphatic words? *A. Laugh, judicious, grieve, one, others.*

Q. 4. What is the nature of the emphasis on *laugh* and *grieve, one* and *others*? *A.* It is antithetic. (*See for a full explanation of this, Emphasis, Sec. I. 2.*) In theory, *unskilful* and *judicious* are also under antithetic emphasis; but to avoid harshness, it is better to *defer* the emphasis to the last word.

Q. 5. What is the effect? *A.* On *laugh, one* and *judicious*, it produces circumflex: on *grieve* and *others*, it coincides with partial and perfect close.

6. Deliver it.

9th Sentence.

Q. 1. What is it? *A.* Comp. decl. perfect loose, in two parts: the 1st, containing a simple decl. parenthesis and a single compact circumstance of the first form, *neither—nor*, the correlative words, is a mixed sentence; combining close declarative at the beginning, with a single compact at the end, having the correlative words *so—that:* the second is a simple declarative.

Q. 2. What, the emphatic words; and what effect? *A. Highly, profanely, Christian* and *man* with circumflex: *journeyman* with full development: *well* and *abominably*, with partial and perfect close.

3. Deliver the sentence.

SEC. II. HAMLET'S SOLILOQUY.

1 To *be*, or *not* to be? That is the *question*`:
Whether 'tis nobler in the mind, to *suffer*
2 The slings and arrows of outrageous fortune'
Or take up *arms* against a sea of troubles,
3 And, by opposing, *end* them. To die — to sleep.
No more? and, *by* a sleep, to say we end
4 The heart-ache, and the thousand natural shocks
5 That flesh is heir to? 'Tis a consummation
6 Devoutly to be *wished*. To die — to *sleep*`:
To sleep! perchance to *dream*`! *Ay*`: there's the *rub*`,
7 For in that sleep of death *what* dreams may come,
When we have shuffled off this mortal coil',
Must give us *pause*. There's the respect

That makes *calamity* of so long *life;*
For who would bear the whips and scorns of time,
The oppressor's wrong, the proud man's contumely,
The pangs of despised love, the law's delay,
The insolence of office, and the spurns
That patient merit of the unworthy takes,
When he himself might his quietus make
8 With a bare bodkin? who would fardels bear,
To groan and sweat under a weary life;
But that the dread of something after death,
That undiscovered country, from whose bourn
No traveller returns, puzzles the will,
And makes us rather bear those ills we *have,*
Than fly to *others* that we know not of?

Thus conscience does make cowards of us *all;*
And thus the native hue of resolution
9 Is sicklied o'er with the pale cast of *thought;*
And enterprises of great pith and *moment,*
With *this* regard, their currents turn awry,
And lose the name of *action.*

HAMLET'S SOLILOQUY RHETORICALLY PARSED.

1st Sentence.

Q. 1. What kind of sentence is this? *A.* A double interrogative sentence.

Q. 2. What is a double interrogative? *A.* It is a single compact declarative, employed interrogatively: having *whether—or,* for correlative words. When so employed, the first of the correlative words, (*whether,*) is almost uniformly suppressed. (*See Classification, Sec. II. Class II. Preliminary Remarks.*)

Q. 3. Is the sentence complete, or fragmentary? *A.* Fragmentary: if completed, it would read thus: "Am I to be after death, or am I not to be" The construction of the second part of a double interrogative is scarcely ever complete. (*See preceding reference.*)

Q. 4. What is the proper punctuation between the parts? *A.* That of the compact sentence, the comma; or, in cases of allowable deviation, the semicolon. (*See Punc., Dev.* 1.)

Q. 5. Is not the sign of interrogation often inserted between the parts? *A.* Yes; but then it represents one or the other of these pauses. (*See Punct., Sec. II.* 1.)

Q. 6. What is the general delivery? *A.* The first part is delivered with the rising slide to the disjunctive *or,* and the second part, with the falling slide from it. (*See Rule XVII.*)

Q. 7. What are the emphatic words in this sentence? *A.* *Be* and *not.*

Q. 8. What the effect of emphasis on these words? *A.* The only effect on *be,* is to produce a dip or indentation in the rising slide: (*see Emph., Sec. II.* 7. 10:) on *not,* it defers the falling slide until that word is reached; and it is reached by a level delivery, or by an upper sweep. (*See Emph., Sec. II.* 8. 10.)

9. Deliver the sentence.

2d Sentence.

Q. 1. What sentence is this? *A.* A compound declarative perfect loose, with two parts: the first, a simple declarative, and the second, including a circumstance, a single compact of the first form: correlative words *whether—or.* (*See Hamlet's Soliloquy, 8th Sent.*) If the construction of this sentence was complete, it would have three parts: it being necessary to supply a third, to make out the connection of thought, thus: "That is the question;" which is equivalent to another; namely, "Whether 'tis nobler in the mind to suffer," &c. &c.

Q. 2. What should be the punctuation of the sentence as it stands? *A.* A colon should separate the two parts; for an entire part and two connectives are understood. (*See Punct., Colon, and Loose Sent., Classification.*)

Q. 3. What pause should be inserted between the parts of the compact in the second part? *A.* A comma; for the first part makes imperfect sense. (*See Punct., Comma, and Classification, Compact Sent.*)

Q 4. What is the general law for the delivery of a perfect loose? *A.* (*See Rule IX.*)
Q. 5. What are the emphatic words? *A.* *Question*, *suffer*, *arms* and *end*.
Q. 6. What the effect of emphasis on each? *A.* Emphasis on *question*, coincides with partial close: on *suffer* and *arms*, it produces a full development of the sweeps: on *end*, in consequence of the proximity of this word to close, it has its lower sweep converted into the falling slide.
7 Deliver the sentence.

3d Sentence

Q. 1. What? *A.* A simple declarative, with the verb *is* understood.
Q. 2. Why is the rhetorical pause inserted after die? *A.* Because the verb is omitted; and more especially because the sentence is thereby broken. (*See Punct. Rhet. P.*)
Q. 3. What is the general delivery of a simple declarative? *A.* (*See Rule I.*)
Q. 4. What is the emphatic word? *A.* *Sleep;* and emphasis on it coincides with perfect close
5. Deliver the sentence.

4th Sentence.

Q. 1. How do you name this sentence? *A.* It is a fragmentary compound perfect loose definite interrogative, consisting of two parts, properly separated by the semicolon; which is here represented by the rising slide: by the semicolon, because the connective *and* is expressed. (*See Punctuation, Semicolon, and Classification, Loose Sentence.*)
Q. 2. What do you mean by a definite interrogative? *A.* (*See Classification, Class II. Sec. II. Loose Def. Int.*)
Q. 3. You say fragmentary: in what respect? *A.* *No more*, is an abbreviation of "Is to die no more than to sleep?"
Q. 4. What is the nature of this first part of the perfect loose? *A.* It is a single compact of the first form, with the correlative words brought together in the middle. (*See Classification, Compound Sent., Sing. Comp.*)
Q. 5. What is the nature of the sentence in the second part? *A.* A compound close interrogative. It includes the circumstance "by a sleep." (*See Classification.*)
Q. 6. What is the general law for the delivery of a loose definite interrogative? *A.* (*See Rule XII.*)
Q. 7. What are the emphatic words? *A.* *More*, *by* and *heir*.
Q. 8. What the effect in each case? *A.* A mere dip or indentation in the rising slide. (*See Emph., Sec. II.* 7.)
9. Deliver the sentence.

5th Sentence.

Q. 1. What kind of sentence is this? *A.* It is a simple declarative, with emphasis on the last word coinciding with perfect close. (*See Sentence* 3*d.*)
Q. 2. Will you deliver the sentence?

6th Sentence.

Q. 1. What sentence is this? *A.* A fragmentary compound decl. exclam. perfect loose sentence. Written out fully, it would appear thus: "To die is to sleep; but if to die is to sleep! then, perchance it is also to dream!" It comprises, it will be observed, two parts: the first, a simple declarative, (*see sentence* 3*d*,) and the second, a single compact.
Q. 2. But why do you treat the second part as compact? *A.* Because Hamlet is reasoning; he reasons logically; and the compact sentence is necessary to his logic. He had already reached the conclusion that death is a sleep, and had said that if by sleep, we could understand an end of all the evil to which flesh is heir, it is a consummation devoutly to be wished; but that the sleep of death should be taken in this sense, is not so clear to his mind. He therefore repeats his previous conclusion as a new premise; and the logical inference at once strikes him; namely, that if to die is to sleep, then, like sleep, death also may have its dreams.

By many the repetition "To sleep!" is treated as a definite interrogative exclamation. Dr. Porter (*see Analysis of Rhetorical Delivery,*) treats it as such. But this is to make Hamlet ask a question which he had already satisfactorily answered; for he had already decided that death *is* a sleep; and it remained to determine *only*, whether death is not something *more* than sleep. To this, "To sleep!" employed as a question, is not relevant. To treat it as such, is therefore not admissible.

Should it be suggested, that if "To sleep!" is not equivalent to "Is to die to sleep?" it may be, nevertheless, to "Is to die no more than to sleep?" my reply is, that this is to make Hamlet ask the same question twice over; for this is precisely the question in verse 4th: and without irresistible reasons for it, its repetition is not to be supposed: especially when such a repetition is manifestly incompatible with that strictly logical and philosophical character which Shakspeare has ascribed to the speaker.

Q. 3. What pause should separate the simple declarative part from the single compact? *A.* A colon; because the connective *but* is understood.

Q. 4. What pause does the exclamation point after *sleep*, and also the excl. point after dreams, represent? *A.* After *sleep*, that is, between parts of the compact, it represents the semicolon; for both the correlative words are understood. (*See Classif. Single Compact, exception to Punctuation.*)

At the end of the sentence, it represents the period.

Q. 5. What is the general law of delivery for the entire loose sentence? *A.* (*See Rule IX.*)

Q. 6. Does the fragmentary character of the single compact in the second part, in any way modify its delivery? *A.* No. The fragments should be delivered precisely as if the sentences were complete. (*See Rule VII. Gen. Note*, 1.)

Q. 7. What are the emphatic words? *A. Sleep, sleep* and *dreams.*

Q. 8. What is the effect of emphasis in each instance? *A.* Emphasis on *sleep*, at the end of the simple declarative, coincides with partial close; on *sleep*, at the end of the first part of the single compact, it produces circumflex; and on *dreams* it coincides with perfect close. The exclamatory character of the sentence must not be overlooked. This gives breadth and intensity to the emphasis.

9. Deliver the sentence.

7th Sentence.

Q. 1. Of what kind is it? *A. Ay* being the representative of the preceding last part of the single compact, "It is perchance to dream," (*see Classif., Simple Declar. Sentences,*) it may form either a distinct part of the whole sentence, or the first part of a single compact, of which "There's the rub" shall form the second; that is, as if written thus: "*Ay**;* and there's the *rub**;*" or thus: "*Ay*′, and there's the *rub*\." Or which is the same thing, either thus, "It *is* perchance to dream\; and there's the *rub**;*" or thus: "It is perchance to dream′, and there's the rub\." If treated in the latter way, that is, as part of a single compact of the third form, the correlative words to be supplied are *so—as*, thus: "as it *is* perchance to dream′, so there's the *rub*\." In this case *ay*, being by supposition the last word of the first part, immediately preceding an intermediate pause and under emphasis, will be delivered with circumflex; and the pause between it and the second part, should be a semicolon; because the correlative words are both understood.

I prefer, however, to treat it as forming by itself a distinct part of the entire sentence; and the entire sentence, consequently, as a declarative perfect loose in three parts: the first part comprising *ay*, a simple declarative sentence, the second, ending with *rub*, another simple declarative, and the third with *pause;* which is a mixed sentence. I prefer this, because the delivery of *ay* under emphasis in combination with partial close, it seems to me, is more in consonance with the gravity of the train of thought, than its combination with the bend, producing circumflex. The latter demands a tone of surprise, irony or exultation; and either of these is irrelevant.

Q. 2. You say the third part is a mixed sentence: (*see Classif., Mixed Sentences:*) what combination does it contain? *A.* A combination of simple declarative and single compact: the latter, having the correlative words *then—when*, the last of which only is expressed, forms the subject, or nominative case, of the former. "In that sleep of death" is a circumstance. (*See Classif., Circumstance.*)

Q. 3. What is the general delivery of the whole perfect loose? *A.* (*See Rule IX.*)

Q. 4. What are the emphatic words? and the effect of emphasis on them? *A. Ay, rub, what* and *pause.* Emphasis on *ay, rub* and *pause* coincides with partial and perfect close: (*see Emph., Sec. II.* 4:) on *what* it has a very full development of the sweeps. (*See ibid. Sec. II.* 1.)

5. Deliver the sentence.

8th Sentence.

Q. 1. What is the proper name of this sentence? *A.* It is a semi-interrogative sentence; that is, a sentence in part declarative or exclamatory, and in part interrogative. (*See Classif., Class II. definitions and examples.*)

Q. 2. What is the sentence in the declarative portion? *A.* Compound close.

Q. 3. In the interrogative portion? *A.* Indefinite imperfect loose.

Q. 4. What do you mean by indefinite? *A. See Classification, Class II.* 2.)

Q. 5. Why do you say imperfect loose? *A.* Because *for* must be supplied before the second part. (*See definition of Imperfect Loose in Classif.*)

Q. 6. Of how many parts does the interrogative portion consist? *A.* Two parts.

Q. 7. What is the nature of the sentence in the first? *A.* It is a compound compact indefinite of the second form: having the correlative words *when—then*, reversed.

Q. 8. What is the second part? *A.* A compound perfect loose with two parts: the first ending with *life*, and the second with the end of the sentence: the former being a compound close, and the latter a mixed sentence; combining a compound close in the beginning, with a single compact at the end.

Q. 9. What is the nature of the connection between the declarative and interrogative portions of the semi-interrogative? *A.* Loose; that is to say, the two together form a perfect loose sentence. (*See Classif., Semi-interrog. for similar examples.*)

Q. 10. What is the general delivery of a semi-interrogative? *A.* (*See Rule XVIII., also*

Rule XV. and XIII., and especially the subjoined remark on the modification of the last Rule, by length of sentence.)

Q. 11. What are the emphatic words in the declarative portion? *A. There's, calamity, life.*

Q. 12. The effect on each? *A.* On *there's*, full development: on *calamity*, the lower sweep is confined to the word: a pause being possible after it: (*See Punct. Comma: Cases of Omission*, 5:) and on *life*, the emphasis coincides with partial close.

Q. 13. What are the emphatic words in the first part of the interrogative portion? *A. Who, time, wrong, continually, love, delay, office, unworthy, bodkin.*

Q. 14. The effect? *A.* These emphatic words collectively convert the uninterrupted falling slide into an interrupted descent through a succession of levels: each of them having the same effect on so much of the sentence as lies between it and the preceding emphatic word; that is to say, it defers the falling slide on that portion of the sentence until the emphasis is reached; when the voice descends to a lower point, and proceeds in the same manner until the next emphasis is reached; and thus to the end. (*See Emph., Sec. II.* 8.)

Q. 15. What are the emphatic words in the second part? *A. Fardels, life, have, others* and *of.*

Q. 16. What is the effect? *A.* The same as in the preceding part; except that the last member of the sentence being compact, and the emphasis on *have, others* and *of*, antithetic, it becomes necessary to mark these circumstances by delivering *have*, immediately preceding the intermediate pause, with circumflex, and *others*, not so situated, with a full development of the emphatic sweeps.

17. Deliver the entire semi-interrogative.

9th Sentence.

Q. 1. Describe this sentence. *A.* It is a compound declarative perfect loose, with three parts: the first, ending with *all*, and the second with *thought*, are simple declaratives; and the third, is a compound close. The parts are properly separated by the semicolon, because the connective *and* is in both instances expressed. (*For the general delivery, see Rule IX.*) The emphatic words are *all, thought* and *action*, coinciding with partial and perfect close, *moment* having circumflex, and *this*, full development of the emphatic sweeps. *Thus*, in both instances, and *with this regard*, are circumstances.

Q. 2. Will you deliver the sentence?

SEC. III. THE SPEECH OF BRUTUS.

1 Romans, countrymen, and lovers! hear me for my *cause*′,
and be silent that you *may* hear\: believe me for mine *honor*′,
and have respect to mine honor, that you may *believe*\: censure me in your *wisdom*′, and awake your *senses*, that you may
the better *judge*\.

2 If there be any in this assembly′, any dear friend of *Cæsar's*′,
to *him*, I say, that *Brutus's* love to Cæsar′, was no less than
3 *his*\. If, then, that friend demand why Brutus rose *against*
Cæsar′, this is my *answer*\: *not* that I loved Cæsar *less*′, but
4 that I loved Rome *more*\. Had you rather Cæsar were living,
and die all *slaves*, than that Cæsar were dead, to live all *freemen?*
5 As Cæsar *loved* me′, I *weep* for him\: as he was *fortunate*′, I *rejoice*
at it: as he was *valiant*′, I *honor* him; but as he was *ambitious*′,
6 I *slew him*\. There is *tears* for his love′, *joy* for his fortune′,
7 *honor* for his valor′, and *death* for his ambition\. *Who* 's here
8 so base, that would be a *bondman*? If any′, *speak*\; for *him*
9 have I *offended*. Who's here so *rude*, that would not be a *Ro-*
10 *man*? If any′, *speak*\; for *him* have I *offended*. 11 Who's here
12 so *vile*, that will not love his *country*? If any′, *speak*\; for

13 *him* have I offended\. I pause for a *reply*.——14 *None!*—
15 Then *none* have I *offended*. 16 I have done no more to *Cæsar*′,
17 than *you* shall do to *Brutus*. The question of his death is enrolled in the *capitol*\: his glory not *extenuated*, wherein he was worthy′, nor his offences *enforced* for which he suffered *death*\.
18 Here comes his body, mourned by Mark *Antony*\; *who*, though he had no hand in his *death*, shall receive the benefit of his *dying*\: a place in the *commonwealth*\; as *which* of you shall *not*?—
With this I *depart*\: that, as I slew my best *lover* for the good
19 of Rome′, I have the same dagger for *myself*′, when it shall please my country to need my *death*\.

THE SPEECH OF BRUTUS RHETORICALLY PARSED.

1st Sentence.

The exclamatory part of this sentence is compound compellative; (*See Classification*;) and what follows is compound declarative perfect loose in three parts, properly separated by the colon. (*See Punct. Colon, and Classif. Perfect Loose.*) The parts may be treated either as single compacts of the third form, with *when—then* or *as—so*, for correlative words; or as close declaratives. I prefer the latter. For the general delivery, *see Rule IX.* The emphatic words are those marked as such. On *cause*, *honor*, *wisdom*, *senses*, the lower sweep, confined to the word: on *may* it converts the lower sweep into falling slide: on *believe* and *judge*, it coincides with partial and perfect close.

2d Sentence.

A compound declarative single compact of the second form. For the punctuation, *see Punct. Comma*, and *Classsif. Sing. Compact:* for the general delivery, *see Rule VII.* The emphatic words are *Cæsar's*, *him*, *Brutus's* and *his*. On the first two, the lower sweep is confined to the word; on the third, full development; and on the last, coincides with perfect close.

3d Sentence.

A compound declarative perfect loose in two parts, properly separated by the colon, because *namely* is understood. (*See Punct., Colon.*) In the first part we have a single compact of the second form, *if—then*, correlative words, and in the second part, the same with correlative words *indeed—but*. For the punctuation, *see 2d Sentence.* For general delivery, *see Rule IX.* The emphatic words are *against*, *answer*, *not*, *less*, *more*. On *against* and *not*, emphasis produces full development: on *answer* and *more*, it coincides with partial and perfect close: on *less*, it is exhausted on the word.

4th Sentence.

A compound definite interrogative single compact, of the first form: correlative words *rather—than*. For the general delivery, *see Rule XI.* The emphasis on *living*, *slaves*, *dead*, *freemen*, antithetic. For its effect, *see Emph., Sec. II.* 7.

5th Sentence.

A perfect loose declarative, in four parts; each of which is a single compact of the first form: the correlative words *so—as*, it will be observed, are here equivalent to *because—therefore*. A colon, the proper punctuation between the first and second, and the second and third part, because the connective is understood: a semicolon between the third and fourth, because the connective is expressed. Full development of emphasis on *loved;* lower sweep exhausted on *fortunate*, *valiant* and *ambitious*, and on *weep*, *rejoice*, *honor* and *slew*, converted into the falling slide.

6th Sentence.

Either a single compact of the third form, with *and* substituted for the last of the correlative words *as—so*, (as there is tears, &c., so death, &c.,) or a close declarative. Punctuation and general delivery the same on either hypothesis. Emphasis on all the words marked as emphatic, produces full development.

7th Sentence.

A compound indefinite interrogative close. Emphasis on *who* and *bondman*. *Who* being the first word of the sentence, the slide, of course, is here not deferred at all. (*See Emph., Sec. II.* 8.)

8th Sentence.

A compound decl. perfect loose, in two parts: the first a single compact: the second, a simple declarative. A semicolon between the parts, because *for*, the connective, is expressed. Emphasis on *speak* and *offended* coincides with partial and perfect close: on *him*, the lower sweep is exhausted on the word; for a pause is possible after it in consequence of the inversion of the sentence. (*See Punct., Omissions of the Comma*, 4.)

9th Sentence.

A compound indefinite interrogative close. (*See 7th Sentence.*) Emphasis on *rude* and *Roman*. The former is in antithesis with *base* in the preceding question. For the effect, *see Emph., Sect. II.* 8.

10th Sentence. (*See 8th.*)

11th Sentence. (*See 9th.*)

12th Sentence. (*8th and 10th.*)

13th Sentence.

A simple declarative sentence. For general delivery, *see Rule I.* Emphasis on *reply*, and coincides with perfect close.

14th Sentence.

This is a fragmentary simple definite interrogative exclamation. For the general delivery, *see Rule II.* It receives emphasis as if the sentence was complete. (*See Emph., Sec. II.* 7.)

15th Sentence.

A simple declarative. Emphasis on *none* contradictory, and converting the lower sweep into falling slide. (*See Emph., Sec. II.* VI.)

16th Sentence.

A compound declarative single compact of the first form: correlative words *more—than*. Emphasis on *Cæsar* and *Brutus* antithetic: exhausting the lower sweep on the former, and coinciding on the latter with perfect close.

17th Sentence.

A compound declarative perfect loose, in two parts: the first a simple declarative, and the second a double compact with the first part only, having two members, expressed. (*See Classif., Sect. II. Class I. Double Compact, definition and examples*, 3.) For the general delivery, *see Rule IX.* For the proper pauses, *see Punct., Comma, and Classif. as above.* Emphatic words *capital, extenuated, enforced, death.* Emphasis on *capital* and *death* coincides with partial and perfect close: (*see Emph., Sect. II.* 4:) on *extenuated*, it produces full development: (*see Emph., Sect. II.* 1:) on *enforced*, the lower sweep confined to the word; because a pause may be made after it, for the reason that the sentence may be transposed at that point. (*See Punctuation, Comma, Omissions*, 5.)

18th Sentence.

A semi-interrogative. The declarative portion is perfect loose, in two parts: properly separated by the semicolon, because *who*, the connective, is expressed. Emphasis on *Antony, death, dying, commonwealth.* On all of them except *death*, it coincides with partial close: on *death* the lower sweep is exhausted on the word.

The interrogative portion is a simple indefinite interrogative, with emphasis on *which* and *not.*

19th Sentence.

A compound declarative perfect loose in two parts, separated by the colon, because *namely* is understood. The first part a simple declarative; the second, a mixed sentence combining two compacts. Emphasis on *depart* and *death* coincides with partial and perfect close; on *lover* it produces full development: on *myself*, the lower sweep limited to the word.

SEC. IV. THE PROPER LIMITS OF BENEVOLENCE.

1 Kind and amiable people! your benevolence is most lovely in its display, but oh! it is perishable in its consequences. Does it never occur to you that in a few years this favorite will die; 2 and that he will go to the place where neither cold nor hunger will reach him; but that a mighty interest remains, of which both of us may know the certainty, though neither you nor I can calculate the extent? Your benevolence is too short: it 3 does not shoot far enough ahead: it is like regaling a child with a sweetmeat or a toy, and then abandoning the happy unreflecting infant to exposure. You make the poor old man happy 4 with your crumbs and your fragments, but he is an infant on the mighty range of duration; and will you leave the soul, which has the infinity to go through, to its chance? How comes it that the grave should throw so impenetrable a shroud over 5 the realities of eternity? how comes it that heaven, and hell, and judgment, should be treated as so many nonentities; and that there should be as little real and operative sympathy felt for the soul which lives forever, as for the body after it is dead, or for the dust into which it moulders? Eternity is longer than time; the arithmetic, my brethren, is all on one side upon this 6 question; and the wisdom which calculates, and guides itself by calculation, gives its weighty and respectable support to what may be called THE BENEVOLENCE OF FAITH.—*Chalmers.*

Sentence 1*st.*—A single compact, 2d form: correlatives *indeed—but:* the first part preceded by a compellative, and the last including a spontaneous excl. *Sentence* 2*d.*—Imperf. loose definite interrog. in three parts: *but* a poor substitute for *and* in the third part. *Sent.* 3*d.*—Comp. decl. perf. loose in three parts. *Sent.* 4*th.*—Semi-interrog: declar. portion single compact, 2d form: *indeed—but:* the interrog. definite close: the declar. and interrog. have a loose connection. *Sent.* 5*th.*—Perfect loose indef. interrog.: the second part, imperf. loose. *Sent.* 6*th.*—Perf. loose declar. in three parts.

SEC. V. A TWOFOLD PEACE.

1 There is a twofold peace. 2 The first is negative. 3 It is relief from disquiet and corroding care: it is repose after con- 4 flict and storms. But there is another and a higher peace, to which this is but the prelude: "a peace of God which passeth understanding," and properly called "the kingdom of God within 5 us." This state is any thing but negative. It is the highest and most strenuous action of the soul; but an entirely harmonious 6 action, in which all our powers and affections are blended in a beautiful proportion, and sustain and perfect one another. It is 7 more than silence after storms; it is as the concord of all melo-

dious sounds. Has the reader never known a season, when, in the fullest flow of thought and feeling, in the universal action
8 of the soul, an inward calm, profound as midnight silence, yet bright as the still summer noon, full of joy, but unbroken by one throb of tumultuous passion, has breathed through his spirit, and given him a glimpse and presage of the serenity of a
9 happier world? Of this character is the peace of religion. It is a conscious harmony with God and the creation: an alliance
10 of love with all beings: a sympathy with all that is pure and happy: a surrender of every separate will and interest: a participation of the spirit and life of the universe: an entire con-
11 cord of purpose with its Infinite Original. This is peace, and the true happiness of man; and we think that human na-
12 ture has never lost sight of this its great end. It has always sighed for a repose, in which energy of thought and will might be tempered with an all-pervading tranquillity. We
13 seem to discover aspirations after this good, a dim consciousness of it, in all ages of the world. We think we see it in those
14 systems of Oriental and Grecian philosophy, which proposed as the consummation of present virtue a release from all disquiet, and an intimate union and harmony with the divine mind. We even think, that we trace this consciousness, this aspiration, in
15 the works of ancient art which time has spared us; in which the sculptor, aiming to embody his deepest thoughts of human perfection, has joined with the fulness of life and strength, a repose, which breathes into the spectator an admiration as calm
16 as it is exalted. Man, we believe, never loses the sentiment of his true good. There are yearnings, sighings, which he does not himself comprehend; which break forth alike in his prosperous and adverse seasons; which betray a deep, indestructible
17 faith in a good he has not found; and which, in proportion as they grow distinct, rise to God, and concentrate the soul on him, as at once his life and rest: the fountain at once of energy and repose.

Channing.

Sent. 1*st*, 2*d*, 5*th*.—Simple declar. *Sent.* 3*d*, 4*th*, 6*th*.—Comp. declar. perf. loose. *Sent.* 7*th*.—Single compact, 3d form: *therefore—for*. *Sent.* 8*th*.—Compound def. interrog. mixed sentence: *then—when*, *though—yet*, *indeed—but*, *as—so*, *happier—than*. *Sent.* 9*th*.—Simple declar. transposed. *Sent.* 10*th*.—Compound decl. imperf. loose in six parts. *Sent.* 11*th*.—Perf. loose decl. *Sent* 12*th*.—Decl. close. *Sent.* 13*th*.—The same *Sent.* 14*th*.—Mixed (close and single compact *so—as*) decl. *Sent.* 15*th*.—Decl. perf. loose in two parts. *Sent.* 16*th*.—Close decl. *Sent.* 17*th*.—Imperf. loose decl.: the last part imperf. loose.

SEC. VI. THE VALUE OF PUBLIC FAITH.

1 To expatiate on the value of public faith may pass with some men for declamation: to such men I have nothing to say. To

others, I will urge, can any circumstance mark upon a people
2 more turpitude and debasement? can any thing tend more to make men think themselves mean; or to degrade to a lower point their estimation of virtue, and their standard of action?

It would not merely demoralize mankind; it tends to break
3 all the ligaments of society; to dissolve that mysterious charm which attracts individuals to the nation; and to inspire in its stead a repulsive sense of shame and disgust.

4 What is patriotism? Is it a narrow affection for the spot
5 where a man was born? are the very clods where we tread entitled to this ardent preference because they are greener?
6 No, sir; this is not the character of the virtue, and it soars higher for its object: it is an extended self-love: mingling with all the enjoyments of life, and twisting itself with the minutest
7 filaments of the heart. It is thus we obey the laws of society, because they are the laws of virtue. In their authority we see,
8 not the array of force and terror, but the venerable image of
9 our country's honor. Every good citizen makes that honor his own, and cherishes it, not only as precious, but as sacred. He
10 is willing to risk his life in its defence, and is conscious that he gains protection while he gives it; for what rights of a citizen will be deemed inviolable when a state renounces the principles
11 that constitute their security? Or, if his life should not be invaded, what would its enjoyments be in a country, odious in the eye of strangers and dishonored in his own? Could he
12 look with affection and veneration to such a country as his
13 parent? The sense of having one would die within him: he would blush for his patriotism, if he retained any; and justly,
14 for it would be a vice. He would be a banished man in his native land.

Ames.

Sent. 2*d.*—Semi-interrog.: interrog. portion def. interrog. perf. loose. *Sent.* 3*d.*—Single compact, 3d form: *therefore—for:* the second part imperf. loose, or close. *Sent.* 5*th.*—Def. interrog. perf. loose. *Sent.* 6*th.*—*No* is followed by its equivalent: *and* after virtue clearly used for *for*. The sentence is then a double compact: first and second parts expressed: two members in the first part: the second part perfect loose. *Sent.* 7*th.*—Single comp. 2d form: *therefore—because.* *Sent.* 8*th.*—Mixed: part simple decl.; part double compact, first and third part expressed. *Sent.* 9*th.*—Mixed: close, and three single compacts: *indeed—but, so—as, so—as.* *Sent.* 10*th.*—Semi-interrog.: loose connection between decl. and interrog. portion; the latter indef. interrog. single compact: *then—when.*

SEC. VII. PERPETUITY OF THE UNION.

I have not allowed myself, sir, to look beyond the union, to see what might lie hidden in the dark recess behind; I have not coolly weighed the chances of preserving liberty, when the
1 bonds that unite us together shall be broken asunder; I have not accustomed myself to hang over the precipice of disunion,

to see whether, with my short sight, I can fathom the depth of the abyss below; nor could I regard him as a safe counsellor in the affairs of this government, whose thoughts should be mainly bent on considering, not how the union should be best preserved, but how tolerable might be the condition of the people when it shall be broken up and destroyed.

2 While the union lasts, we have high, exciting, gratifying
3 prospects spread out before us, for us and our children. Beyond that I seek not to penetrate the veil. God grant that, in
4 my day at least, that curtain may not rise: God grant, that on my vision never may be opened what lies behind. When my eyes shall be turned to behold, for the last time, the sun in heaven, may I not see him shining on the broken and dishonored fragments of a once glorious union; on states dissevered, discordant, belligerent; on a land rent with civil feuds, or drenched,
5 it may be, in fraternal blood! let their last feeble and lingering glance, rather, behold the gorgeous ensign of the republic, now known and honored throughout the earth, still full high advanced: its arms and trophies streaming in their original lustre: not a stripe erased or polluted, nor a single star obscured: bearing for its motto, no such miserable interrogatory as, What is all this worth? nor those other words of delusion and folly, liberty first, and union afterwards; but everywhere, spread all over in characters of living light, blazing on all its ample folds as they float over the sea and over the land, and in every wind under the whole heavens, that other sentiment dear to every true American heart: liberty and union; now and forever; one and inseparable!

Sent. 1*st.*—Double compact: first part only, comprising four members, expressed. *Sent.* 2*d.*—Decl. close. *Sent.* 3*d.*—Simple decl. transposed. *Sent.* 4*th.*—Decl. loose in two parts. *Sent.* 5*th.* Mixed sent. (*See Classif. Mixed Sent.*, where this sent. will be found.)

SEC. VIII. VIRTUE AND PIETY ARE CONFORMITY TO NATURE.

1 I find myself existing upon a little spot, surrounded every way
2 by an immense unknown expansion. Where am I? what sort of place do I inhabit? Is it exactly accommodated, in every
3 instance, to my convenience? is there no excess of cold, none of heat, to offend me? am I never annoyed by animals either of my own kind, or a different? is every thing subservient to me,
4 as though I had ordered all myself? No; nothing like it; the
5 farthest from it possible. The world appears not then origi-
6 nally made for the private convenience of me alone? It does not.
7 But is it not possible so to accommodate it, by my own particu-
8 lar industry? If to accommodate man and beast, heaven and

earth, if this be beyond me, it is not possible. What consequence then follows? Can there be any other than this: if I seek an interest of my own detached from that of others, I seek an interest which is chimerical, and can have no existence? How then must I determine? 11 Have I no interest at all? If I have not, I am a fool for staying here: 'tis a smoky house; and the sooner out of it the better. But why no interest? Can I be contented with none, but one separate and detached? is a social interest joined with others such an absurdity as not to be admitted? The bee, the beaver, and the tribes of herding animals, are enough to convince me that the thing is, somewhere at least, possible. How then am I assured, that it is not equally true of man? Admit it, and what follows? 19 If so, then honor and justice are my interest: then the whole train of moral virtues are my interest; without some portion of which, not even thieves can maintain society.

20 But farther still: I stop not here; I pursue this social interest as far as I can trace my several relations. I pass from my own flock, my own neighborhood, my own nation, to the whole race of mankind, as dispersed throughout the earth. Am I not related to them all by the mutual aids of commerce: by the general intercourse of arts and letters: by that common nature, of which we all participate?

23 Again: I must have food and clothing. 24 Without a proper genial warmth, I must instantly perish. Am I not related in this view to the very earth itself: to the distant sun from whose beams I derive vigor: to that stupendous course and order of the infinite host of heaven, by which the times and seasons ever uniformly pass on? Were this order once confounded, I could not probably survive a moment: so absolutely do I depend on this common welfare.

27 What then have I to do but to enlarge virtue into piety? Not only honor and justice, and what I owe to man is my interest, but gratitude also; acquiescence; resignation; adoration; and all I owe to this great polity, and its greater Governor, our common parent.

29 But if all these moral and divine habits be my interest, I need not, surely, seek for a better; I have an interest compatible with the spot on which I live: I have an interest which may exist, without altering the plan of Providence; without mending or marring the general order of events. I can hear whatever happens with manlike magnanimity, can be contented and fully happy in the good which I possess, and can pass through this turbid, this fickle, this fleeting period, without bewailings or envyings or murmurings or complaints.—*Harris.*

Sent. 1*st.*—Close Decl.: "which is" understood before surrounded. *Sent.* 2*d.*—Perf. loose indef. interrog. *Sent.* 3*d.*—Perf. loose def. interrog. *Sent.* 4*th.*—Double compact: first and third part expressed: first part has two members: semicolon between the parts, because both correlatives are understood. (*See Sing. Compact, Punctuation.*) *Sent.* 5*th.*—Indirect interrog. *Sent.* 8*th.*—Single compact, 2d form: two members in the first part. *Sent.* 10*th.*—Compound perf. loose def. interrog. *Sent.* 13*th.*—Decl. loose with three parts. *Sent.* 18*th.*—Semi-interrog.: connection between the decl. and interrog. compact, 3d form, 3d var. *Sent.* 19*th.*—Decl. loose with two parts: 1st part imperf. loose or sing. compact. *Sent.* 20*th.*—The same, with a double compact in the second part. *Sent.* 22*d and* 25*th.*—Compound def. interrog. imperfect loose. *Sent.* 29*th.*—Mixed: *if—then, therefore—because:* the last part of the second compact beginning with *because*, perf. loose in two parts: last, imperf. loose.

SEC. IX. TRUTH INVINCIBLE IF LEFT TO GRAPPLE WITH FALSEHOOD ON EQUAL TERMS.

1 Though all the winds of doctrine were let loose to play upon
the earth, so Truth be in the field, we do injuriously, by licens-
2 ing and prohibiting, to doubt her strength. Let her and False-
hood grapple: who ever knew Truth put to the worse in a free
and open encounter? who knows not that Truth is strong, next
3 to the Almighty? She needs no policies, nor stratagems, nor
licensings, to make her victorious; those are the shifts and de-
fences that error uses against her power. Give her but room,
4 and do not bind her when she sleeps; for then she speaks not
true, but then rather she turns herself into all shapes, except
her own, and perhaps tunes her voice according to the time,
until she be adjured into her own likeness.—*Milton.*

Sent. 1*st.*—Mixed sent. *though—yet, if—then: so* stands for *if*. *Sent.* 2*d.*—Semi-interrog.: loose connection between decl. and interrog.: the interrog. perf. loose. *Sent.* 3*d.*—Double compact, 1st and 2d part expressed. *Sent.* 4*th.*—Perf. loose.

SEC. X. THE RESULTS OF FREE DISCUSSION.

When the cheerfulness of the people is so sprightly up, as that
it hath not only wherewithal to guard well its own freedom and
safety, but to spare and to bestow upon the solidest and sub-
1 limest points of controversy, and new invention; it betokens us
not degenerated, nor drooping to a fatal decay, but casting off
the old and wrinkled skin of corruption, to outlive these pangs,
and wax young again: entering the glorious ways of truth and
virtue; destined to become great and honorable in these latter
ages. Methinks I see, in my mind, a noble and puissant nation
2 rousing herself, like a strong man after sleep, and shaking her
invincible locks: methinks I see her as an eagle mewing her
mighty youth, and kindling her endazzled eyes at the full mid-
day beam; purging and unscaling her long-abused sight, at
the fountain itself of heavenly radiance, while the whole noise

of timorous flocking birds, with those also that love the twilight, flutter about, amazed at what she means, and would prognosticate a year of sects and schisms.—*Milton.*

Sent. 1*st.*—Mixed; as a whole single compact, 2d form: *when—then:* the first part of this contains two other compacts: *so—as* and *indeed—but:* the second, a double compact: 1st and 3d part expressed: of which again the third part, is loose. *Sent.* 2*d.*—Decl. perf. loose in two parts: the first ending at *locks;* the second, imperf. loose.

SEC. XI. THE INFLUENCE OF ELEGANT LITERATURE.

There also are the eloquence, the literature, the poetry of all times and tongues; those glorious efforts of genius that rule,
1 with a never-dying sway, over our sympathies and affections: commanding our smiles and tears; kindling the imagination; warming the heart; filling the fancy with beauty; and awing the soul with the sublime, the terrible, the powerful, the infinite.

Ye grand inventions of ancient bards! ye gay creations of
2 modern fancy! ye bright visions! ye fervid and impassioned thoughts! serve ye all for no better purpose than the pastime of an idle hour?

3 Ah! not so: not so. It is yours to stir to the bottom the dull and stagnant soul: ye can carry man out of himself and
4 make him feel his kindred with his whole race: ye can teach him to look beyond external and physical nature for enjoyment and for power; ye rouse him from the deep lethargy of sense, raise him above "the worthless thing we are," and reveal to him his capacity for purer purposes, and a nobler state of being.

Verplanck.

Sentence 1*st.*—Perf. loose decl. in two parts: the first ending with *affections*, imperf. loose; the second, loose or close as it may be treated. *Sentence* 2*d.*—Semi-interrogative: first part compound compellative exclamatory; and the second, compound definite compact. The two parts relatively form a close sentence. The exclamation points represent commas. *Sentence* 3*d.*—A compound declarative perfect loose, preceded by the spontaneous exclamation *ah!* which is here merely the key-note of the sentence. *Sentence* 4*th.*—Perf. loose decl.: together with sent. 3d, it may form a double compact: 1st and 2d parts expressed. In which case, there should of course be semicolons after the two *sos* instead of the colon and period, and each *so* will be delivered with the bend.

SEC. XII. A VEHEMENT ATTACK ON THE ALIEN AND SEDITION LAW.

But, as if this were not enough, the unfortunate victims of
1 this law are told, in the next place, that, if they can convince the President that his suspicions are unfounded, he may, if he pleases, give them a license to stay. But how can they remove
2 his suspicions, when they know not on what act they were founded? how take proof to convince him, when he is not
3 bound to furnish that on which he proceeds? Miserable mockery of justice! Appoint an arbitrary judge, armed with

4 legislative and executive powers added to his own; let him condemn the unheard, the unaccused object of his suspicions; and then, to cover the injustice of the scene, gravely tell him, "You ought not to complain; you need only disprove facts you never heard; remove suspicions that have never been communicated to you; it will be easy to convince your judge, whom you shall not approach, that he is tyrannical and unjust; and when you have done this, we give him the power, he had before, to pardon you, if he pleases!" *Edw. Livingston.*

Sentence 1*st.*—Mixed sent. "But so—as, then—if—then—if." *Sentence* 3*d.*—Simple decl. exclam.: fragmentary. *Sentence* 4*th.*—As a whole, a mixed sentence: a compound declarative single compact, third form: correlative words, *when—then*, in the portion preceding the quotation: then begins another single compact with correlative words, *therefore—because;* which introduces a third, with correlative words, *as—so:* the whole linked thus: "*when* you appoint —*then* gravely tell him, *therefore* you ought not, *because*, *as* you need—*so* it will be easy," &c. The second part of this last compact is perfect loose, and concludes with a single compact: correlative words, *when—then.*

SEC. XIII. EVILS OF THE OLD CONFEDERATION.

1 Need I call to your remembrance the contrasted scenes of which we have been witnesses? On the glorious conclusion of
2 our conflict with Britain, what high expectations were formed concerning us, by others! what high expectations did we form
3 concerning ourselves! Have those expectations been realized?
4 No. 5 What has been the cause? 6 Did our citizens lose
7 their perseverance and magnanimity? No. Did they become
8 insensible of resentment and indignation at any high-handed attempt that might have been made to injure or enslave them?
9 No. 10 What then has been the cause? 11 The truth is, we dreaded danger only on one side: this we manfully repelled. But on another side, danger, not less formidable, but more
12 insidious, stole in upon us; and our unsuspicious tempers were not sufficiently attentive either to its approach or to its operations.
13 Those, whom foreign strength could not overpower, have well nigh become the victims of internal anarchy.

14 If we become a little more particular, we shall find that the foregoing representation is by no means exaggerated. When
15 we had baffled all the menaces of foreign power, we neglected to establish among ourselves a government that could
16 ensure domestic vigor and stability. What was the conse-
17 quence? The commencement of peace was the commencement of every disgrace and distress that could befall a people in a peaceful state. Devoid of national power, we could
18 not prohibit the extravagance of our importations, nor could we derive a revenue from their excess. Devoid of national im-
19 portance, we could not procure for our exports a tolerable sale at foreign markets. Devoid of national credit, we saw our

20 securities melt in the hands of the holders, like snow before the sun. Devoid of national dignity, we could not, in some in-
21 stances, perform our treaties on our part; and, in other instances, we could neither obtain nor compel the performance of them on
22 the part of others. Devoid of national energy, we could not carry into execution our own resolutions, decisions, or laws.
23 Shall I become more particular still? 24 The tedious detail would disgust me; nor is it now necessary. *Wilson.*

Sentences 4*th*, 7*th*, 9*th*.—*No* may be treated either as a simple decl. sentence, or a compound decl. double compact, with the third proposition understood, thus: No, but the reverse. If treated as a simp. decl., it will be delivered with perfect close; but if as a double compact, with circumflex, just as if the third proposition was expressed.

Sentences 19–22.—Each of these is a single compact of the third form; or the whole may be treated as a comp. decl. perf. loose: perhaps it should be.

SEC. XIV. THE ADVOCATES OF CHARLES I. PROPERLY CHASTISED.

The advocates of Charles, like the advocates of other male-
1 factors, against whom overwhelming evidence is produced, generally decline all controversy about the facts, and content them-
2 selves with calling testimony to character. He had so many private virtues! and had James II. no private virtues? was even Oliver Cromwell, his bitterest enemies themselves being judges,
3 destitute of private virtues? And what, after all, are the virtues ascribed to Charles? A religious zeal, not more sincere
4 than that of his son, and fully as weak and narrow-minded, and a few of the ordinary household decencies, which half the tomb-
5 stones in England claim for those who lie beneath them. A
6 good father! a good husband! Ample apologies, indeed, for fifteen years of persecution, tyranny, and falsehood!
7 We charge him with having broken his coronation-oath, and we are told that he kept his marriage-vow! We accuse him of
8 having given up his people to the merciless inflictions of the most hot-headed and hard-hearted of prelates, and the defence is, that he took his little son on his knee and kissed him! We censure
9 him for having violated the articles of the Petition of Right, after having, for good and valuable considerations, promised to observe them, and we are informed that he was accustomed to hear prayers at six o'clock in the morning! It is to such con-
10 siderations as these, together with his Vandyke dress, his handsome face, and his peaked beard, that he owes, we verily believe, most of his popularity with the present generation.

For ourselves, we own that we do not understand the common
11 phrase, "a good man, but a bad king;" we can as easily conceive a good man and an unnatural father; or a good man and a treacherous friend. We cannot, in estimating the character of

12 an individual, leave out of our consideration his conduct in the most important of all human relations; and if, in that relation, we find him to have been selfish, cruel, and deceitful, we shall take the liberty to call him a bad man, in spite of all his temperance at table, and all his regularity at chapel. *Macaulay.*

Sentence 2d.—A semi-interrog., with a perf. loose def. interrog. in one part, and a fragmentary compound close decl. excl. in the other. The complement of the latter supplied, it would probably read thus: "It is said that he had," &c. *Sentences 7th, 8th and 9th*, are respectively single compact declar. exclam., of the third form, third var. "If we charge, &c., *then*," &c., "If we accuse, &c., *then* the defence," &c. "If we censure &c., *then* we are informed," &c. *Sentence 11th.*—A double compact decl., with the first and second proposition expressed: i. e., the negative and the reason for it.

SEC. XV. IF GOD BE FOR YOU, FEAR NOTHING.

1 What shall we then say to these things? 2 If God be for us,
3 who can be against us? He that spared not his own son,—how!
4 shall he not with him, also freely give us all things! Who shall
5 lay any thing to the charge of God's elect? God that justifieth!
6 Who is he that condemneth? Christ that died, yea rather, that
7 is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God: who also
8 maketh intercession for us! Who shall separate us from the
9 love of Christ? Tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword, as it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long: we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter! Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors, through him that loved us; for I am persuaded
10 that neither death, nor life; nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers; nor things present, nor things to come; nor height, nor depth; nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

Sentence 3d.—This sentence began with the design of being a comp. close declarative; but the author at *son* breaks that construction and converts the remainder into a definite interrog. excl. *Sentences 5th, 7th, 9th*, are fragmentary definite interrog. excl. *Sentence 10th.*—*Nay* is here equivalent to "these shall not separate us, &c.": *for* making it, with the continuation, the first and second proposition of a double compact declarative.

SEC. XVI. IMPORTANT RESULTS FROM THE SUFFERINGS OF THE PILGRIMS.

From the dark portals of the star-chamber, and in the stern
1 text of the acts of uniformity, the pilgrims received a commission more efficient than any that ever bore the royal seal. Their banishment to Holland was fortunate: the decline of their little company in the strange land was fortunate: the difficulties
2 which they experienced in getting the royal consent to banish themselves to this wilderness were fortunate: all the tears and heart-breakings of that memorable parting at Delfthaven, had

the happiest influence on the rising destinies of New England. These rough touches of fortune brushed off the light, uncertain, selfish spirits: they made it a grave, solemn, self-denying expedition, and required of those who engaged in it to be so too:
3 they cast a broad shadow of thought and seriousness over the cause; and if this sometimes deepened into melancholy and bitterness, can we find no apology for such a human weakness?

Their trials of wandering and exile, of the ocean, the winter,
4 the wilderness and the savage foe, were the final assurances of success. It was these that put far away from our fathers'
5 cause, all patrician softness: all hereditary claims to pre-eminence. No effeminate nobility crowded into the dark and austere ranks of the pilgrims; no Carr nor Villiers would lead on the ill-provided band of the despised Puritans; no well-endowed clergy were on the alert to quit their cathedrals, and set up a pompous hierarchy in the frozen wilderness; no
6 craving governors were anxious to be sent over to our cheerless El Dorados of ice and of snow; no; they could not say they had encouraged, patronized, or helped the pilgrims; their own cares, their own labors, their own counsels, their own blood contrived all, achieved all, bore all, sealed all. They could not afterwards fairly pretend to reap where they had not strewn; and as our fathers reared this broad and solid fabric with pains
7 and watchfulness, unaided, barely tolerated, it did not fall when the favor, which had always been withholden, was changed into wrath: when the arm which had never supported, was raised to destroy.

Methinks I see it now: that one solitary, adventurous vessel,
8 the Mayflower of a forlorn hope, freighted with the prospects of a future state, and bound across the unknown sea. I behold it
9 pursuing, with a thousand misgivings, the uncertain, tedious voyage. Suns rise and set, and weeks and months pass, and
10 winter surprises them on the deep, but brings them not the sight of the wished-for shore. I see them now, scantily supplied with provisions, crowded almost to suffocation in their
11 ill-stored prison, delayed by calms, pursuing a circuitous route; and now driven in fury, before the raging tempest, on the high and giddy waves. The awful voice of the storm howls through the rigging: the laboring masts seem straining from their base:
12 the dismal sound of the pumps is heard: the ship leaps, as it were, madly from billow to billow: the ocean breaks and settles with ingulfing floods over the floating deck, and beats with deadening, shivering weight, against the staggered vessel. I see them, escaped from these perils, pursuing their all but des-

perate undertaking, and landed at last, after a five months' pas-
13 sage, on the ice-clad rocks of Plymouth: weak and weary from the voyage, poorly armed, scantily provisioned: depending on the charity of their ship-master for a draught of beer on board; drinking nothing but water on shore, without shelter, without means, surrounded by hostile tribes.

Shut now the volume of history, and tell me, on any princi-
14 ple of human probability, what shall be the fate of this handful of adventurers. Tell me, man of military science! in how
15 many months were they all swept off by the thirty savage tribes, enumerated within the early limits of New England? Tell me, politician! how long did the shadow of a colony, on
16 which your conventions and treaties had not smiled, languish on the distant coast? Student of history! compare for me the
17 baffled projects, the deserted settlements, the abandoned adventures of other times, and find the parallel of this. Was it the winter's storm, beating upon the houseless heads of women and children, was it hard labor and spare meals, was it disease, was it the tomahawk, was it the deep malady of a blighted hope, a
18 ruined enterprise and a broken heart, aching in its last moments at the recollection of the loved and left, beyond the sea, was it some, or all of these united, that hurried this forsaken company to their melancholy fate? And is it possible that neither of these causes, that not all combined, were able to blast this bud of hope? is it possible, that from a beginning so feeble, so frail,
19 so worthy, not so much of admiration as of pity, there has gone forth a progress so steady, a growth so wonderful, an expansion so ample, a reality so important, a promise, yet to be fulfilled, so glorious? *Everett.*

Sentence 6*th.*—A compound declarative double compact, with the first proposition, consisting of a series of members, and the third, comprising a compound declarative perfect loose. *No* is here somewhat singular in having its equivalent in the member which follows, while it is itself the equivalent of all that precede. (*See Classif., Double Compact*, 7, *General Note, and Rule VIII.* 3.) *Sentence* 13*th.*—The third member should be treated as a single compact, third form, and of course delivered with the bend at *board. Sentences* 15*th*, 16*th.*—Semi-interrogative. The two parts of each relatively form a loose sentence. *Sentence* 18*th.*—Observe the delivery of the successive members in the first part of this interrogative. (*See Rule X.*)

SEC. XVII. SORROW FOR THE DEAD.

1 Sorrow for the dead is the only sorrow from which we refuse to be divorced. Every other wound we seek to heal; every
2 other affliction to forget; but this wound we consider it a duty to keep open: this affliction we cherish and brood over in solitude. Where is the mother that would willingly forget the infant that perished like a blossom from her arms, though every recollection is a pang? where is the child that would willingly

forget the most tender of parents, though to remember be but
3 to lament? who, even in the hour of agony, would forget the friend over whom he mourns? who, even when the tomb is closing upon the remains of her he most loved, when he feels his heart, as it were, crushed in the closing of its portal, would accept consolation that was to be bought by forgetfulness?
4 No; the love which survives the tomb is one of the noblest attributes of the soul. If it has its woes, it has likewise its de-
lights; and when the overwhelming burst of grief is calmed
5 into the gentle tear of recollection, when the sudden anguish and the convulsive agony over the present ruins of all that we most loved, is softened away into pensive meditation on all that it was in the days of its loveliness, who would root out such a sorrow from the heart? Though it may sometimes throw a
6 passing cloud even over the bright hour of gayety, or spread a deeper sadness over the hour of gloom, yet who would exchange it even for the song of pleasure, or the burst of revelry? No;
7 there is a voice from the tomb sweeter than song: there is a recollection of the dead to which we turn even from the charms
8 of the living. Oh, the grave! the grave! 9 It buries every error: covers every defect: extinguishes every resentment.
10 From its peaceful bosom spring none but fond regrets and tender recollections. Who can look down upon the grave even
11 of an enemy, and not feel a compunctious throb, that ever he should have warred with the poor handful of earth that lies mouldering before him!

12 But the grave of those we loved—what a place for meditation! There it is that we call up in long review the whole history of virtue and gentleness, and the thousand endearments lavished upon us almost unheeded in the daily intercourse of intimacy: there it is that we dwell upon the tenderness, the solemn, awful tenderness of the parting scene; the bed of death,
13 with all its stifled griefs; its noiseless attendance; its mute, watchful assiduities; the last testimonies of expiring love; the feeble, fluttering, thrilling, (Oh! how thrilling!) pressure of the hand; the last fond look of the glazing eye, turning upon us even from the threshold of existence; the faint, faltering accents struggling in death to give one more assurance of affection!

14 Aye, go to the grave of buried love, and meditate! There
15 settle the account with thy conscience for every past benefit unrequited, every past endearment unregarded, of that being, who can never, never, never return to be soothed by thy contrition!

If thou art a child, and hast ever added a sorrow to the soul, or a furrow to the silvered brow of an affectionate parent; if

thou art a husband, and hast ever caused the fond bosom that ventured its whole happiness in thy arms, to doubt one moment of thy kindness or thy truth; if thou art a friend, and hast ever wronged, in thought, word, or deed, the spirit that generously confided in thee; if thou art a lover, and hast ever given
16 one unmerited pang to that true heart that now lies cold and still beneath thy feet; then be sure that every unkind look, every ungracious word, every ungentle action, will come thronging back upon thy memory, and knocking dolefully at thy soul: then be sure that thou wilt lie down sorrowing and repentant on the grave, and utter the unheard groan, and pour the unavailing tear: more deep, more bitter, because unheard and unavailing.

Then weave thy chaplet of flowers, and strew the beauties of nature about the grave; console thy broken spirit, if thou canst,
17 with these tender, yet futile tributes of regret; but take warning by the bitterness of this thy contrite affliction over the dead, and be more faithful and affectionate in the discharge of thy duties to the living. *Irving.*

Sentence 8th.—Compound fragmentary perf. loose indef. interrog. exclam.: Oh! what a place is the grave! what a place is the grave!

SEC. XVIII. A POLITICAL PAUSE.

1 "But we must pause!" says the honorable gentleman. What!
2 must the bowels of Great Britain be torn out, her best blood spilt, her treasure wasted, that you may make an experiment?
3 Put yourselves, oh! that you would put yourselves, on the field of battle, and learn to judge of the sort of horrors that you excite. In former wars, a man might, at least, have some feeling, some interest, that served to balance in his mind the
4 impressions which a scene of carnage and of death must inflict; but if a man were present now at the field of slaughter, and were to inquire for what they were fighting, "Fighting!" would be the answer; "they are not fighting; they are pausing."
5 Why is that man expiring? why is that other writhing with agony? what means this implacable fury? The answer must
6 be, "You are quite wrong, sir: you deceive yourself: they are not fighting; do not disturb them; they are merely pausing!
7 This man is not expiring with agony; that man is not dead; he is only pausing! Lord help you, sir: they are not angry with
8 one another; they have now no cause of quarrel; but their country thinks there should be a pause! All that you see, sir,
9 is nothing like fighting; there is no harm, nor cruelty, nor

bloodshed in it, whatever; it is nothing more than a political pause! It is merely to try an experiment, to see whether
10 Bonaparte will not behave himself better than heretofore; and in the mean time we have agreed to a pause, in pure friendship!"

11 And is this the way, sir, that you are to show yourselves the advocates of order? You take up a system calculated to uncivilize the world, to destroy order, to trample on religion, to
12 stifle in the heart, not merely the generosity of noble sentiment, but the affections of social life; and in the prosecution of this system, you spread terror and devastation all around you.

Fox.

The double compacts in this piece deserve particular attention. The twelfth sentence is a single compact declarative, third form.

SEC. XIX. A PART OF EMMETT'S DEFENCE.

1 I am charged with being an emissary of France! 2 An emis-
3 sary of France! And for what end? 4 It is alleged that I
5 wished to sell the independence of my country! And for what
6 end? Was this the object of my ambition? and is this the mode by which a tribunal of justice reconciles contradictions?
7 No; I am no emissary; and my ambition was to hold a place among the deliverers of my country: not in power, nor in profit,
8 but in the glory of the achievement! Sell my country's inde-
9 pendence to France! And for what? 10 Was it for a change of
11 masters? No, but for ambition! O, my country, was it personal
12 ambition that could influence me? had it been the soul of my actions, could I not by my education and fortune, by the rank and consideration of my family, have placed myself among the
13 proudest of my oppressors? My country was my idol; to it I sacrificed every selfish, every endearing sentiment; and for it I now offer up my life.

14 O God!—No, my lord! I acted as an Irishman, determined on delivering my country from the yoke of a foreign and unrelent-
15 ing tyranny, and from the more galling yoke of a domestic faction, which is its joint partner and perpetrator in the parricide, for the ignominy of existing with an exterior of splendor
16 and of conscious depravity. It was the wish of my heart to extricate my country from this doubly-riveted despotism: I wished to place her independence beyond the reach of any power on earth: I wished to exalt her to that proud station in the world.—*Emmett.*

Sentence 2d.—A fragmentary simple decl. exclam., like the preceding, but delivered with increased surprise and contempt: it may be treated as a def. interrog. excl. and delivered with

the rising slide: in this case, however, surprise will be the emotion expressed: not contempt; which I think was the one felt. *Sent. 8th.*—A simple def. interrog. exclam. *Sent. 14th.*—This begins with a compellative as if a prayer was intended, but breaks off, and proceeds with a double compact.

SEC. XX. THE DEATH OF ALTAMONT.

1 The sad evening before the death of this noble youth, I was
2 with him. No one was there but his physician, and an intimate
3 friend, whom he loved and whom he had ruined. At my com-
4 ing in, he said, You and the physician are come too late. I
5 have neither life nor hope. You both aim at miracles: you
would raise the dead.

6 Heaven, I said, is merciful —

7 Or I could not have been thus guilty. 8 What has it done
9 to bless and to save me! I have been too strong for Omnipo-
10 tence! I plucked down ruin!

11 I said, the blessed Redeemer —

12 Hold! hold! you wound me! 13 This is the rock on which
I split: I denied his name.

14 Refusing to hear any thing from me, or take any thing from
the physician, he lay silent, as far as sudden darts of pain would
15 permit, till the clock struck. Then with vehemence—Oh, time!
time! it is fit thou shouldst thus strike thy murderer to the
16 heart. How art thou fled forever! 17 A month! 18 Oh, for
19 a single week! I ask not for years, though an age were too
little for the much I have to do.

20 On my saying, we could not do too much; that heaven was
a blessed place—

21 So much the worse. 22 'Tis lost! 'tis lost!—23 Heaven
is to me the severest part of hell!

24 Soon after, I proposed prayer.

25 Pray you that can. 26 I never prayed. 27 I cannot pray,
28 nor need I. Is not heaven on my side already? 29 It closes
with my conscience: its severest strokes but second my own.

His friend being much touched, even to tears, at this, (who
30 could forbear? I could not,) with a most affectionate look, he
31 said, Keep those tears for thyself. I have undone thee.
32 Dost weep for me? 33 That's cruel. 34 What can pain me
more?

35 Here his friend, too much affected, would have left him.

36 No; stay. 37 *Thou* still mayest hope, therefore hear me.
38 How madly have I talked! how madly hast thou listened and
39 believed! But look on my present state, as a full answer to
thee and to myself. This body is all weakness and pain, but my
40 soul, as if strung up by torment to greater strength and spirit,

is full powerful to reason: full mighty to suffer. And that which thus triumphs within the jaws of mortality, is doubtless
41 immortal; and as for a Deity, nothing less than an Almighty could inflict what I feel.

I was about to congratulate this passive, involuntary confes-
42 sor, on his asserting the two prime articles of his creed, extorted by the rack of nature, when he thus very passionately: No; no! let me speak on; I have not long to speak.—My much-
43 injured friend! my soul, as my body, lies in ruins; in scattered fragments of thought: remorse for the past, throws my thoughts
44 on the future. Worse dread of the future, strikes it back on
45 the past. I turn and turn, and find no ray. Didst thou feel
46 half the mountain that is on me, thou wouldst struggle with the martyr for his stake, and bless heaven for the flame: that is not an everlasting flame: that is not an unquenchable fire.

47 How were wé struck! 48 Yet, soon after, still more. With
49 what an eye of distraction, what a face of despair, he cried out, My principles have poisoned my friend; my extravagance has beggared my boy; my unkindness has murdered my wife!—
50 And is there another hell? Oh! thou blasphemed, yet most
51 indulgent, Lord God! hell itself is a refuge, if it hide me from thy frown!

52 Soon after, his understanding failed. His terrified imagina-
53 tion uttered horrors not to be repeated, or ever forgot; and ere the sun rose, the gay, young, noble, ingenious, accomplished, and most wretched Altamont expired. *Young.*

Sentence 6*th*, 7*th*.—They make together a single compact, of the second form.
Sentence 17*th*, 18*th*.—Fragmentary simple indefinite interrogative exclamatory. "What would I not give for," or "how I wish for," understood before each. *Sent.* 36*th*.—Double compact declarative: "Go not, but stay." *Sent.* 37*th*.—Single compact declarative, second form: correlative words, *because—therefore*. *Sent.* 42*d*.—"No, no, but let," &c.; that is, "do not interrupt me, do not interrupt me, but," &c. The sentence is broken off at *speak*, but the continuation, "*for* or *because* my moments are numbered," is obvious. *Sent.* 51*st*.—The compound compellative here has, it will be observed, a single compact construction, "though thou blasphemed, yet most," &c.: the sentence which follows is a single compact of the second form.

SEC. XXI. THE DEATH OF HAMILTON.

1 "How are the mighty fallen!" 2 And, regardless as we are of vulgar deaths, shall not the fall of the mighty affect us?

3 A short time since, and he, who is the occasion of our sor-
4 rows, was the ornament of his country. He stood on an emi-
5 nence, and glory covered him. From that eminence he has
6 fallen: suddenly, forever, fallen. His intercourse with the living world is now ended; and those who would hereafter find him, must seek him in the grave. There, cold and lifeless, is the heart which just now was the seat of friendship; there,

7 dim and sightless is the eye, whose radiant and enlivening orb beamed with intelligence; and there, closed forever, are those lips, on whose persuasive accents we have so often, and so lately hung with transport! From the darkness which rests upon his
8 tomb, there proceeds, methinks, a light in which it is clearly seen, that those gaudy objects, which men pursue, are only
9 phantoms. In this light how dimly shines the splendor of victory: how humble appears the majesty of grandeur! The
10 bubble, which seemed to have so much solidity, has burst; and we again see, that all below the sun is vanity.

True, the funeral eulogy has been pronounced, the sad and solemn procession has moved, the badge of mourning has al-
11 ready been decreed, and presently the sculptured marble will lift up its front, proud to perpetuate the name of Hamilton, and rehearse to the passing traveller his virtues; (just tributes of respect, and to the living useful;) but to him, mouldering in
12 his narrow and humble habitation, what are they? How vain! how unavailing!

13 Approach, and behold, while I lift from his sepulchre its
14 covering! Ye admirers of his greatness! ye emulous of his
15 talents and his fame, approach and behold him now. How
16 pale! how silent! No martial bands admire the adroitness of his movements; no fascinating throng weep, and melt, and
17 tremble at his eloquence! Amazing change! A shroud! a
18 coffin! a narrow, subterraneous cabin!—this is all that now remains of Hamilton! and is this all that remains of Hamilton?
19 During a life so transitory, what lasting monument, then, can our fondest hopes erect!

20 My brethren! we stand on the borders of an awful gulf, which is swallowing up all things human; and is there, amidst this universal wreck, nothing stable, nothing abiding, nothing
21 immortal, on which poor, frail, dying man can fasten? Ask the hero, ask the statesman, whose wisdom you have been
22 accustomed to revere, and he will tell you. He will tell you, did I say? He has already told you, from his death-bed; and his illumined spirit, still whispers from the heavens, with well-
23 known eloquence, the solemn admonition: "Mortals hastening to the tomb, and once the companions of my pilgrimage, take warning and avoid my errors; cultivate the virtues I have recommended; choose the Saviour I have chosen; live disinterestedly; live for immortality; and would you rescue any thing from final dissolution, lay it up in God."—*President Nott.*

Sentence 2d.—A semi-interrogative: the parts connected compactly: *though—yet*, the correlative words.

Sentence 3d.—A single compact, third form. "*When* a short time since was, *then*."

Sentence 11th.—A single compact, second form, correlative words, *indeed—but*, in the first

part; in the second, simple indefinite interrogative: the whole a semi-interrogative: the parts connested closely. *Sentence* 16*th.*—A double compact exclamatory with the first proposition, comprising two members, only expressed. *Sentence* 17*th.*—A fragmentary simple declarative exclamatory. *Sentence* 18*th.*—A broken close declarative exclamatory. *Sentence* 21*st.*—A compound declarative single compact, third form: correlative words, *if—then.*

SEC. XXII. BURNING OF THE FAME, AND ESCAPE OF THE PASSENGERS.

We embarked on the 2d inst. and sailed at daylight for England, from the East Indies, with every prospect of a quick and prosperous passage. The ship was every thing we could wish; and, having closed my charge here, much to my satisfaction, it was one of the happiest days of my life. We were, perhaps, *too* happy; for in the evening came a sad reverse. Sophia had just gone to bed, and I had thrown off half my clothes, when a cry of Fire!—Fire!—roused us from our calm content; and in five minutes the whole ship was in flames! I ran to examine whence the flames principally issued, and found that the fire had its origin immediately under our cabin.—Down with the boats! —Where is Sophia?—8 Here.—9 The children?—10 Here.—11 A rope to the side!—12 Lower Lady Raffles.—13 Give her to 14 me, says one.—I'll take her, says the captain.—15 Throw the 16 gunpowder overboard.—It cannot be got at: it is in the maga- 17 zine, close to the fire.—Stand clear of the powder. 18 Scuttle 19 the water-cask.—Water! water!—20 Where's Sir Stamford? 21 Come into the boat: Nilson! Nilson! come into the boat.— 22 Push off! push off! 23 Stand clear of the after part of the ship.

All this passed much quicker than I can write it. We pushed 25 off; and as we did so, the flames burst out of our cabin windows, and the whole after part of the ship was in flames.

SEC. XXIII. OUR WISHES HELP TO DECEIVE US.

Baltimore. What were you laughing at?

Peter. Only, sir, at Squire Freeman, (he: he: he!) who 2 was riding up the back lane, a little while ago, on his new cropeared hunter, as fast as he could canter, with all the skirts of his coat flapping about him, for all the world like a clucking hen upon a sow's back—He: he: he!—

3 *Balt.* Thou art pleasant, Peter; and what then?

Pet. When just turning the corner, your honor, as it might 4 be so, my mother's brown calf (bless its snout! I shall love it for it, as long as I live) set its face through the hedge, and said "Mow!"

5 *Balt.* And he fell: did he?

Pet. O Lord, yes, your honor! into a good soft bed of all the rotten garbage of the village.

Balt. And you saw this: did you?

Pet. O yes, your honor! as plain as the nose on my face.

Balt. Ha: ha: ha: ha: ha! and you really saw it?

David. (*Aside.*) I wonder my master can demean himself so as to listen to that knave's tales; I'm sure he was proud enough once.

Balt. (*Still laughing.*) You really saw it?

Pet. Ay, your honor! and many more than me saw it.

Balt. And there were a number of people to look at him too?

Pet. Oh! your honor! all the rag-tag of the parish were grinning at him.

Balt. Ha: ha: ha: ha: ha! this is excellent! ha: ha: ha! He would shake himself but ruefully before them? (*Still laughing violently.*)

Pet. Ay, sir: he shook the wet straws and the withered turnip-tops from his back. It would have done your heart good to have seen him.

Dav. Nay, you know well enough, you do, that there is nothing but a bank of dry sand in that corner. (*Indignantly to Peter.*)

Balt. (*Impatiently to David.*) Poo! silly fellow! it is the dirtiest nook in the village.—And he rose and shook himself: ha: ha: ha! I did not know that thou wert such a humorous fellow, Peter: here is money for thee to drink the brown calf's health.

Pet. Ay, your honor! for certain he shall have a noggen.

Dav. (*Aside.*) To think now that he should demean himself so!

Joanna Baillie.

Sent. 10*th.*—Sing. compact: *therefore—for:* the second part begins another, of which, one part only is expressed. *Sent.* 19*th.*—*Therefore* nay, (it would not have done his heart good,) *for* you know, &c. Double compact: the second part begins another sentence which remains unfinished.

Sent. 24.—Fragmentary declarative close exclamatory sentence, with something like "is painful" understood at the end.

SEC. XXIV. A CURTAIN LECTURE OF MRS. CAUDLE.

Bah! that's the third umbrella gone since Christmas. What were you to do! Why, let him go home in the rain, to be sure. I'm very certain there was nothing about him that could spoil. —Take cold, indeed! He doesn't look like one of the sort to take cold. Besides, he'd have better taken cold than taken our umbrella.—Do you hear the rain, Mr. Caudle? I say, do you hear the rain? And as I'm alive, if it isn't St. Swithin's day!

11 Do you hear it against the windows? 12 Nonsense: you don't
impose upon me; you can't be asleep with such a shower as
13 that! Do you hear it, I say? 14 Oh! you *do* hear it!—
15 Well, that's a pretty flood, I think, to last for six weeks; and no
16 stirring all the time out of the house. Pooh! don't think me a
17 fool, Mr. Caudle; dont insult me; *he* return the umbrella! Any-
18 body would think you were born yesterday. As if anybody
19 ever did return an umbrella! There: do you hear it? 20 Worse
21 and worse. Cats and *dogs*, and for six weeks: always six
weeks; and no umbrella!

22 I should like to know how the children are to go to school
23 to-morrow. They shan't go through such weather; I am de-
24 termined. No; they shall stop at home and never learn any
thing, (the blessed creatures!) sooner than go and get wet! And
25 when they grow up, I wonder who they'll have to thank for know-
26 ing nothing: who, indeed, but their father. People who can't
feel for their own children ought never to be fathers.

27 But I know why you lent the umbrella: oh! yes, I know very
28 well. I was going out to tea at dear mother's to-morrow: you
29 knew that, and you did it on purpose. Don't tell me; you hate
me to go there, and take every mean advantage to hinder me.
30 But don't you think it, Mr. Caudle; no, sir; if it comes down in
31 buckets full, I'll go all the more. No; and I won't have a cab!

32 Where do you think the money's to come from? 33 You've got
34 nice high notions at that club of yours? A cab, indeed!
35 Cost me sixteen-pence, at least: sixteen-pence! two-and-eight-
36 pence; for there's back again. Cabs, indeed! I should like
37 to know who's to pay for 'em; for I'm sure you can't, if you
go on as you do, throwing away your property, and beggaring
your children, buying umbrellas!

38 Do you hear the rain, Mr. Caudle? 39 I say, do you hear
40 it? But I don't care—I'll go to mother's to-morrow—I will;
and what's more I'll walk every step of the way; and you know
41 that will give me my death. Don't call me a foolish woman;
42 it's you that's the foolish man. You know I can't wear clogs;
and with no umbrella, the wet's sure to give me a cold: it al-
43 ways does: but what do you care for that? Nothing at all.
44 I may be laid up for what you care, as I dare say I shall; and
45 a pretty doctor's bill there'll be. I hope there will. 46 It will
47 teach you to lend your umbrellas again. I shouldn't wonder if
I caught my death: yes, and that's what you lent the umbrella
48 for. Of course!

49 Nice clothes I'll get, too, trapesing through weather like this.
50 My gown and bonnet will be spoiled quite. 51 Needn't I wear
52 'em then? Indeed, Mr. Caudle, I *shall* wear 'em. 53 No, sir;

I'm not going out a dowdy to please you or anybody else.
54 Gracious knows! it isn't often that I step over the threshold;—
indeed, I might as well be a slave at once: better, I should say;
but when I do go out, Mr. Caudle, I choose to go as a lady.
55 Oh! that rain—if it isn't enough to break in the windows.
56 Ugh! I look forward with dread for to-morrow! 57 How I
am to go to mother's, I'm sure I can't tell, but if I die, I'll do
58 it.—No, sir; I won't borrow an umbrella: no; and you shan't
59 *buy* one. (*With great emphasis.*) Mr. Caudle, if you bring home
another umbrella, I'll throw it in the street.
60 Ha! And it was only last week I had a new nozzle put to
61 that umbrella. I'm sure if I'd have known as much as I do
62 now, it might have gone without one. Paying for new nozzles
63 for other people to laugh at you! Oh! it's all very well for
64 you; you can go to sleep. You've no thought for your poor
patient wife, and your own dear children; you think of nothing
but lending umbrellas!
65 Men, indeed!—call themselves lords of creation! pretty lords,
when they can't even take care of an umbrella!
I know that walk to-morrow will be the death of me, but
66 that's what you want: then you may go to your club, and do
as you like; and then nicely my poor dear children will be used;
67 but then, sir, then you'll be happy. Oh! don't tell me! I
know you will: else you'd never have lent the umbrella!
68 You have to go on Thursday about that summons; and, of
69 course, you can't go. No, indeed: you *don't* go without the
70 umbrella. You may lose the debt for what I care—it won't be
so much as spoiling your clothes—better lose it; people deserve
to lose debts who lend umbrellas!
71 And I should like to know how I'm to go to mother's with-
72 out the umbrella. Oh! don't tell me that I said I *would* go;
73 that's nothing to do with it: nothing at all. She'll think I'm
neglecting her; and the little money we're to have, we shan't
have at all:—because we've no umbrella.
The children, too!—(dear things!—) they'll be sopping wet;
74 for they shan't stay at home; they shan't lose their learning;
75 it's all their father will leave them, I'm sure.—But they *shall*
go to school. Don't tell me they shouldn't; (you are so aggra-
76 vating, Caudle, you'd spoil the temper of an angel;) they *shall*
go to school: mark that; and if they get their deaths of cold,
it's not my fault; I didn't lend the umbrella.
"Here," says Caudle, in his manuscript, "I fell asleep and
77 dreamed that the sky was turned into green calico, with whale-
bone ribs: that, in fact, the whole world revolved under a tre-
mendous umbrella!"

Sentence 2*d.*—Mr. Caudle is supposed to have asked here, "What he should have done." Mrs. C. repeats his words as if she had not heard distinctly; and of course her question takes the rising slide. (*See Rule III. Excep.*) *Sentence* 6*th.*—The first part of a decl. double compact: the second part understood: "but the reverse." *Sentence* 7*th.*—The first part of a single compact, itself compact. *Therefore—because*, the correlative words. "Because we shall want it ourselves" is probably the reason in the mind of the speaker. *Sent.* 9*th and* 13*th.*—These being repetitions of the def. interrog., take the downward slide. *Sentence* 12*th.*—"*Therefore* you don't, *because therefore* you can't [; *because* it makes too much noise."] *Sentence* 15*th.*—"As it is well that you hear, so that's a pretty flood, &c." *Sentence* 16*th.*—Mr. C. is supposed to have said the umbrella would be returned. A double compact declar. excl.: thus made out. "Don't think me fool enough to believe it; don't insult my understanding by calling on me to believe it; *for* he will *never* return the umbrella." The second proposition is virtually negative, though it has an affirmative form. *Sentence* 21*st.*—"It rains cats and dogs, and so it will rain for six weeks;" that is, "as it rains, so it will rain, &c." *Sentence* 23*d.*—A double compact, with the first and second proposition expressed: "They shall not, &c., for on that I'm determined." *Sentence* 24*th.*—They shall not, &c., *but* they shall, &c. *Sentence* 25*th.*—*Who* ungrammatically used for *whom*. Compound decl. imperf. loose. *Sentence* 29*th.*—Very much abbreviated. "Dont tell me that, for it is not true: you hate, &c." *Sentence* 30*th.*—"But don't you think it; no, sir; *for* if it, &c." *Sentence* 31*st.*—"Not only *so, indeed, but* I wont have a *cab!*" *Sentence* 33*d.*—An indirect interrogative, first kind. *Sentence* 37*th.*—Indirect semi-interrogative exclam. *Sentence* 40*th.*—Extremely abbreviated and fragmentary again. "But yet I don't care; [if it does rain:] yet I will go, &c., [if it does rain:] yet I will, [if it does rain; &c."] *Sentence* 41*st.*—"*Therefore* don't *because* it's you, &c." *Sentence* 42*d.*—The first part of this semi-interrog. is a fragment. double compact, with the first proposition only *expressed:* the second, or the reason for the first being understood. *Sentence* 72*d.*—"*Therefore* don't, *for* that's, &c."

SEC. XXV. DISHONORABLE MEANS TO SUCCESS, NEVER TO BE EMPLOYED.

1 *Free.* How now, Jenkinson? 2 Things go on prosperously, I hope?

3 *Jen.* Sir, I am concerned—or, indeed, sorry—that is to say, I wish I could have the satisfaction to say that they do.

4 *Free.* What say you? 5 Sorry and satisfied? You are a 6 smooth spoken man, Mr. Jenkinson; but tell me the worst at 7 once. I thought I had been pretty sure of it, as the poll stood this morning?

8 *Jen.* It would have given me great pleasure, sir, to have confirmed that opinion; but unfortunately for you, and unpleasantly for myself—

9 *Free.* Tut; tut! 10 Speak faster, man! 11 What is it?

Jen. An old gentleman from Ensford, who formerly received favors from Mrs. Baltimore's father, has come many a 12 mile across the country, out of pure good-will, to vote for him, with ten or twelve distant voters at his heels; and this, I am free to confess, is a thing that was never taken into our calculation.

13 *Free.* That was very wrong, though; we should have taken 14 every thing into our calculation. Shall I lose it, think you? 15 I would rather lose ten thousand pounds.

16 *Jen.* A smaller sum than that, I am almost sure—that is to say, I think I may have the boldness to promise, would secure it to you.

17 *Free.* How so?

18 *Jen.* Mr. Baltimore, you know, has many unpleasant claims upon him.

19 *Free.* Debts, you mean; but what of that?

Jen. Only that I can venture to assure you, many of his 20 creditors would have the greatest pleasure in life in obliging me; and when you have bought up their claims, it will be a very simple matter just to have him laid fast for a little while. 21 The disgrace of that situation will effectually prevent the last 22 days of the poll from preponderating in his favor. It is the easiest thing in the world.

23 *Free.* Is that your scheme? 24 O fie: fie! 25 The rudest-tongued lout in the parish would have blushed to propose it. 26 Let me lose it then! 27 To be a member of Parliament, and 28 not an honest man!—O fie: fie: fie! *Joanna Baillie.*

Attention should be given in the delivery of this piece to the spontaneous exclams., and the indirect interrogatives. *Sent. 4th* is an example of the inversion of an indefinite interrog. slide. (*See Rule III.*) *Sent. 13th.*—*Yet* that, &c., *though* he had received favors, &c.

SEC. XXVI. NOTICE OF A MORTGAGE SALE.

1 Mortgage Sale. Mortgagors, Amos Ives, Anna his wife and Enos Ives; Mortgagee, Philo Gridley; Mortgage, dated April 1st, 1843, to secure the payment of $2,027 48, with in-
2 terest: recorded as against Amos and Enos Ives, in the Clerk's office of Oneida county on the 16th day of May, 1843, in Book No. 52 of Mortgages, at pages 88, 89 and 90: recorded as against Anna, wife of Amos aforesaid, in the Clerk's office aforesaid, on the 7th day of June, 1845, at two o'clock, P. M. Amount claimed to be due at the time of the first publication of
3 this notice, $2,027 48, and the interest thereon from the date of said mortgage. This mortgage is, however, a collateral security to another mortgage, dated October 30th, 1841, by said Amos and Anna Ives, to E. and A. L. Collins, and now held by
4 said Gridley; on which is due $4,699 52, and annual interest from April 1st, 1842; so that the sum, really to be raised on this mortgage, will be the amount of deficiency upon the sale of the premises mortgaged to said E. and A. L. Collins. Premises as described in said mortgage: "All those certain pieces of land, lying in New Hartford, Oneida county, and being parts of lot No. 34, in the 7th Grand Division of Cox's Patent: the first of said pieces, containing about ninety acres,
5 more or less, and bounded north by lands formerly owned by Oliver Collins, and now by Amos Ives; on the east by lands of E. B. Sherman, and also by lands of Abel Wilcox and Timothy Wilcox; on the south by the great western turnpike; and on

the west by land of Salmon Lusk. And the other piece, containing about thirty-five acres, is bounded on the north by lands
6 owned by Thomas Palmer, and by the Clinton road; east by lands of Lewis Sherrill, and south by Lewis Sherrill, and west by lands of Thomas Palmer." By virtue of a power of sale contained in said mortgage, the subscriber will sell the two
7 aforesaid mortgaged parcels of land, separately, on the 5th day of September next, at 2 o'clock, P. M., at the Hotel now kept
8 by N. Porter, in the town and village of New Hartford. Dated

June 9th, 1845. P. GRIDLEY, Mortgagee.
J. G. COYE, Att'y.

Sent. 1*st.*—Fragmentary simple declarative. "This is a notice of a mortgage sale." The subscribers' names are fragmentary compound: "P. Gridley, who is the mortgagee, is the, &c." "J. G. Coye, who is the attorney, is, &c."

SEC. XXVII. THE SHIPWRECK.

At half-past eight o'clock, hen-coops, spars,
1 And all things, for a chance, had been cast loose,
That still could keep afloat the struggling tars;
For yet they strove, although of no great use.
There was no light in heaven but a few stars:
2 The boats put off, o'ercrowded with their crews:
She gave a heel, and then a lurch to port,
And going down head-foremost—sunk, in short.

Then rose from sea to sky the wild farewell;
Then shrieked the timid, and stood still the brave;
Then some leaped overboard, with dreadful yell,
3 As eager to anticipate their grave;
And the sea yawned around her like a hell;
And down she sucked with her the whirling wave,
Like one who grapples with his enemy,
And strives to strangle him before he die.

And first a universal shriek there rushed,
Louder than the loud ocean, like a crash
Of echoing thunder; and then all was hushed,
4 Save the wild wind and the remorseless dash
Of billows; but at intervals there gushed,
Accompanied with a convulsive splash,
A solitary shriek: the bubbling cry
Of some strong swimmer in his agony. *Byron.*

Sent. 1*st.*—Decl. loose, with two parts: the second part single compact, 1st form. *Sent.* 2*d.*—Decl. loose with three parts: last part mixed: "and *when* going, *then*." *Sent.* 3*d.*—The same with five parts: the third, single compact: "so some, as eager," &c. *Sent.* 4*th.*—The same with three parts: the first has a mixture of single compact: *louder—than:* the second is close: the third, imperfect loose.

SEC. XXVIII. THE FALL OF THE OPPRESSOR A SOURCE OF CONSOLATION TO GOOD MEN.

Oh! how comely it is, and how reviving
To the spirits of just men, long oppressed,
When God, into the hands of their deliverer
Puts invincible might,
1 To quell the mighty of the earth: the oppressor:
The brute and boisterous force of violent men,
Hardy and industrious to support
Tyrannic power, but raging to pursue
The righteous, and all such as honor truth!
He all their ammunition
And feats of war defeats:
With plain heroic magnitude of mind,
And celestial vigor armed,
2 Their armories and magazines contemns:
Renders them useless; while
With winged expedition,
Swift as the lightning glance, he executes
His errand on the wicked; who, surprised,
Lose their defence, distracted and amazed. *Milton.*

Sentence 1*st.*—An indefinite interrogative single compact: correlative words *then—when.* The second part is imperfect loose, with three sub-parts; the last of which contains a compact conclusion: correlative words, *indeed—but.*

SEC. XXIX. THE POWER OF VERSE TO PERPETUATE.

'Tis not a pyramid of marble stone,
Though high as our ambition;
1 'Tis not a tomb cut out in brass, which can
Give life unto the ashes of a man;
But verses only: they shall fresh appear
Whilst there are men to read or hear.
When time shall make the lasting brass decay,
And eat the pyramid away;
2 Turning that monument wherein men trust
Their names, to what it keeps, poor dust;
Then shall the epitaph remain and be
New graven in eternity. *Cowley.*

Sentence 1*st.*—Double compact: 1st and 3d part expressed: the first part has two members: the first member single compact: *yet—though:* the second, close. The second part of the double comp. beginning with *but*, loose perf. *Sent.* 2*d.*—A single compact: *when—then.*

SEC. XXX. IMAGINATION THE RULING FACULTY OF THE LUNATIC, THE LOVER, AND THE POET.

1 The lunatic, the lover, and the poet
Are of imagination all compact.*
One sees more devils than vast hell can hold;
That is the madman: the lover, all as frantic,
Sees Helen's beauty in a brow of Egypt:
2 The poet's eye, in a fine phrensy rolling,
Doth glance from heaven to earth, from earth to heaven;
And, as imagination bodies forth
The forms of things unknown, the poet's pen
Turns them to shapes, and gives to airy nothing
A local habitation and a name. *Shakspeare.*

SEC. XXXI. THE LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

The breaking waves dashed high
On a stern and rock-bound coast;
And the woods, against a stormy sky,
Their giant branches tossed;
1 And the heavy night hung dark
The hills and waters o'er;
When a band of exiles moored their bark,
On the wild New-England shore.
Not as the conqueror comes,
They, the true-hearted came;
Not with the roll of the stirring drums,
And the trumpet that sings of fame;
2 Not as the flying come,
In silence and in fear;
They shook the depths of the desert's gloom,
With their hymns of lofty cheer.
3 Amidst the storm they sang;
And the stars heard and the sea!
And the sounding aisles of the dim woods rang
To the anthem of the free!
4 The ocean-eagle soared
From his nest by the white wave's foam;
And the rocking pine of the forest roared:—
This was their welcome home! *Hemans.*

***Sent.* 1*st*.—*Then* the breaking, &c., *when*. *Sent.* 2*d*.—Double compact.

---

* *I. e.* composed.

SEC. XXXII. BOLDNESS AND PERSEVERANCE IN THE CAUSE OF JUSTICE ONLY, COMMENDABLE.

Dare nobly then; but, conscious of your trust,
1 As ever warm and bold, be ever just;
Nor court applause in these degenerate days:
The villain's censure is extorted praise.
2 But chief, be steady in a noble end,
And show mankind that truth has yet a friend.
3 'Tis mean for empty praise of wit to write,
As foplings grin to show their teeth are white;
To brand a doubtful folly with a smile,
Or madly blaze unknown defects, is vile:
'Tis doubly vile, when, but to prove your art,
You fix an arrow in a blameless heart. *Pope.*

Sent. 3*d.*—*If* "'tis mean for empty praise, &c., *then* 'tis doubly mean, &c." I am not sure but that *indeed—but* would express the sense better.

SEC. XXXIII. THE CONSOLATION OF VIRTUE IN AFFLICTION.

Cyriac, this three years day, these eyes, though clear
To outward view, of blemish or of spot,
1 Bereft of light their seeing have forgot;
Nor to their idle orbs doth sight appear
Of sun, or moon, or star, (throughout the year,)
Or man, or woman. Yet I argue not
2 Against Heaven's hand or will, nor bate a jot
Of heart or hope; but still bear up and steer
3 Right onward. What supports me, dost thou ask?
The conscience, friend, to have lost them overplied
4 In liberty's defence: my noble task,
Of which all Europe rings from side to side.
5 This thought might lead me through the world's vain mask,
Content though blind, had I no better guide. *Milton.*

Sent. 2*d.*—*Not* equivalent to *neither:* whole sentence perfect loose. *Sent.* 3*d.*—A definite close interrogative transposed. *Sent.* 5*th.*—Single compact declarative, third form; correlative words, *yet—though:* "content though blind," a circumstance, which may be regarded as making the whole a mixed sentence.

SEC. XXXIV. MUSIC AND LOVE.

If music be the food of love, play on:
1 Give me excess of it; that, surfeiting,
The appetite may sicken, and so die.
That strain again: it had a dying fall:

2 O, it came o'er my ear, like the sweet south,
That breathes upon a bank of violets:
3 Stealing and giving odor.—Enough: no more;
'Tis not so sweet now as it was before.—

Shakspeare.

Sent. 3*d.*—*No more*, and what follows, form the first and second part of a double compact; but it is to be observed that the second part, is in turn the first part of another, of which the other parts are suppressed. "Play no more, for therefore it is not, &c." The delivery should correspond.

SEC. XXXV. THE LOVE OF NATURE.

1 The love of Nature, and the scenes she draws,
Is Nature's dictate. Strange! there should be found
Who, self-imprisoned in their proud saloons,
Renounce the odors of the open field
For the unscented fictions of the loom;
2 Who, satisfied with only pencilled scenes,
Prefer to the performance of a God
The inferior wonders of an artist's hand!
Lovely, indeed, the mimic works of art,
But Nature's works far lovelier. *Cowper.*

Sent. 2*d.*—A mixed sentence: as a whole comp. decl. single compact of the third form: correlative words, *therefore—because:* the first part fragmentary: *it is* being suppressed before *strange*, and *that* after it. *Therefore* it is strange that, &c.—*because* lovely indeed, &c. The second part is compact, of the first form, and has the correlative words *indeed—but*, instead of *though—yet*, which would be more accurate. The exclamation point after *strange*, represents the comma: after *hand*, the semicolon.

SEC. XXXVI. DEATH, A FRIEND OF THE GOOD.

1 I will teach the world
2 To thank thee. Who are thine accusers? 3 Who?
4 The living! they who never felt thy power,
And know thee not! The curses of the wretch
5 Whose crimes are rife, his sufferings, when thy hand
Is on him, and the hour he dreads is come,
Are writ among thy praises. But the good:
6 Does he, whom thy kind hand dismissed to peace,
Upbraid the gentle violence that took off
His fetters, and unbound his prison cell? *Bryant.*

Sent. 3*d.*—*Who* should be delivered with the rising slide. (*See Rule III. Exception.*) *Sent.* 4*th.*—A compound loose definite interrogative. *Sent.* 6*th.*—A semi-interrogative, with a perfect loose construction of the parts.

SEC. XXXVII. A SISTER'S INTERCESSION.

1 *Isab.* To-morrow! 2 O, that's sudden! 3 Spare him! spare
him!
4 He's not prepared for death! Even for our kitchens,
5 We kill the fowls of season; shall we serve Heaven,
With less respect than we do minister
6 To our gross selves? Good, good my lord, bethink you:
Who is it that hath died for this offence?—
7 There's many have committed it?
Ang. The law hath not been dead, though it hath slept:
8 Those many had not dared to do that evil,
If the first man that did the edict infringe,
Had answered for his deed. *Shakspeare.*

Sent. 1st.—Fragment. simp. def. interrog. excl. *Sent.* 3*d.*—Single compact, third form: *therefore—because* he's not. *Sent.* 5th.—"*If* even, *then* shall we, &c." *Sent.* 7*th.*—A compound close indirect interrogative. *Sent.* 8*th.*—"*Yet* the law, *though* it, &c." "*Then* those, *if* the, &c."

SEC. XXXVIII. WHAT CONSTITUTES A STATE.

1 What constitutes a State?
Not high-raised battlements or labored mound,
Thick wall or moated gate;
Not cities proud, with spires and turrets crowned;
Not bays and broad-arm ports,
Where, laughing at the storm, rich navies ride;
Not starred and spangled courts,
Where low-browed baseness wafts perfume to pride;
No; *men:* high-minded *men:*
2 With powers, as far above dull brutes endued
In forest, brake, or den,
As beasts excel cold rocks and brambles rude:
Men, who their duties know,
But know their rights; and, knowing, dare maintain:
Prevent the long-aimed blow,
And crush the tyrant, while they rend the chain.
These constitute a state;
3 And sovereign law, that state's collected will,
O'er thrones and globes elate
Sits empress: crowning good: repressing ill.
Smit by her sacred frown,
4 The fiend discretion* like a vapor sinks;

---

* Arbitrary power.

And e'en the all-dazzling crown
Hides his faint rays, and at her bidding shrinks.
5 Such was this heaven-loved isle:
Than Lesbos fairer, and the Cretan shore!
6 No more shall freedom smile?
Shall Britons languish and be men no more?
Since all must life resign,
7 Those sweet rewards which decorate the brave
'Tis folly to decline,
And steal inglorious to the silent grave.

Sir William Jones.

Sentence 1*st.*—A compound declarative double compact, with first and third proposition: the first having five members; and the second being perfect loose in four fragmentary parts; of which the fourth contains an imperfect loose. *No*, the fifth member of the first part, is the equivalent of the other four. (*See Rule VIII.* 3, *Classification*, *Double Compact*, *General Note*, *and Simp. Declarative*, *yes*, *no.*)

Sentence 4*th.*—A compound declarative single compact, third form: correlative words *when —then.*

Sentence 7*th.*—A compound declarative single compact, second form: correlative words *since—therefore.*

SEC. XXXIX. A STORY LOSES NOTHING IN ITS PROGRESS.

Two honest tradesmen meeting in the strand,
1 One took the other briskly by the hand:
"Hark ye," said he: "'tis an odd story this,
2 About the crows!"—"I don't know what it is,"
3 Replied his friend.—"No! 4 I'm surprised at that;
Where I come from, it is the common chat.
5 But you shall hear: an odd affair, indeed!
And that it happened, they are all agreed.
(Not to detain you from a thing so strange,)
6 A gentleman, that lives not far from 'Change,
This week, in short, (as all the alley knows,)
Taking a puke, has thrown up three black crows."
7 "Impossible!"—8 "Nay, but it's really true;
I had it from good hands, and so may you."—
9 "From whose, I pray?"—10 So having named the man,
Straight to inquire his curious comrade ran.
11 "Sir, did you tell—?" relating the affair.—
"Yes, sir: I did; and if it's worth your care,
12 Ask Mr. Such-a-one: he told it me;—
But, by-the-by, 'twas two black crows: not three."
13 Resolved to trace so wondrous an event,
Whip to the third, the virtuoso went.
14 "Sir"—and so forth.—"Why, yes: the thing is fact,
Though, in regard to number, not exact:

15 It was not two black crows; 'twas only one:
The truth of that, you may depend upon:
The gentleman himself told me the case."—
16 "Where may I find him?"—17 "Why,—in such a place."
18 Away he goes; and, having found him out,—
"Sir, be so good as to resolve a doubt."
19 Then to his last informant he referred,
And begged to know, if true what he had heard.
20 "Did you, sir, throw up a black crow?"—21 "Not I!"—
22 "Bless me! how people propagate a lie!
23 Black crows have been thrown up, three, two, and one,
And here I find, at last, all comes to none!
24 Did you say nothing of a crow at all?"—
25 "Crow?—crow?—26 Perhaps I might, now I recall
27 The matter over."—"And pray, sir: what was it?"—
"Why, I was horrid sick, and, at the last,
28 I did throw up, (and told my neighbor so,)
Something that was as black, sir, as a crow." *Byrom.*

Sentence 1*st.*—"When two, &c., then one, &c." The entire sentence semi-interrogative concluding with a simp. indir. interrog. excl. *Sentence* 3*d.*—*No* is a comp. close def. interrog. excl. "Do you say you don't, &c.!" *Sentence* 4*th.*—"*Therefore* I'm surprised, &c., *for where*, &c." *Sentence* 15*th.*—*And* used for *but*. *Sentence* 11*th.*—The circumstance "relating, &c.," obeys the law of the preceding slide. *Sentence* 12*th.*—The last part of this, is an inverted double compact. *Sentence* 14*th.*—Fragmentary. "Sir, did you say that——threw up, &c." (*See Conventional Emphasis.*) *Sentence* 25*th.*—A loose def. interrog. *Sentence* 26*th.*—The first part of sing. compact disjoined by the question which follows from the second part in Sentence 28th; which see. "Therefore I might, &c., because I was horrid, &c."

SEC XL. HOW WE SHOULD LIVE.

So live, that when thy summons comes to join
The innumerable caravan, that moves
To that mysterious realm, where each shall take
His chamber in the silent halls of death;
Thou go not like the quarry slave at night,
Scourged to his dungeon, but, sustained and soothed
By an unfaltering trust, approach thy grave,
Like one who wraps the drapery of his couch
About him, and lies down to pleasant dreams.—*Bryant.*

A mixed sentence, combining two single and one double compact. "*So* live, *that when* thy summons, &c.—*then* thou go not, &c.—*but*, &c."

SEC. XLI. THE DYING CHRISTIAN.

1 Vital spark of heavenly flame!
Quit, oh quit, this mortal frame!

2 Trembling, hoping, lingering, flying;—
Oh the pain, the bliss, of dying!
3 Cease, fond Nature! cease thy strife,
And let me languish into life.
4 Hark! 5 They whisper: angels say,
Sister spirit, come away.
What is this absorbs me quite:
6 Steals my senses: shuts my sight:
Drowns my spirits: draws my breath?
7 Tell me, my soul! can this be Death?
The world recedes: it disappears:
8 Heaven opens on my eyes: my ears
With sounds seraphic ring:
Lend, lend your wings! I mount! I fly!
9 O Grave! where is thy victory?
O Death! where is thy sting? *Pope.*

There is great danger, in the delivery of this piece, of falling into a whining, canting, measured manner. Read it, if possible, as you would read prose.

SEC. XLII. THE STRATAGEM OF A THIEF.

In Broad-street buildings on a winter's night,
Snug by his parlor fire, a gouty wight
Sat all alone: with one hand rubbing
His feet, rolled up in fleecy hose;
With t' other he'd beneath his nose
The Public Leger; in whose columns grubbing,
He noted all the sales of hops,
Ships, shops, and slops,
1 Gum, galls, and groceries, ginger, gin,
Tar, tallow, turmeric, turpentine, and tin;
When, lo! a decent personage in black,
Entered and most politely said,
"Your footman, sir, has gone his nightly track
To the King's Head,
And left your door ajar; which I
Observed in passing by,
And thought it neighborly to give you notice."
2 "Ten thousand thanks: how very few get,
In time of danger,
Such kind attention from a stranger!
3 Assuredly that fellow's throat is
Doomed to a final drop at Newgate?
4 He knows, too, (the unconscious elf,)

That there's no soul at home except myself."
"Indeed! replied the stranger, (looking grave,)
Then he's a double knave:
He knows that rogues and thieves by scores
Nightly beset unguarded doors;
And see how easily might one
Of these domestic foes,
Even beneath your very nose,
Perform his knavish tricks:
Enter your room, as I have done,
Blow out your candles thus,—and thus,—
Pocket your silver candlestick,
And walk off—thus."
So said, so done: he made no more remark,
Nor waited for replies,
But marched off with his prize:
Leaving the gouty merchant in the dark.

Sent. 1*st.*—Decl. perf. loose with five parts: the first ending at *alone*, simple decl.; the second, single compact; *as* with one, so with the other; the third, single compact, 3d form, 2d var. *when* grubbing, then he noted: the fourth, close: the fifth, the same. *Sent.* 2*d.*—Semi-interrog. excl. *Sent.* 3*d.*—Indirect interrog. *Sent.* 4*th.*—Close. *Sent.* 5*th.*—Decl. perf. loose: single compact in the first part; if—then; close in the second; imperf. loose in the third. *Sent.* 6*th.*—Perfect loose decl.: single compact in 1st part, *as* said, *so* done; the first *so* for *as*; double comp. in the second part; 1st and 3d part expressed; simple decl. in the last part.

SEC. XLIII. THE SOLILOQUY OF KING RICHARD III.

1 Give me another horse:—bind up my wounds:—
Have mercy, Jesu:—soft: I did but dream?—
2 O, coward conscience, how dost thou afflict me!—
3 The lights burn blue.—4 It is now dead midnight.—
5 What do I fear? 6 Myself? 7 There's none else by?
8 Richard loves Richard; that is, I am I.
9 Is there a murderer here? 10 No: yes; I am.
11 Then fly. 12 What? 13 From myself? 14 Great reason; why?
15 Lest I revenge. 16 What? 17 Myself on myself?
18 I love myself? 19 Wherefore? 20 For any good
That I myself have done unto myself?
21 O, no; alas! I rather hate myself,
For hateful deeds committed by myself.
22 I am a villain: yet I lie; I am not.
Fool, of thyself speak well:—fool, do not flatter:—
23 My conscience hath a thousand several tongues;
And every tongue brings in a several tale;
And every tale *condemns* me for a villain.
Perjury, perjury, in the highest degree,
24 Murder, stern murder, in the direst degree,

Throng to the bar, crying all, Guilty! guilty!
25 I shall despair.—There is no creature loves me,
26 And, if I die, no soul will pity me:
Nay; wherefore should they; since that I myself
Find in myself no pity to myself?—
Methought the souls of all that I had murdered
27 Came to my tent, and every one did threat
To-morrow's vengeance on the head of Richard. *Shakspeare.*

Sentence 1*st.*—A semi-interrogative, with a loose construction: the interrogative portion, indirect, of the third kind. *Sentence* 7*th.*—An indirect simple interrogative of the third kind. *Sentence* 10*th.*—"*Therefore* yes, *for* I am." *Sentence* 12*th.*—"Fly from what?" *Sentence* 13*th.*—"Shall I fly from myself?" *Sentence* 14*th.*—"I have great reason, indeed, to fly from myself, but why?" *Sentence* 16*th.*—"Revenge what?" *Sentence* 18*th.*—An indirect interrogative.—*Sentence* 19*th.*—"Wherefore do I love myself?" *Sentence* 20*th.*—"Do I love myself for any good, &c.?" A close definite interrog. *Sentence* 21*st.*—"O, *therefore*, no, *for* alas! I rather, &c." *Sentence* 22*d.*—"*Therefore* I lie, *for* I am not." *Sentence* 26*th.*—"*As* there is no creature, &c., *so* if I die, &c.;" and "*as* they will not, *so* wherefore should they." *Sentence* 27*th.*—"*As* the souls of all, &c., *so* every one."

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER FIRST.

PAGE

PRONUNCIATION 11
Sec. I. Articulation 11
Vowels 12
Diphthong 18
Consonants 23
Sec. II. Accent 29
1. Articulatory 29
2. Discriminative 29
3. Rhetorical 30

CHAPTER SECOND.

PUNCTUATION 31
Sec. I. Pauses of sense 31
1. Comma 32
2. Semicolon 36
3. Colon 38
4. Period 41
5. Double period 42
Sec. II. Pauses denoting the nature of the sentence 46
1. Interrogation 47
2. Exclamation 47
Sec. III. The pause of unusual construction, &c. 49

CHAPTER THIRD.

MODULATION 52
1. Key 52
2. Vocal evolutions or variations 53
1. Sweeps 54
2. Bend 54
3. Slides 55
4. Closes 56
3. Force 57
4. Rate 58

CHAPTER FOURTH.

CLASSIFICATION AND DESCRIPTION OF SENTENCES 60
Sec. I. Simple Sentences; punctuation 62
Class I. Declarative 63
Digression on Yes, No, Well 63
Class II. Interrogative 67
1. Definite 67
2. Indefinite 68
3. Indirect 68
Class III. Exclamatory 69
1. Declarative 70
2. Interrogative 70

PAGE

3. Compellative 71
4. Spontaneous 72
Sec. II. Compound sentences: described and punctuated 72
Class I. Declarative 78
Class II. Interrogative 83
1. Definite 84
2. Indefinite 86
3. Indirect 87
4. Double 88
5. Semi-interrogative 88
Class III. Exclamatory 89
1. Declarative 89
2. Interrogative 93
3. Compellative 97
4. Semi-exclamatory 98
Mixed sentence, circumstance, parenthesis 99

CHAPTER FIFTH.

EMPHASIS 105
Sec. I. Nature of emphasis in general 105
I. Common emphasis 105
II. Antithetic emphasis 110
III. Deferred emphasis 112
IV. Conventional emphasis .. 113
Sec. II. Vocal effect of emphasis 113

CHAPTER SIXTH.

THE BEND, SWEEPS, SLIDES AND CLOSES APPLIED: general observations 120
RULE I. for the delivery of simple declarative sentences 121
II. for the delivery of simple definite interrogative 125
III. for the delivery of simple indefinite interrogative 129
IV. for the delivery of simple indirect interrogative 132
V. for the delivery of simple exclamatory 136
VI. for the delivery of compound declarative close sentences .. 158
VII. for the delivery of compound declarative single compact sentences 166
VIII. for the delivery of compound declarative double compact sentences 194
IX. for the delivery of compound declarative loose sentences . 201

PAGE

RULE X. for the delivery of compound interrogative definite close.. 221
XI. for the delivery of compound interrogative definite compact..... 223
XII. for the delivery of compound interrogative definite loose.. 226
XIII. for the delivery of compound interrogative indefinite close 235
XIV. for the delivery of compound interrogative indefinite compact 238
XV. for the delivery of compound interrogative indefinite loose 240
XVI. for the delivery of compound interrogative indirect..... 249
XVII. for the delivery of compound interrogative double 250
XVIII. for the delivery of compound semi-interrogative 252
XIX. for the delivery of compound exclamatory..... 269
XX. for the delivery of the mixed sentence 301
XXI. for the delivery of the circumstance 301
XXII. for the delivery of the parenthesis..... 301

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

EXERCISES ON PARAGRAPHS, OR SENTENCES IN CONTINUOUS DISCOURSE.. 304
A curtain lecture 335
A good story loses nothing in its progress 346
A part of Emmet's defence 330
A political pause 329
A sister's intercession 345
A twofold peace..... 316
Boldness and perseverance in the cause of justice 343
Burning of the Fame 334

PAGE

Death of Altamont..... 331
Death a friend to the good 344
Death of Hamilton 332
Dishonorable means never to be employed..... 338
Evils of the old confederation..... 322
Hamlet's instruction to the players..... 305
Hamlet's soliloquy..... 309
How we should live 347
If God be for you, fear nothing 325
Imagination, the ruling faculty in the lunatic, the lover, and the poet 342
Important results from the sufferings of the Pilgrims 325
Landing of the Pilgrims 342
Music and love..... 343
Notice of a mortgage sale..... 339
Our wishes help to deceive us..... 334
Perpetuity of the Union..... 318
Results of free discussion..... 321
Sorrow for the dead 327
Speech of Brutus..... 313
Stratagem of a thief 348
The advocates of Charles I. rebuked 324
The consolation of afflicted virtue..... 343
The dying Christian..... 347
The fall of the oppressor a source of consolation..... 341
The influence of elegant literature..... 322
The love of Nature 344
The power of verse to perpetuate 341
The proper limits of benevolence 316
The shipwreck 340
The soliloquy of Richard III. 349
The value of public faith..... 317
Truth invincible if left to grapple with error on equal terms 321
Vehement attack on the Alien and Sedition Law..... 322
Virtue and piety conformity to Nature... 319
What constitutes a State 345

PROF. MANDEVILLE'S READING BOOKS.

I. PRIMARY, OR FIRST READER. Price 10 cents.

II. SECOND READER. Price 16 cents.

These two Readers are formed substantially on the same plan; and the second is a continuation of the first. The design of both is, to combine a knowledge of the meaning and pronunciation of words, with a knowledge of their grammatical functions. The parts of speech are introduced successively, beginning with the articles, these are followed by the demonstrative pronouns; and these again by others, class after class, until all that are requisite to form a sentence have been separately considered; when the common reading lessons begin.

The Second Reader reviews the ground passed over in the Primary, but adds largely to the amount of information. The child is here also taught to read writing as well as printed matter; and in the reading lessons, attention is constantly directed to the different ways in which sentences are formed and connected, and of the peculiar manner in which each of them is delivered. All who have examined these books, have pronounced them a decided and important advance on every other of the same class in use.

III. THIRD READER. Price 25 cents.

IV. FOURTH READER. Price 38 cents.

In the first two Readers, the main object is to make the pupil acquainted with the meaning and functions of words, and to impart facility in pronouncing them in sentential connection: the leading design of these, is to form a natural, flexible, and varied delivery. Accordingly, the Third Reader opens with a series of exercises on articulation and modulation, containing numerous examples for practice on the elementary sounds (including errors to be corrected) and on the different movements of the voice, produced by sentential structure, by emphasis, and by the passions. The habits formed by these exercises, which should be thoroughly, as they can be easily mastered, under intelligent instruction, find scope for improvement and confirmation in the reading lessons which follow, in the same book and that which succeeds.

These lessons have been selected with special reference to the following peculiarities: 1st, Colloquial character; 2d, Variety of sentential structure; 3d, Variety of subject matter; 4th Adaptation to the progressive development of the pupil's mind; and, as far as possible, 5th, Tendency to excite moral and religious emotions. Great pains have been taken to make the books in these respects, which are, in fact, characteristic of the whole series, superior to any others in use; with what success, a brief comparison will readily show.

V. THE FIFTH READER; OR, COURSE OF READING. Price 75 cents.

VI. THE ELEMENTS OF READING AND ORATORY. Price $1.

These books are designed to cultivate the literary taste, as well as the understanding and vocal powers of the pupil.

The Course of Reading comprises three parts; the *first part* containing a more elaborate description of elementary sounds and the parts of speech grammatically considered than was deemed necessary in the preceding works; here indispensable: *part second*, a complete classification and description of every sentence to be found in the English, or any other language; examples of which in every degree of expansion, from a few words to the half of an octavo page in length, are adduced, and arranged to be read; and as each species has its peculiar delivery as well as structure, both are learned at the same time; *part third*, paragraphs; or sentences in their connection unfolding general thoughts, as in the common reading books. It may be observed that the selections of sentences in part second, and of paragraphs in part third, comprise some of the finest gems in the language: distinguished alike for beauty of thought and facility of diction. If not found in a school book, they might be appropratelly called "elegant extracts."

The Elements of Reading and Oratory closes the series with an exhibition of the whole theory and art of Elocution exclusive of gesture. It contains, besides the classification of sentences already referred to, but here presented with fuller statement and illustration, the laws of punctuation and delivery deduced from it: the whole followed by carefully selected pieces for sentential analysis and vocal practice.

The Result.—The student who acquaints himself thoroughly with the contents of this book, will, as numerous experiments have proved; 1st, Acquire complete knowledge of the structure of the language; 2d, Be able to designate any sentence of any book by name at a glance; 3d, Be able to declare with equal rapidity its proper punctuation; 4th, Be able to delare, and with sufficient practice to give its proper delivery. Such are a few of the general characteristics of the series of school books which the publishers now offer to the friends and patrons of a sound common school and academic education. For more particular information, reference is respectfully made to the "Hints," which may be found at the beginning of each volume.

N. B. The punctuation in all these books conforms, in the main, to the sense and proper delivery of every sentence, and is a guide to both. When a departure from the proper punctuation occurs, the proper delivery is indicated. As reading books are usually punctuated, it is a matter of surprise that children should learn to read at all.

*** The above series of Reading Books are already very extensively introduced and commended by the most experienced Teachers in the country. "Prof. Mandeville's system is eminently original, scientific and practical, and destined wherever it is introduced to supersede at once all others."

THE SHAKSPEARIAN READER;

A COLLECTION OF THE MOST APPROVED PLAYS OF

SHAKSPEARE.

Carefully Revised, with Introductory and Explanatory Notes, and a Memoir of the Author. Prepared expressly for the use of Classes, and the Family Reading Circle.

BY JOHN W. S. HOWS,

Professor of Elocution in Columbia College.

——The MAN, whom *Nature's* self hath made
To mock herself, and TRUTH to imitate.—*Spenser.*

One Volume, 12mo, $1 25.

At a period when the fame of Shakspeare is "striding the world like a colossus," and editions of his works are multiplied with a profusion that testifies the desire awakened in all classes of society to read and study his imperishable compositions,—there needs, perhaps, but little apology for the following selection of his works, prepared expressly to render them unexceptionable for the use of Schools, and acceptable for Family reading. Apart from the fact, that Shakspeare is the "well-spring" from which may be traced the origin of the purest poetry in our language,—a long course of professional experience has satisfied me that a necessity exists for the addition of a work like the present, to our stock of Educational Literature. His writings are peculiarly adapted for the purposes of Elocutionary exercise, when the system of instruction pursued by the Teacher is based upon the true principle of the art, viz.—a careful analysis of the structure and meaning of language, rather than a servile adherence to the arbitrary and mechanical rules of Elocution.

To impress upon the mind of the pupil that words are the exposition of thought, and that in reading, or speaking, every shade of thought and feeling has its appropriate shade of modulated tone, ought to be the especial aim of every Teacher; and an author like Shakspeare, whose every line embodies a volume of meaning, should surely form one of our Elocutionary Text Books. * * * Still, in preparing a selection of his works for the express purpose contemplated in my design, I have not hesitated to exercise a severe revision of his language, beyond that adopted in any similar undertaking—"Bowdler's Family Shakspeare" not even excepted;—and simply, because I practically know the impossibility of introducing Shakspeare as a Class Book, or as a satisfactory Reading Book for Families without this precautionary revision.—*Extract from the Preface.*

Professor Greene's Historical Series.

(NEARLY READY.)

MANUAL OF THE GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY

OF THE

MIDDLE AGES.

Translated from the French of M. DES MICHELS, Rector of the College of Rouen, with Additions and Corrections.

BY G. W. GREENE,

Professor of Modern Languages in Brown University.

Accompanied with Numerous Engravings and Maps. One Volume, 12mo.

TO BE FOLLOWED BY

A Manual of Modern History, down to the French Revolution.
A Manual of Ancient History.
A History of Rome.

*** Great pains will be taken to adapt these books to the practical purposes of the Class Room, and for the guidance of private students.

HISTORICAL

AND

MISCELLANEOUS QUESTIONS.

BY RICHMALL MANGNALL.

First American, from the Eighty-fourth London Edition. With large Additions Embracing the Elements of Mythology, Astronomy, Architecture, Heraldry, &c. Adapted for Schools in the United States

BY MRS. JULIA LAWRENCE.

Illustrated with numerous Engravings. One Volume, 12mo. $1.

CONTENTS.

A Short View of Scripture History, from the Creation to the Return of the Jews—Questions from the Early Ages to the time of Julius Cæsar—Miscellaneous Questions in Grecian History—Miscellaneous Questions in General History, chiefly Ancient—Questions containing a Sketch of the most remarkable Events from the Christian Era to the close of the Eighteenth Century—Miscellaneous Questions in Roman History—Questions in English History, from the Invasion of Cæsar to the Reformation—Continuation of Questions in English History, from the Reformation to the Present Time—Abstract of Early British History—Abstract of English Reigns from the Conquest—Abstract of the Scottish Reigns—Abstract of the French Reigns, from Pharamond to Philip I—Continuation of the French Reigns, from Louis VI to Louis Phillippe—Questions Relating to the History of America, from its Discovery to the Present Time—Abstract of Roman Kings and most distinguished Heroes—Abstract of the most celebrated Grecians—Of Heathen Mythology in general—Abstract of Heathen Mythology—The Elements of Astronomy—Explation of a few Astronomical Terms—List of Constellations—Questions on Common Subjects—Questions on Architecture—Questions on Heraldry—Explanations of such Latin Words and Phrases as are seldom Englished—Questions on the History of the Middle Ages.

"This is an admirable work to aid both teachers and parents in instructing children and youth, and there is no work of the kind that we have seen that is so well calculated "to awaken a spirit of laudable curiosity in young minds," and to satisfy that curiosity when awakened."

HISTORY OF ENGLAND,

From the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Reign of Queen Victoria.

BY MRS. MARKHAM.

A new Edition, with Questions, adapted for Schools in the United States.

BY ELIZA ROBBINS,

Author of "American Popular Lessons," "Poetry for Schools," &c.

One Volume, 12mo. Price 75 cents.

There is nothing more needed in our schools than good histories; not the dry compends in present use, but elementary works that shall suggest the moral uses of history, and the providence of God, manifest in the affairs of men.

Mr. Markham's history was used by that model for all teachers, the late Dr. Arnold, master of the great English school at Rugby, and agrees in its character with his enlightened and pious views of teaching history. It is now several years since I adapted this history to the form and price acceptable in the schools in the United States. I have recently revised it, and trust that it may be extensively serviceable in education.

The principal alterations from the original are a new and more convenient division of paragraphs, and entire omission of the conversations annexed to the chapters. In the place of these I have affixed questions to every page that may at once facilitate the work of the teacher and the pupil. The rational and moral features of this book first commended it to me, and I have used it successfully with my own scholars.—*Extract from the American Editor's Preface.*

A MANUAL OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY,

COMPRISING:

I. ANCIENT HISTORY, containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the discoveries of Modern Travellers and Scholars.

II. MODERN HISTORY, containing the Rise and Progress of the principal European Nations, their Political History, and the changes in their Social Condition: with a History of the Colonies Founded by Europeans. By W. COOKE TAYLOR, LL.D., of Trinity College, Dublin. Revised, with Additions on American History, by C. S. Henry, D. D., Professor of History in the University of N. Y., and Questions adapted for the Use of Schools and Colleges. One handsome vol., 8vo, of 800 pages, $2,25; Ancient History in 1 vol. $1,25, Modern History in 1 vol., $1,50.

The ANCIENT HISTORY division comprises Eighteen Chapters, which include the general outlines of the History of Egypt—the Ethiopians—Babylonia and Assyria—Western Asia—Palestine—the Empire of the Medes and Persians—Phœnician Colonies in Northern Africa—Foundation and History of the Grecian States—Greece—the Macedonian Kingdom and Empire—the States that arose from the dismemberment of the Macedonian Kingdom and Empire—Ancient Italy—Sicily—the Roman Republic—Geographical and Political Condition of the Roman Empire--History of the Roman Empire—and India—with an Appendix of important illustrative articles.

This portion is one of the best Compends of Ancient History that ever yet has appeared. It contains a complete text for the collegiate lecturer; and is an essential hand-book for the student who is desirous to become acquainted with all that is memorable in general secular archæology.

The MODERN HISTORY portion is divided into Fourteen Chapters, on the following general subjects:--Consequences of the Fall of the Western Empire—Rise and Establishment of the Saracenic Power—Restoration of the Western Empire—Growth of the Papal Power—Revival of Literature—Progress of Civilization and Invention—Reformation, and Commencement of the States System in Europe—Augustan Ages of England and France—Mercantile and Colonial System—Age of Revolutions—French Empire—History of the Peace—Colonization—China—the Jews—with Chronological and Historical Tables and other Indexes. Dr. Henry has appended a new chapter on the History of the United States.

This Manual of Modern History, by Mr. Taylor, is the most valuable and instructive work concerning the general subjects which it comprehends, that can be found in the whole department of historical literature. Mr. Taylor's book is fast superseding all other compends, and is already adopted as a text-book in Harvard, Columbia, Yale, New-York, Pennsylvania and Brown Universities, and several leading Academies.

MANUAL
OF
ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY.

BY WILHELM PÜTZ,
PRINCIPAL TUTOR IN THE GYMNASIUM OF DUREN.

Translated from the German.

EDITED BY THE REV. THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A.
Author of a Series of "Greek and Latin Text-Books."

One volume, 12mo. $1.

☞ This work supplies a desideratum in our classical Schools.

"At no period has History presented such strong claims upon the attention of the learned, as at the present day; and to no people were its lessons of such value as to those of the United States. With no past of our own to revert to, the great masses of our better educated are tempted to overlook a science, which comprehends all others in its grasp. To prepare a text-book, which shall present a full, clear, and accurate view of the ancient world, its geography, its political, civil, social, religions state, must be the result only of vast industry and learning. Our examination of the present volume leads us to believe, that as a text-book on Ancient History, for Colleges and Academies, it is the best compend yet published. It bears marks in its methodical arrangement, and condensation of materials, of the untiring patience of German scholarship; and in its progress through the English and American press, has been adapted for acceptable use in our best institutions. A noticeable feature of the book. is its pretty complete list of "sources of information" upon the nations which it describes. This will be an invaluable aid to the student in his future course of reading"

A DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE,

CONTAINING THE PRONUNCIATION, ETYMOLOGY, AND EXPLANATION OF ALL WORDS AUTHORIZED BY EMINENT WRITERS;

To which are added, a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, and an Accented List of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names

BY ALEXANDER REID, A. M.,

Rector of the Circus School, Edinburgh.

With a Critical Preface, by HENRY REED, Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania, and an Appendix, showing the Pronunciation of nearly 3000 the most important Geographical Names. One volume, 12mo of nearly 600 pages, bound in Leather. Price $1.

Among the wants of our time was a good dictionary of our own language, especially adapted for academies and schools. The books which have long been in use were of little value to the junior students, being too concise in the definitions, and immethodical in the arrangement. Reid's English Dictionary was compiled expressly to develop the precise analogies and various properties of the authorized words in general use, by the standard authors and orators who use our vernacular tongue.

Exclusive of the large number of proper names which are appended, this Dictionary includes four especial improvements—and when their essential value to the student is considered, the sterling character of the work as a hand-book of our language will be instantly perceived.

The primitive word is distinguished by a larger type; and when there are any derivatives from it, they follow in alphabetical order, and the part of speech is appended, thus furnishing a complete classification of all the connected analogous words of the same species.

With this facility to comprehend accurately the determinate meaning of the English word, is conjoined a rich illustration for the linguist. The derivation of all the primitive words is distinctly given, and the phrases of the languages whence they are deduced, whether composite or simple; so that the student of foreign languages, both ancient and modern, by a reference to any word, can ascertain the source whence it has been adopted into our own form of speech. This is a great acquisition to the person who is anxious to use words in their utmost clearness of meaning.

To these advantages is subjoined a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, which is of peculiar value to the collegian. The fifty pages which it includes, furnish the linguist with a wide-spread field of research, equally amusing and instructive. There is also added an Accented List, to the number of fifteen thousand, of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names.

BURNHAM'S SERIES OF ARITHMETICS

FOR

COMMON SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

PART FIRST is a work on MENTAL ARITHMETIC. The philosophy of the mode of teaching adopted in this work, is: commence where the child commences, and proceed as the child proceeds: fall in with his own mode of arriving at truth; aid him to think for himself, and do not the thinking for him. Hence a series of exercises are given, by which the child is made familiar with the process, which he has already gone through with in acquiring his present knowledge. These exercises interest the child, and prepare him for future rapid progress. The plan is so clearly unfolded by illustration and example, that he who follows it can scarcely fail to secure, on the part of his pupils, a thorough knowledge of the subject.

PART SECOND is a work on WRITTEN ARITHMETIC. It is the result of a long experience in teaching, and contains sufficient of Arithmetic for the practical business purposes of life. It illustrates more fully and applies more extendedly and practically the principle of Cancellation than any other Arithmetical treatise. This method as here employed in connection with the ordinary, furnishes a variety of illustrations, which cannot fail to interest and instruct the scholar. It is a prominent idea throughout, to impress upon the mind of the scholar the truth that he will never discover, nor need a new principle beyond the simple rules. The pupil is shown, by a variety of new modes of illustration, that new names and new positions introduce no new principle, but that they are merely matters of convenience. Fractions are treated and explained the same as whole numbers. Formulas are also given for drilling the scholar upon the *Blackboard*, which will be found of service to many teachers of Common Schools.

A TREATISE ON ALGEBRA,

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY S. CHASE,

PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS IN DARTMOUTH COLLEGE.

One volume, 12mo, 340 pages. Price $1.

This is an elementary work on the science of Algebra, intended to exhibit such a view of its principles as best to prepare the student for the farther pursuit of mathematical studies. It has been the special effort of the author—and we think he has been successful—to enunciate the principles of his work with transparent clearness, to demonstrate them rigorously, and to illustrate them by strictly pertinent examples. His discussion of the theory of *exponents* and *powers* he claims to be original.—*N. Y. Tribune.*

FIRST LESSONS IN GEOMETRY,

UPON THE MODEL OF COLBORN'S FIRST LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC.

BY ALPHEUS CROSBY,

PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS IN DARTMOUUH COLLEGE.

One volume, 16mo, 170 pages. Price 37½ cents.

This work is very generally approved of as the best elementary text-book on the subject. It is very generally adopted throughout the States.

PRIMARY LESSONS:

BEING A SPELLER AND READER, ON AN ORIGINAL PLAN.

In which one letter is taught at a lesson, with its power; an application being immediately made, in words, of each letter thus learned, and those words being directly arranged into reading lessons.

BY ALBERT D. WRIGHT,

AUTHOR OF "ANALYTICAL ORTHOGRAPHY," "PHONOLOGICAL CHART," ETC.

One neat volume, 18mo, containing 144 pages, and 28 engravings. Price 12½ cents, bound.

ZOOLOGY:

DESIGNED TO AFFORD PUPILS IN COMMON SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES A KNOWLEDGE OF THE ANIMAL KINGDOM, ETC.

BY PROFESSOR J. JÆGER.

One volume, 18mo, with numerous Illustrations. Price 42 cents.

"The distinguished ability of the author of this work, both while engaged during nearly ten years as Professor of Botany, Zoology, and Modern Languages, in Princeton College, N. J., and since as a lecturer in some of the most distinguished literary institutions, together with the rare advantages derived from his extensive travels in various parts of the world, under the patronage of the Emperor of Russia, affording superior facilities for the acquisition of knowledge in his department, have most happily adapted Professor Jæger to the task he has with so much ability performed, viz.: that of presenting to the public one of the most simple, engaging, and useful Class Books of Zoology that we have seen. It is peculiarly adapted to the purpose he had in view, namely, of supplying a School Book on this subject for our Common Schools and Academies, which shall be perfectly comprehensible to the minds of beginners. In this respect, he has, we think, most admirably succeeded, and we doubt not that this little work will become one of the most popular Class Books of Zoology in the country."

Letters bestowing the highest encomiums on the work have been received from Prof. Tayler Lewis, Dr. F. R. Beck, Dr. Campbell, of Albany, and various other well known scientific gentlemen.

THE
FIRST HISTORY OF ROME,
WITH QUESTIONS.

BY E. M. SEWELL,

Author of Amy Herbert, &c. &c. One volume, 16mo. 50 cts.

Extract from Editor's Preface.

"History is the narrative of real events in the order and circumstances in which they occurred; and of all histories, that of Rome comprises a series of events more interesting and instructive to youthful readers than any other that has ever been written.

"Of the manner in which Miss Sewell has executed this work we can scarcely speak in terms of approbation too strong. Drawing her materials from the best—that is to say, the most reliable—sources, she has incorporated them in a narrative at once unostentatious, perspicuous, and graphic; manifestly aiming throughout to be clearly understood by those for whom she wrote, and to impress deeply and permanently on their minds what she wrote; and in both of these aims we think she has been eminently successful."

THE
MYTHOLOGY OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ITALY,
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY THOMAS KEIGHTLEY.

One vol. 16mo. 42 cts.

"This is a neat little volume, and well adapted to the purpose for which it was prepared. It presents, in a very compendious and convenient form, every thing relating to the subject, of importance to the young student."—*L. I. Star.*

GENERAL
HISTORY OF CIVILIZATION IN EUROPE,
FROM THE FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE TO THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

BY M. GUIZOT.

Eighth American, from the second English, edition, with occasional Notes, by C. S. HENRY, D. D.

One volume, 12mo. 75 cts.

"M. Guizot, in his instructive lectures, has given us an epitome of modern history, distinguished by all the merit which, in another department, renders Blackstone a subject of such peculiar and unbounded praise. A work closely condensed, including nothing useless, omitting nothing essential; written with grace, and conceived and arranged with consummate ability."—*Boston Traveller.*

☞ *The above valuable work has been introduced into Harvard University, Union College, University of Pennsylvania, New-York University, &c. &c.*

IN PREPARATION,
EASY LESSONS IN LANDSCAPE,
FOR THE PENCIL.

BY F. N. OTIS.

IN THREE PARTS, EACH CONTAINING SIXTEEN LESSONS.

Price, 38 cts. each part.

These Lessons are intended for the use of schools and families, and are so arranged that, with the aid of the accompanying directions, teachers unacquainted with drawing may introduce it successfully into their schools; and those unable to avail themselves of the advantages of a teacher, may pursue the study of drawing without difficulty.

English.

BOJESEN AND ARNOLD'S

MANUALS of GREEK and ROMAN ANTIQUITIES

I.

A MANUAL OF GRECIAN ANTIQUITIES.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESEN,

Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in the University of Soro.

Translated from the German.

EDITED, WITH NOTES AND A COMPLETE SERIES OF QUESTIONS, BY THE REV. THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A.

FIRST AMERICAN EDITION, REVISED WITH ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

One neat volume, 12mo. Price 62½ cents.

II.

A MANUAL OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES

WITH A SHORT

HISTORY OF ROMAN LITERATUPE.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESEN.

EDITED BY THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A.

One neat volume, 12mo. Price 62½ cents.

*** THE ABOVE TWO VOLUMES BOUND IN ONE. PRICE $1.

The present manuals of Greek and Roman Antiquities are far superior to any thing on the same to pics as yet offered to the American public. A principal Review of Germany says of the Roman Manual :—"Small as the compass of it is, we may confidently affirm that it is a great improvement (on all preceding works of the kind). We no longer meet with the wretched old method, in which subjects essentially distinct are herded together, and connected subjects disconnected, but have a simple, systematic arrangement, by which the reader easily receives a clear representation of Roman life. We no longer stumble against countless errors in detail, which, though long ago assailed and extirpated by Niebuhr and others, have found their last place of refuge in our Manuals. The recent investigations of Philologists and jurists have been extensively, but carefully and circumspectly used. The conciseness and precision which the author has every where prescribed to himself prevents the superficial observer from perceiving the essential superiority of the book to its predecessors, but whoever subjects it to a careful examination will discover this on every page."

The Editor says :—"I fully believe that the pupil will receive from these little works a correct and tolerably complete picture of Grecian and Roman life ; what I may call the POLITICAL portions—the account of the national constitutions and their effects—appear to me to be of great value ; and the very moderate extent of each volume admits of its being thoroughly mastered—of its being GOT UP and RETAINED."

From Professor Lincoln, of Brown University.

I found on my table after a short absence from home, your edition of Bojesen s Greek and Roman Antiquities. Pray accept my acknowledgments for it. I am agreeably surprised to find on examining it, that within so very narrow a compass for so comprehensive a subject, the book contains so much valuable matter, and indeed so far as I see, omits noticing no topics essential. It will be a very useful book in Schools and Colleges, and it is far superior to any thing that I know of the same kind. Besides being cheap and accessible to all students it has the great merit of discussing its topics in a consecutive and connected manner."

143

The Peckman Bindery, Inc.
N. Manchester, Ind.
MAR 1959
"Bound To Please"

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 027 249 686 9